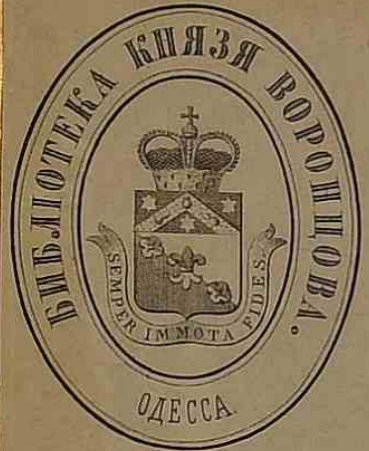


НАУКОВА БІБЛІОТЕКА ОНУ імені І. І. МЕЧНИКОВА

ИЗ СОБРАНИЯ  
ВОРОНЦОВЫХ

6422



ШКАФЪ //

Полка 9 № 8

ИЗ СОБРАНИЯ  
ВОРОНЦОВЫХ

6422

НАУКОВА БІБЛІОТЕКА ОНУ ІМЕНІ І. І. МЕЧНИКОВА

НАУКОВА БІБЛІОТЕКА ОНУ ІМЕНІ І. І. МЕЧНИКОВА

г.б

ІЗ СОБ  
БОРОНІ

649

2112

# THE ARTE OF VVARRE.

Being the onely rare booke of Myllitarie profession: drawne out of all our late and forraine seruites, by *William Garrard* Gentleman, who serued the King of Spayne in his warres fourteene yceres, and died  
*Anno. Domini. 1587.*

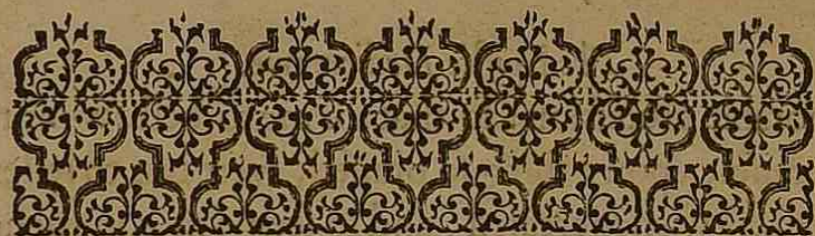
(\* \* \*)

*Which may be called, the true steppes of warre, the perfect path of knowledge, and the playne plot of warlike exercises: as the Reader heereof shall plainly see expressed.*

(. . .)

Corrected and finished by Captaine  
*Hichcock. Anno. 1591.*

AT LONDON,  
Printed for Roger Warde, dwelling at  
the signe of the Purse in the Olde-balie.  
*Anno. M. D. XCI. 4.*



To the right Honourable Robert De-  
uorax, Earle of Essex, &c. Knight of the noble  
order of the Garter, & Maister of her Maiesties horse.  
Health, honour, and happines, both in this world, and the  
world to come, hartily wished for.



Having been requested  
(right Honourable) by a dy-  
ing Souldiour, to publish in  
his behalfe, the xiiij. yeeres  
fruites of his mercinarie tra-  
uaile, in the wars of the Low  
Countries: I have thought fit  
for that the trauaile of well deseruing paines, shall  
not die together with the dead man, to publish his  
industrie, so worthy both of knowledge and prac-  
tise, to the worlds view, for the present and future  
benefit of our Nation (as his chiefest care was) that  
they might with ease, reach into the knowledge of  
that, the knowing whereof, had cost him time,  
toyle, blood, and studie. The worke is commen-  
ded by Captaine Robert *Hickcock* and others, such  
as experience hath made able to iudge in this ho-  
nora-

A. 2.

nora-

*The Epistle Dedicatorie.*

norable profession: so that for me to bestow more praises, vpon a thing so praised, were but to lessen what I wish increased, and to seeme to commend that which doth best commend it selfe. Onely thys ayde I couet, to adde for his greatest grace, that it would please your Lordship, vnder the protection of your honourable acceptance, to deigne the patronage of his painfull endeouours, and then the worke may be assured of defence: as when a well deseruing seruant, is supported by an able defending Maister. Therefore onely by your Lordshyppe I wish this worke may be perfected, whose humors and honours of minde, so well suteth with the honourable matter it treateth on, that as there cannot be (of worldly things) a more worthy subiect then this to write on, so can there not be found a more woorthie Patron, for a discourse of such worth, whose rare assured him a Souldiour whilst the flower was in the bud: and whose timely yeres since, haue witnessed that of his valoure, which neyther time nor yeeres can deface. I pray GOD rayse vp many such mindes, to make our Country of all Nations the most happy: and also that thys worke may stirre vpp the harts of all Noble men, Gentlemen, and all other her Maiesties subiects that minde to professe Armes, that by the exercise  
of

*The Epistle Dedicatorie.*

of the same they may be the better instructed with greater skill, and so with theyr manly and valiant mindes, to the defence of our most gracious soueraigne Lady, Queene *Elizabeth*, and theyr natiue Countrey. And thus in all humilitie I cease, wishing your Lordshippe such fortunes and happines, as doe euer attend so honourable and vertuous deserts.

Your Lordships deuoted  
poore freende:

*Thomas Garrard.*



A. 3.



Captaine Robert Hichcock, his commendations of this Booke : who wisheth to the worthy Reader, great grace, good fortune, and euerlasting felicitie.

(. . .)



His Booke (courteous Reader) treateth of all kinds of traynings of Souldiours, marchings, encampings, orders & discipline of war, with all the Offices belonging to a Campe Royall, and leaues ~~four~~ <sup>few</sup> poynts of Martiall exercises vntouched in the highest degree of knowledge, and playnest discourse, wherein a number of rare and probable matters are sette downe, with great studie, diligence, and experience: as well of forraine and familiar examples & proofes, drawn out from fatherly counsell and their graue admonition, as also enlarged by newe pollicies and practises of the greatest Souldiours in Christendome, in these our present dayes, and compounded with the long experience, toyling after the Cannon-wheele, and sharpe seruices, pennury, hunger, cold lying on the ground, and a hundred sorrowes, hazards, daungers, and hard aduentures, the which he himselfe hath sustained being ~~in~~ Authour heereof. Thys Booke shall shew and teach the order of the Fielde, the duety of Officers, the charge of Generals, the arte of Warre, & the whole discipline belonging to the exercises of Armes, and marshalling of a Campe and Armie, how great soeuer: and to make manifest the orders, directions, dignities, and princely powers that forraine Kings thys day hath deuised, ordained and sette downe, for the gouerning of theyr Campes, and leading of theyr people.

This Booke also, is so necessary for this time, and so excellent a peece of worke, as cannot be spared, nor red too often, nor too much praysed, and shall be such a myrrour to looke in, that euery vnlearned Souldiour, beholding the same with eyes of iudgment, shall at the first sight behold his owne ignoraunce, and become a leader of the ignoraunt multitude, the which before did it per-

## To the Reader.

haps but with braue words, and bare speeches, that neuer brings forth any good knowledge.

This Booke shall not with sencelesse imitation leade men amisse, but with sweete perswasions, and probable matter, shall confute the errors of wilfulnes, and confirme the auncient and olde rules for the substantiall order and gouernment of a Campe, and with deepe aduisement to discusse & descide all opinions of wars,

This Booke dooth likewise plainly expresse the mistery & hid cunning of fortification, and declare in ample and fine drawne plots, goodly plotformes, needfull inuentions, and noble works of great surerie and maiestie, worth the noting, and meete for men of warre to haue in euerlasting memory.

And now, to tell you how this Booke came to my handes, it is to be vnderstood, that a Gentleman called *William Garrard*, seruing the King of Spayne fourteene yeeres in his warres, drew and made this same Booke, with great iudgement & good leysure, and comming into England, in short time after sickned, and before his death, sent the sayd Booke to *Sir Thomas Garrard Knight*, vnto whom he was a very neere kinsman. *Sir Thomas* hauing regarde to the seruice of her Maiestie and his Countrey, and seeing the time required the publishing of the same, conferred with mee about the same: praying me, to correct the faultes of the Booke, the which I haue doone with good consideration. Confessing, though somewhat I haue seene and red, beside my experience in the warres, that neuer to this day came such a Booke into myne hands: for goodnes, for plainnes, for perfectnes, & true demonstrations, hoping that no man of iudgement, but will yeelde due commendations to the dead deuiser of this large and worthy volume, and that the reading of the same shall so please, & content, all that shall behold it, that they shall giue their common consent, that the Booke is worthy the embracing to be red, to be knowne, and the directions therein to be followed. The worke it selfe is sufficient to winne fauour, and perswade more good matter, then any Booke that euer I sawe touching the arte of warre, to the reach of myne vnderstanding, as knoweth Almighty GOD: who send you all happines.

1590.

Alwaies yours in most humble  
manner, *Robert Hitchcock*.

## Faultes escaped.

- I**N the Epistle to the Reader, page 1. line 5. for *four*,  
reade *fewe*.  
Page 28. line 30. for *espion*, reade *espiall*.  
Page 42. line 28. for *lost*, reade *loose*.  
Page 49. line 12. for *be by what*, reade *be punished*.  
Page 52. line 36. for *them*, read *then*.  
Page 68. line 7. for *reseruing*, reade *receiuing*.  
Page 130. line 12. for *for*, read *but*.  
Page 131. line 35. for *the stander bearer*, read *the Ensigne*.  
Page 132. line 15. for *where*, read *with*.  
Page 133. line 36. for *it*, reade *is*.  
Page 143. line 1. for *more bent*, be *more bent*.  
Page 157. line 6. for *but in*, reade *as in*.  
Page 164. line 25. for *reseruing*, reade *receiuing*.  
Page 184. line 23. for *be rest*, reade *the rest*.  
Page 191. line 12. for *from the*, read *from them the*.  
Page 191. line 30. for *rendies*, reade *order*.  
Page 215. line 26. for *commit*, reade *commit error*.  
Page 234. line 28. for *would*, reade *would haue*.  
Page 239. line 22. for *must yet*, read *must yet haue*.  
Page 253. line 13. for *10500*, read *10000*.  
Page 267. line 2. for *out some*, reade *out of some*.  
Page 272. line 7. for *of*, reade *at*.  
Page 272. line 15. for *the word*, read *the wood*.  
Page 276. line 17. for *where*, reade *vnto*.  
Page 304. line 7. for *band*, reade *Proclamation*.  
Page 317. line 12. for *Chausse traps*, read *gall traps*.  
Page 329. line 22. for *Counscarpe*, reade *Counterscarpe*.  
Page 352. line 19. for *gracious*, reade *glorious*.  
Page 352. line 25. for *iustice to*, reade *iustice is to*.  
Page 360. line 22. for *seruice*, read *warres*.  
Page 363. line 22. for *of this*, reade *after this*.  
Page 364. line 38. for *sixe monthes*, read *yeere*.





**THE FIRST BOOKE OF  
MILITARIE DIRECTIONS,**  
In the vvhich is set out hovv a good Souldiour,  
Disnier, and Corporall, ought to behaue  
themselues in vvarres:

Together with the Martiall Lawes of the field, and  
other necessarie Notes and Offices,

*And first what is to be required, and necessarie to be  
observed in a priuate Souldier.*



**T**HE platfozme of a ffortresse, by how much moze  
it is planted vpon a sure foundation, by so much  
moze it is perticipant of a firme and forceable  
perfection: which reason duellie considered it  
ought to lead euery man so to rule himselve in all  
his affaires, as he may be both apt to receiue,  
and able to perfozme all vertuous & valerous actions. Therfoze  
he that desires to become a Souldier of assured good quality, to  
the intent he may be able to perseuer in each enterpize, bears  
out euery hurt stoutly, and serue sufficiently, he ought to haue  
a strong body, sound, free from sicknesse, & of a good complexion:  
So shall hee bee able to resist the continuall toile and trauaile, which of  
necessitie hee must vnderake, as continual and extream cold in the win-  
ter, immoderate heate in the Sommer, in marching in the day, keeping  
sentinell in the night, and in his cold Cabben, in secret ambushes, and in  
Trenches, where perchance hee shall stand a number of houers in the  
water and mye by to the knees: and besides vpon Bulwarkes, breaches  
in espials, in Sentinels, perdues, and such like, when occasion requires  
and

2 The art of Warre.

and necessitie constraines : of all which exploits and discommodities he must perforce be partaker.

Wherefore that man which is not of such sufficiencie in bodie (to the end hee spende not his time in vaine) it is verie requisite he resolue himselfe to exercise some other profession, for although some do hold that few men be strong by nature, but many by exercise and industrie: yet that notwithstanding strength of bodie is first to bee required, in respect that a Souldier must be as well acquainted, and as able to beare continual traual, as a Bird can endure to flye, yea and to put on a resolute minde to beare all the miseries and hazardes of warlike affaires. A Souldier is generally to be chosen betwixt 18. and 46. yeares.

Howeuer I suppose it most necessarie, that euery man according to the nature of his bodie, and the inclined motion of his minde, make election of his Armes and weapons, as of pike, halberd, or Hargabuse: neuer thelesse respect ought to be had to the proportion of his person, and to take such Armes as doth best agree with the same: to a tall man a Pike, to a meane stature a halberd, and to a litle nimble person a Peece. But if he preferre his proper disposition before the qualitie of his person, it is verie necessaritie hee exercise that weapon he makes choise of, to the intent he may attaine vnto a moste perfect practise of the same, for as no man at the first time when hee takes any toole or instrument in his hand, growes immediatly at that instant to be a perfect artificer: euen so it is with a Souldier, vntill experience hath instructed him: touching which I meane to say somewhat.

Hee which seekes to attaine and attribute to himselfe the honourable name of a Souldier, must first employ his time in practise of those Armes wherewith hee meanes to serue, and so applie his time, that when any enterpryse shall call him forth to make prooffe thereof, hee may be able to handle his Peece with due dexteritie, and his pike with an assured agilitie: since those be the weapons wherewith now Mars doth most commonly arm his warlike troupe, and trie each doubtfull fight of bloody battail: for in this our age experience & practise makes apparant that Archers amongst forreine Nations be neuer vled, and the Halberd but either amongst fewe or fewe in number. The Archer serues to small purpose, but when he is shadowed with some Trench or Bulwarke free from Hargabuse or Pusket shot: Or that lining a band of Hargabusers, he doth second them in any inuading onfet, and then a whole flight of Arrows, so that they be light and able to flie aboute twelue score, will merueilously gauld any maine battaile of footmen or Squadron of horsemen.

The art of Warre.

men. The Halberd likewise doth onely serue in the sacke of a Towne, in a bezach, in a Sallie or Camulado, to enter a house, or in the throng of a stroken battaile to execute slaughter. Wherefore touching these two weapons, vntill necessitie constraines, and that Hargabusers be wanting, Archers may well be spared: and these great numbers of Halberdiers and Bill men, which are and haue bin in times past vled in England, may well be left off, save a few to guard euery Ensigne, and to attend vpon the Colonell, or Captaine, which in an Army will amount to a sufficient number to depresse the ouercome and flying enemy.

Therefore a Souldier must either accustome himselfe to beare a Peece or a Pike: If hee beare a Peece, then must he first learne to hold the same, to accomodate his match betweene his two formost fingers and his thombe, and to plant the great end on his breast with a gallant souldierlike grace: and being ignorant, to the intent he may be more encouraged, let him acquaint himselfe first with the firing of tutch-powder in hys pan, and so by degrees both to shoot off, to bow and beare by hys body, and so consequently to attaine to the leuell and practise of an assured and seruiceable shot, readily charge, and with a comely couch discharge, making choise at the same instant of his marke with a quicke and vigilant eye.

Hys flasse and Tutchbore must keepe hys Powder, hys purse and mouth hys bullets: in skirmish hys left hand must hold hys match and Peece, and the right hand vse the office of charging and discharging.

Being agaynst the Enemy, whylest with an indented couer hee doth trauele hys playne ground, or elle takes advantage of his place and situation, as vnder the safegard of a Trench, the backe of a Dyche, olde wall, tree, or such lyk: let hym euer first loade hys Peece with Powder out of hys flasse, then with hys Bullets, & last with amunition, and tutch powder, forcieping euer that the pame be cleane, the couer close, and the Tutch hole wyde, or elle wel prouyd: so that still obseruing modest order in hys trauele, neither ouer slow, nor ouer speedy, to the entent he become not each mans marke through his sluggishnes, nor run himselfe out of breath through his owne rashnes, for the most parte keeping hys side towards hys enemy: let him discharge going, but neuer standing: so shall he the better vntime the enemies shot and choole his assured advantage.

A Souldier ought to bee careful that his furniture be good, substantiall, and staunch from raine, the ornes of hys flasse first for his Peece, and the Spring quicke and sharpe. The Pipe of hys Tutchbore

ИЗ СОБ  
БОРОНИ

64

g 1130

B 2

bore

## 4 The art of Warre.

bove somewhat to be, that the Powder may haue free passage, which otherwise would choke vp.

In time of marching and trauiayng by the way let hym keepe a paper in the pan and tutch hole, and in wet waether haue a case for hys Peece somewhat portable, or else of necessitie hee must keepe the same from wette vnder hys Arme-hole or Callocke, or by some other inuention free from domage of the weather, and hys match in hys pocket, onely that except which he burnes: and that likewise so close in the hollow of hys hand, or some artificiall pipe of Peute hanging at his girdle, as the coale by wette or water goe not out.

It is moreouer requisite, that a Souldier keepe his Cocke with oyle free in falling, and hys Peece bright without rusting, neither must hee want hys necessary tooles, as a Scowzer, Tyeboale & worne, hauing euery one a vice to turne into the ende of the scouring sticke, so that if through wet wether or any other Accident, hys peece will not be discharged, the carefull Souldier may with his Tyeball pull out hys bullet, with the worne, the Paper and wet Powder, and with hys Scowzer make hys Peece cleane within: His Scowzer must be trimmed on the end with a Lynnen cloth of a sufficient substance, therewith to make cleane the cannon of hys Peece within. The one end of hys Skouring sticke ought to haue a round end of bone of iust bignes with the mouth of hys Peece, therewithall at hys pleasure to ramme in Powder & Paper, or in steed of paper, such soft hayre as they stuffe Saddles withal, the danger whereof is not lyke: but this the Souldier must vse when time permits. During the time of his seruice let him euer haue diligēt care to keepe hys Peece cleane and bright within, and once a fortnight, or at the least once a moneth take out the Breech and thoroughly view and wash the Barrell within, to see whether it hath any flaws, cracks, chambers, frettinges, or ruptures, which would endanger the breaking therof, especially if before hand the end of hys bare Scowzer haue giuen hym any cause to suspect such faulces, to the intent he may change the same for a new for feare of spoiling himselfe.

He that loues the safety of hys owne person, and delightes in the goodnes and beauty of a Peece, let hym alwayes make choyse of one that is double breeched, and if it bee possible a Wyllan Peece, for they bee of a tough and perfect temper, light, square, bygge of Breech, and very strong where the Powder doth lye, and where the violent force of the fire doth consist, and notwithstanding thynne at the ende.

Our English Peeces approach very neere vnto them in goodnes and beauty

## The art of Warre. 5

beauty (their heauines onely excepted) so that they bee made of purpose, and not one of these common sale Peeces with round Barrells, wherevnto a beaten Souldier will haue great respect, and choole rather to pay double money for a good Peece, then to spare hys Purse and endanger hymselfe.

But to returne to my matter, let a Souldier haue hangyng euer at the strynges of hys Tutch bove, or some other ready part of hys garment, a couple of proynng pimes at the least, that if by fortune the tutch hole of hys peece be stopped or furred by, hee may therewith both make his pan cleane, and yeeld a ready passage that the fire may haue her course, by incorporating both the tutch Powder without, and the coone Powder within together. But a ready Souldier will alwayes foresee that the tutch-hole be so wide, as the Powder without in the Pan may haue free concourse to that within the Peece, thereby to hasten more speedy discharge, considering a Souldier can not haue leasure and commodity to proine his Peece at all times, but must of necessity vse a great dexterity.

But since I am fallen into the speech of a quicke charge, and nimble discharge, I will by the way declare the opinion of certaine Nations therein.

Experience of late daies hath taught vs, that those Nations which follow the warres, inuent euery way how they may endamage the enemy in all their enterprises, but especially in Skirmish, which for the most part consistes in shot, and by such as can with the eye of his minde make an assured leuell, and with a nimble discharge, both choole out and kill his enemy.

And therefore those Souldiers which in our time haue bene for the most part leited in the lowe Countries, especially those of *Artoyes* and *Henault*, called by the generall name of *Wallowes*, haue vsed to hange about their neckes, vppon a Baudricke or bozzer, or at their sides certaine Pypes which they call *Charges*, of Copper and Tyne made with couers, which they thinke in skirmish to be the most readiest way. But the Spaniard despising that order, doth altogether vse his flasse.

The French man, both charge and flasse. But some of our English nation, their pocket, which in respect of the danger of the sparkes of their Hatch, the uncertaine charge, their price and spoile of Powder, the commodity of wotte, I account more apt for the show of a triumph and wanton skirmish before Ladies and Gentlewomen, then fit for the field,

6 The art of Warre.

in a day of seruire in the face of the Enemy: and in like sort the charge which either doth th... and loose his Powder whilest a Souldier doth tra- uerle hys ground, or else is so cloddered and rammed together, that he shall be forced sometimes to faile of halfe his charge. Therefore I con- clude with the Spaniard, that a good Flasse is that which is most warlike and ready in seruice without the curious helpe of any extraordi- nary inuention.

One of the greatest helpes consistes in Powder & match: For a Sould- yer must euer buye hys Powder th... incorporate with salt Peeter, and not full of Coale dust. Let him accustome to drye hys Powder if hee can in the Sunne, first w... with Aqua uia, or strong Claret Wine &c. Let him make hys Tutch Powder, beyng finely sarked and sifted, with quicke pale, which is to be bought at the Powder makers or apothecaries: and let his match be so boyled in Albes, Lye, and Powder, that it will boch burn well, carry a long Coale, and that wyl not breake off wylh the hard tutch of your finger. The prepara- tions wyl at the first tutch geue fire, and procure a violent, speedy, and thundering discharge. Some vse Bismstone finely powdered in their tutch Powder, but that surres and stoppes by your breech and tutch- hoale.

The Bullet of a Souldiers peece must bee of a iust bignes with the mouth of the same, so that falling in smoothly, it may dryue downe, and close by the mouth of the Powder. Some contrary to the lawes of the field vse Chayne shot, and quarter shot, which is good in the defence of a breach, to keep a Forresse, or vpon shipboard: but being dayly vled, it wil geaue a peece within, and put it in hazard to breake, specially in a long skirmish when the Barrell is hot.

Note that after hys peece is very hot, let the Souldyer if he can, geue somewhat a lesse charge for feare of bursting his peece, vntill hee haue good tryall thereof. If the stocke of hys Peece bee crooked, hee ought to place the ende iust before aboue hys left Papper: if long and straight, as the Spaniardes vse them, then vpon the point of his ryght shoulder, vling a stately vpright pace in all charge.

It is not in vayne to aduertise him, that in skirmish he must hold his Peece betwixt his Thombe and the ends of hys Fingers, which I ac- count a iure meane, betwixt, gripping of the Barrell, and laying the same onely vpon hys fornost Fynger and Thombe, for the one is ouer dangerous, and the other altogether vnticely.

The art of Warre. 7

I iudge it lykewyse most conuenient for hym, to take hold of his Peece with hys left hand in that part of the wood (wherein the Barrell lyes) there as the Peece is of most equall balance. Althoughe some ac- custome themselves to hold it iust vnder the Cocke, by reason whereof he shall bee enforced to change hys hand if he charge out of a Flasse, into the myddest of the Peece, to bring downe the mouth to hys Flasse, which is a great delay and hynderance in skymish. So to conclude, he that meanes to be accompted a forward and perfect good shot, by conti- nuall exercyse must bee so ready, that in all particular poyntes touching hys Peece, Powder, Hatch, Bullets, and the vse of them, that he nei- ther be to seeke, nor grow amased in the furious rage of Bellonas fiery skymishes, her sodayne surpyses, and bloody slaughter of dangerous assautes of cruell battailes.

The Mullet is to be vled in all respectes lyke vnto the Hargabuse, save that in respect hee carryes a double Bullet, & is much more weigh- ty. He vbleth a staffe breast high, in the one end a Pyke to pytch in the ground, and in the other an Iron forke to rest hys peece vpon, and a hoale a litle beneath the same in the staffe: wherunto he doth adde a string, which tyed & wrapped about hys wryest, yeelds hym commodity to traine hys forke or Staffe after hym whilest he in skymish doth charge hys Mullet a fresh with Powder and Bullet.

Now to speake somewhat of a Pykemans charge, a few wordes shall suffice, because I wyl not be ouer tedious. Let hym learne to raffe hys Pyke, couch and crosse the same, to receyue the violent charge of Horsemen, to front the furious shocke of footmen, and be able to furnysh out hys fygth both a farre off and neere hand: which notes with the lyke wyl bee sufficient, by reason that hee is for the most part put to stand in a mayn and square battayle. Both the Hargabuster and Pykeman must weare a short Rapier and a small Poinado: For if in the middell of Encounters and Skirmishes, they be druten to vse them, their length is an occasion they cannot be drawn, vntill hee abandon his Peece or Pike, whereby hee shall either loose his Pike, or want his Rapier, which at the Sera and Close is verie necessarie boch for Defence and Offence: contrary to the carelesse custome of some, whom I haue seene come to the field without Rapier or Dagger, which was an assured argument, that their heeles should be their Tar- get, and their shamesfull flight their losse, when their Powder was spent.

Now as these careles persons farrene off the marke with our great

ИЗ СОБ. ВОРОН. 64

## 8 The art of Warre.

securitie, so some bzing in a custome of too much curiositie in arming Hargabusters, so besides a Peece, flask, Cutch bore, Rapier and Dagger: they load them with a heauie Shirt of Dale, and a Borganet: so that by that time they haue marched in the heat of the Sommer or deepe of the Winter ten or twelue English miles, they are moze apt to rest, the readie to fight, where by it comes to passe that either the enterprize they go about, which requires celerity, shall become frustrate by reason of the stae they make in refreshing themselves, or else they are in daunger to be repulsed for want of lustines, breath, and agilitie.

Wherefore in mine opinion it is not necessarie, that this extraordinarie arming of Shot should bee vled, but in surprises of Townes, Escalades, and assaultes of breaches, to defende the Souldiers heades from stones, and such stuffe as they besieged haue prepared to driue them from their enterprize: Or else in some speciall lett battaile against the cut and thrust of Weapons, which exploits, for that they bee not so ordinarie as is the Skirmish, so are these armes nothing so necessarie, but rather a burthen moze beautifull then beneficiall, and of greater charge then comoditie, specially a shirt of Dale, which is very dangerous for shot, if a number of those small peeces should be driuen into a mans body by a bullet.

The furniture due to a pikeman besides his pike, rapier and dagger, consisting of a common Corselet, hauing a Coller, Curiat, Cales, backpart, Holdroves, Cambrases, and Borganets for the head, for that they be sufficiently knowne, because I will not be ouer polixe vpon euery particular point, I will onelie say thus much moze touching the pikeman, that he ought to haue his Pyke at the point and middest trimmed with handsome tassels, and a handle, not so much for ornament as to defende the Souldier from water, which in raine doth runne downe alongst the wood.

Euery Souldier ought to carrie his Hargabuse, Pike or Halberte, bypon that Shoulder and side, which is outward in rancke, for that side which is discouered inward is moze defended by the general order that is kept, then any of the other. Which order of carryng Armes, is not onely ready and commodious to vse at all occasions, but also doth make a gallant shew, and a generall forme of good proportion, and true prospect: a thing most necessarie for a man of valour to vse in all his doings.

Hee ought likewise euer to haue good regard to weare his weapon of like length the other Souldiers vse, which in marching

## The art of Warre. 9

ching doth make the rancks to be of one iust line, and in shew of a seemely and streight proportion, causing the whole band to carrie a braue and singular grace.

A Souldier ought euer to retaine and keepe his Armes in safetie and forthcomming, for hee is moze to be detested then a Coward, that will lose or play away any part thereof, or refuse it for his ease, or to auoid paynes: wherefore such a one is to be dismised with punishment, or made some abiect Pyoner. Wherefore during his seruice and after his returne home, let him still be wedded to his weapons and armour, that when hee is called vpon againe to serue his Prince, he be not enforced to furnish himselfe againe with new Armes, sometimes old, of little value, and lesse godnes: as some Souldiers now a dayes to their great discommendation do vse. A custome altogether different from the true exercise of Armes, and varying from the rule of other warlike statious, which make true profession of Armes: amongst the which the Spaniards and Zuitzers at this day are to be commended, the one for obseruing an apt, sumptuous, and warlike choise therein, and the other for that they beare all sortes of Armes with great aduantage, both in length & strength, the which vnto them becomes very familiar through the ability of body they possesse.

Those Souldiers which can not endure the toile and trauaile to beare Armes of defence, namely the Pikeman and Halberdier are made subiect to receiue both blowes and death by the handes of their Enemies, or through their disaduantage to take a shamefull flight, or at the first encounter to remaine their prisoners. Wherefore it is very necessarie for a Souldier to take paines in daily practise, and to acquaint himselfe thoroughly in the exercise and carryage of Armes, whereof hee ought to vse practise, specially of those that bee offensive, and in those which ordinarily we are accustomed to carrie, as the Rapier, and Dagger, Pyke, and Halberd, with such like, without making open and apparant profession of the practise thereof, but secret and seuerall from the wide sight of the world, that after wardes hee may put the same in practise to his greater aduantage and commendation.

Finally the Halberdier, who is armed either with Brigandine or Corselet, ought of dutie to attend with his Halberd when his

10 The art of Warre.

his turne comes about his ensigne, in marching, & set Squares, in the Captaines Lodging and Tent for his guard, and at the entrance of a house &c. to be the foremost person to force the passage.

But in a day of battaile the old Romaine Shield and a short sharpe pointed sword to execute in a throng of men, exceeds the Halberd and bowne Bill.

Besides the pikeman which is armed all over with a Cozlet, and is to performe his dutie in a maine Square, stand or Battaille, to receiue the shoocke of horse men, or charge of the enemies infanterie.

There bee yet another sort of light armed Dikes, which only haue the forepart of a Cozlet and a Headpiece, as is the Almaine Kinet, or a good light Jacke, or plate Coate: these sometimes may be sent amongst the foremost hope of Bergabusers, to defend them from the inuasions of Horsemen.

But touching shot, I would wish our Nation, being men of wrong constitution of bodie to beare a piece betwixt the barre of a Caluer and a Musket, the which with smal vse they would be able to wield very well at the armes end, which would carry a great aduantage in skirmish: the which like vnto the Hargabuse, they might (as I said befoze) exercise, and with a galant and assured raising by the crooked end of the stocke to his breast, hauing befoze hand fitted the Coale of his match to giue quick & iust fire, wherof euer he must take y certain measure, must then discharge amidst his modest trauerse, to his greatest aduantage, and to endamage his enemies: which done, he must first fold vp againe the same match in a ready and conuenient sort betwixt his fingers, hauing both the endes of his match light at once, that whilest the one is spent, and in kindling againe, the other may serue his turne.

Besides these foresaid weapons I would not thinke it inconuenient, to haue in a band certaine Targets of proofe to march in y front, which were very necessarie to defend a ranck of men in a streit lane, passage, beach, or other place from the enemies shot, they all closely and in a low order marching vnder the fauour and shade of them: as in a skirmish I saw put in practise, when Cassimire did march with the States Armie vnder Louuaine, 1578.

The art of Warre. 11

The Captaine is to set downe by the Generals appointment, the summe of all their paies, and the difference therein according to euery mans weapon and qualitie. But to speake of other directions, and Militarie obseruations.

A Footman that is a Souldier, ought aboue all thinges to be obedient to his Captaine, and Officers, and neuer abandon his Ensigne, nor bee absent from his companie without leaue or speciall let. In his march he ought to be modest, ready in his rancke, obserue a long distance in his Laumbande, and keepe an equall way in his *Alta*.

If wordes of aduertisement do passe ouer from rancke to rancke alongst the marching band, let him deliuer those wordes plainly and with diligence, which the Captaine giues ouer to be pronounced from mouth to mouth, as to *Passé Parole* appertaines.

If the enemy cause sodaine Arme, let his *Bale en Bouche*, and his match in the Cocke shew his readie god will either to receiue repulse, or giue charge.

If either for pleasure in a Muster, or in any other shew in sport or earnest, his companie be commaunded to discharge certain volies of shot, or a *salua*, he must either hold his piece side long the ranckes, whilest he doth prepare the same, or with the end higher then their heads, and discharge ouer the toppes of the foremost ranckes, for feare of hurting his companions: which rule they ought to obserue, and thereunto be constrained, by paine of seuerer punishment.

If any enterprize be made in the night, let him not only keepe his match close from open shew, or falling sparkes, but be vigilant and keep silence, to the intent that through his negligence and noise their actions be not discovered.

If he keepe *Sentinell*, and haue the watch word, let him giue eare diligently to all rumours, noyses, and view warely all suspected places, to the intent if he heare any trampling, neyng of Horses, or approaching enemy (which hee may the more easily hear by making a hole in the ground, and laying his eare to the same) or that he doth see the twinkling light of matches, or perceiue any other presumption of the enemy, hee may either by discharging his piece, and crying *S. George, Arme, Arme*, giue warning to the next Corpes of guard, that the enemy doth ap-

proch,

proch, or else if his suddaine inuasion require not present aduertisement, he may deferre the report thereof vntill the coming of the next Rounte, vnto whom he must from point to point declare what he hath seene and heard.

During the time of his *Sentinel*, hee ought to keepe him selfe very close, wakefull, secret, and without noise or rumour, his match close and sure from seing, and his peece readie charged, loaden with her Bullet, and poynd with tutch powder.

If the Rounte or any other Officer come to search the watch & *Sentinels*, when he doth first heare or see them approach, let him so sone as he doth perceiue the den and with a lowd voice, *Qui uala?* Who goes there: to which whē answer is made, Friends, and that they draw nēer, then let him call to them and commaund that all the whole troupe, but onely one with the watch word, to make present stay, vntill the word be giuen. And if at the same instant another Rounte should come an other way, let him cause the one of them to pause and abide still, vntill he haue receiued the word of the other, that thereby he may auoyd the inuironing snares of forrayne or priuie enemies, which might by that meanes surprize him.

Therefore in this respect let him take great care, especially befoze a Towne besieged, or about the circuit of a Campe, and that he alwayes remember to receiue him that giues the word at the end of his Peece or Pike, and out of danger, hauing his match ready in his Cocke, ready to giue fire, thereby to reward him with a Bullet as an enemy, if hee giue a wrong word, or entertaine him as a friend if hee giue the right: for vnder colour of giuing the word, many *Sentinels* haue lost their liues, and suddaine surprizes and *Canisados* haue bin giuen.

If in the night Arme be giuen in the Campe, he must make repaire immediatly with his Peece and Furniture to his Ensigne, where he shall be emploted as occasion doth offer.

That he may be the more ready at any sodaine Arme, lying in a Towne in Garrison, and being surrierd and lodged in a house, hee ought to haue all the night burning in his Chamber by him a Candle or Lampe, or at the least his fire so well raked by as hee may light a Candle at the Coales with a match of Brimstone, or otherwise: that thereby he may the more speedily not only find his Armes (which of purpose he ought to lay ready

ly in an ordinarie place) but also be better able to prepare himselfe, and kindle his match with all spāde.

Note that a Souldier in garrison being surrierd in a house, is allowed the best bed and chamber saue one, faire sheets, board clothes, plates, napkins, towels, dressing of his meate, seruice at the Table, oile, vineger, salt, mustard, candle light, fire, &c.

Whilist a Souldier is in the Campe, hee ought neuer to lye out of his clothes, his Peece ready charged must lye by his side, his furniture at his girdle, which is his Flasse, Hatch & Tutch-bore, his Kapiere very ready, and his Hoynado likewise at his Girdle, which if they should be so monstrous Daggers, or such a Cutlers shop as our English fēlers are accustomed to wear, they would be both combzous in cariage, and troublesome to his companions, and to himselfe, specially when they lye in their Cablines.

A Souldier in Campe must make choise of two, or three, or more *Camerades*, such as for experience, fidelity, and conditions, do best agrē with his nature, that be tryed Souldiers and true friends, to the intent that like louing bꝛethren, they may support one another in all aduerser fortune, & supply each others wants. As for example, hauing marched all day, and coming at night to the place where they must encampe, one of them chooseth out the dryest and warmest plot of ground he can get in the quarter, which is appointed to his band for lodging place, doth keepe all their Clokes, Armes and Baggage, whilist another makes provision with one of their boyes, in some adioyning Village (if time and safety from the Enemy doth permit) for long stray, both to couer their Cabbin, and make their bedd of: during the time that another with a litle Hatchet, which with a Lether Bottel for drinke, a litle Kettle to seeth meate in, and a bagge of Salt, which are to be borne of the Boyes amongst other Baggage, and are most necessarie things for encamping, doth cut downe forked Branches and long Doales to frame and reare by their Cabbin withall, and provide timber or firewood, if it be in Winter, or when neede requires, whilist another doth visite *Vinandiers* and *Mitualets* (if any follow the Campe) for bread, drinke, and other cates, if otherwise they be not provided by forrage or *Picoze*, and makes a hole in the earth, wherein

having

14 The art of Warre.

having made a fire, broken two forked stakes at either side, and hanged his kettle to seath upon a cudgel of wood upon the same, or that for rest meat he makes a spit, wooden Gawberds, &c. And whilst thus every one is occupied about their necessarie occasions at one instant, they may in due time make provision for all their wantes, and by meanes of this league of amitie amongst them, enjoy a sufficient time to rest their wearied bodies, which otherwise would be hard to be done.

Therefore I judge it very requisite, that the whole number under the charge of a Desiner or chiefe of a chamber, should link themselves together in perfect friendship, and aswel in skirmish and fight aide one another, as in all other actions, by which invincible knot they should receave wondrous commoditie.

It importes much that a Souldier should be tractable, for a man cannot imagine a thing either more ingenuous or better, then due and convenient civility. Therefore let him accustome himselfe rather to be of a Saturnine and severe condition then a common skoffer, and an ordinarie make sport, that he may continue in friendship with his companions, and continually remaine in their amity.

Moreover, he is much to be commended, which aptly with facilitie and great dexterity can bee conversant with euery one: wherein if a man doe not with great iudgement very circumspectly governe himselfe, he shall for the most part incur the euill will of those in whose company he remaines. The which dealing is of great importance, aswel for the interest of his life, and proper honoꝝ and credite, by which meanes the one and the other doth hang in Balance, as also for that he can not, being drawn away with debates, apply himselfe diligently to follow the warres and seruice of his Captaine: the which ought to bee his chiefe obiect and end. For discord amongst men of this Honorable profession, doth hasten, and occasion very much the destruction of their well doing, and altogether hinder whatsoeuer they take in hande, by reason of the suspitions, discordes, despite, and other respectes, which of necessity are commonly accustomed to growe and ensue.

Besides, he must be so moderate in spending his wages, that he be not constrained before the midst of his pay, either to follow the

The art of Warre. 15

the spoile, or borrow of others: whereof springeth a naughty reputation and a great discredite: yet notwithstanding he must not suffer himselfe to be noted for a couetous person, or as some say, the enimie of himselfe: that is, by sparing niggardly, to finde a great want & extremitie in necessarie things appertaining to his apparell and victuals, whose expences ought chiefly to be in galant Armoꝝ and Furniture.

Note that the pay and wages which he receiues of his Captaine and Treasurer, must not be taken or thought to serue or supplie for any other vse, but to sustaine life with victuals, keepe him apparelled, and maintaine his armes. Therefore ought it to be governed discretly and orderly at all times, in what place so euer he shall remaine, either in the campe, ciuile cities, or in his proper house, as well to keepe himselfe in health, as chiefly to make apparant to his Captaine the noble motion of his mind: So that pricked forward by this spurre of honoꝝ, and not for any other extraordinarie and base occasion, a good souldier is continually constrained to winne credite, despising all other dealing which ariseth for hope of commoditie and greedy gain, the way to make a man esteemed to carrie a base minde, and almost not disagreeing from brute beasts without reason. For these private souldiers which seeke by such meanes as be extraordinarie, to aduance themselves about their proper pay, without doubt giue an euill presage of themselves, and so euil, that it should be better for them to applie their time in some other sort, as about merchandise and other occupations, rather then follow the honorable exercise of Armes, which is altogether grounded upon a noble mind, haliant courage, and extreame trauell of bodie.

He must dispose himselfe to be verie diligent in what exercise or enterprize soeuer he shall be put vnto, as to make Sentinel: wherein it is conuenient, as I haue touched before, that he be verie vigilant when it is his lot to be commanded thereunto, that in doing the contrary, there succede not a most rigorous chastisement by leauing his bodie dead behind him, as it may verie well fall out, and to whom it may be said, I left him as I found him, since sleepe is the image of death.

A good souldier ought continually to accompanie the Ensigne, and haue speciall regard, that the same fall not in danger of surprising by the enimie, and that he endeuour himselfe by all means



meanes without anie respect of danger to preferue and recouer the same: for the losse thereof is a perpetuall shame to the whole band. And therefore he ought at no time to abandon the same for anie occasion, but lodge himselfe so neere it as he can, to the intent that amongst the rest, if it be possible, he may be one of the first at all rumours of armes, and sodaine alarums, aswel by day as night. And being armed with the weapon he carries, hauing conducted his ensigne to the place appointed, by the head officers, he may in the sight of his captaine (shewing a moderate forwardnesse and desire) breed an opinion of his courage and valour: so that when occasion doth offer, his captaine amongst the rest may make speciall choise of him.

He must for no occasion absent himselfe, or go to anie far distant place about anie enterpryse or bootie of victorie, without the expresse licence of his captaine: for he that is once become a souldier is now no more his own man, but his vnder whose government he is paid: who desiring to serue his turne when occasions be ministred in time of warres, not hauing his valiant and best souldiours present and readie about him, shall not onely be made frustrate of that he would performe, but sometimes also suffer and sustaine damage, and onely in respect of those which be absent abroad at their owne pleasure, contrarie to the consent and knowledge of the captaine.

He ought sufficiently to eate, rest, and sleep, whilest time doth permit, to the end he be not called for vnprouided, and that he may the more readily performe all enterpryses needfull, without anie discommoditie or want of abilitie, which commonly do fall out vnlooked for, and vpon the sodaine, for in ordinarie and accustomed enterpryses, it is an easie thing to find euerie souldier provided, but in sodaine surprizes not. Besides, I thinke it appertains and is proper to a good souldiour, to follow the wars so long as he possibly can, for the increase of his experience. But being constrained to returne into his countrie, or into any citie, fortresse or other place of defence, by reason of some truce, seconded by peace, or through anie other accident, which doth constrain him to abandon the warres: then it is necessarie he fall to exercise that art, wherein he chiefly hath bene brought vp, either in merchandise, handicraft, or husbandrie, or else whatsoeuer, thereby to supply his necessities, to exercise his

bodie and to liue honestly: and by that meanes shew idlenesse, a thing most incident to youth: who being altogether ignorant in treading the steppes of a wayed life (through the small experience he hath of the world, which by tract of time is obtained, and by long practise, specially in the exercise of Armes) persuades himselfe he shall win credite and commoditie through the meanes of insolent actions, which altogether ought to be abhorred: through rash and prodigall brauerie, which oftentimes torment innocent families and poore parentes: and through galant garments and sumptuous attyre, whereby they grow bankrout: so that they are brought in time (being intangled in those sweete traps sauct with sharpe showers) to run headlong into a thousand & most miserable ruines. Therefore good souldiers ought specially to endeuour themselues by some commendable industrie, to gaine the good grace of valorous and valiant Captaines, and mightie Princes, the true possessors and fathers of warre, through whose authoritie and commendation they may be preferred: for the faith and assured credite of all warlike and worthy souldiers doth depend vpon men of valour, and not of the weake authoritie, small valour, and great abuse of the ignorant & common people, called the beast with many heads. Therefore let them euer obserue the honoour of the good and vertuous: for since that in time of warres euerie souldier of good conditions doth sharpen his wit, & willingly aduerture his life, not respecting toyles or trauell, expences or danger, but doth employ his industrie to preferre his princes profite, by great reason in time of peace he ought to be aduanced and maintained by them: and much the more for himselfe, is to vse all his indouour to compass his owne commoditie, and thereby make manifest his proper vertue, the which doth not consist in outward appearance of valour and discretion: but in the true action thereof, agreeable to his honorable profession.

A souldier must apparel himselfe in the warres with cloth of fresh colour, profitable and commodious: amongst the rest, red, murrey, fauney, and scarlet makes a galant shew in the field, which he must weare to honour the Militarie profession, and for his most fit and apt wearing, and not to hinder the disposition of his members, as doth our great bumbasted and bolstered hose, which not many yeares since hath bene vsed; but in stead

of them a fraite byabantie and gascaine is to be woꝛne, togither with a close Caske, which may shield both his flank, such as bore, his match and pꝛe from raine if neede be, whereby he may be readie to execute any enterprise he is commanded to performe, and that of necessitie he ought to do: and so arme himselfe in other respects, that he may redily do any seruice he is assigned vnto.

He must be willing to put in pꝛofe all things commanded, without making replie, or denying any one thing, or deferring y<sup>e</sup> matter from one time to another, either for feare of spoiling or spotting his apparel in foule way, or foule weather, or y<sup>e</sup> he shal not be able to inioy commodious lodging, store of victuals, & such other respects, not to be esteemed of, but woꝛthy great reprehension. Therefore it is requisite he practise himselfe first of all to be a perfect priuate souldier, befoꝛe he be drawne to the desire of bearing office, which were to set the cart before the horses, and woꝛke by contraries: foꝛ first we must learne to guide, and then is it lawfull to gouerne. But it is no new thing, noꝛ to be maruelled at, that some men are accustomed to obtaine charges by vnlawfull and indirect meanes, I will not say, that they vse them accordingly. Therefore to merite a charge, it is alwayes farre moꝛe excellent and moꝛe conuenient to winne them by desert, then to enter thereinto by intrusion: foꝛ those that doe not beg them do feele in themselves their proper sufficiency: where contrariwise they are a heauie burthen to those that know them not, although with great instance they haue procured & sought foꝛ them. Which want and vnwarie dealing in this our age, peraduenture proceeds of the small neede the world seemes to haue of good souldiers at this day, and of the little experience most men in our time haue of the art of warre, or at leastwise our superiours are blinded with the swete baies of couetousnesse, chiefe cause of such elections. Yet this notwithstanding we ought to retaine with al reuerence, the honour & credite due to an expert and good souldier, who with diligence being sought foꝛ & selected, as nere as is possible, ought to haue the most chofe charges, and expeditions giuen to their gouernmet. To the end those affaires may fal out happily, to the honoꝛ of their nation & profite of their Prince, whilest he doth follow the wars, or is in Campe: let him carrie as little baggage with him as is possible,

ble, that he may be the moꝛe nimble and light of bodie, speedie in his iourney or marching, and the moꝛe apt foꝛ all enterprises.

During the warres (or else not) he ought to weare in some conuenient place of his garments, that is most apparant to the view of y<sup>e</sup> band, a token, red crosse, or scarfe, whereby in skirmishes and other attempes he is to be knowne of what part he is. The Emperials vse a red scarfe, Englishmen saint Georges crosse, the French the white crosse, &c. or such a signe as the Generall of the fielde shall make choice of, which he ought to doe willingly, thereby to remoue suspicion out of the mind of his Captaine and Chieftaines, that they neede not to stand in doubt of him: and foꝛ diuers other woꝛthy respects, since that by these and like manifest meanes, the souldier shewes inward faith & loyalty to the officers and Captaines which gouerne. But if otherwise they carrie the said token and marke loose at their necke, byest, armes, or any other place, it giues matter and occasion of doubt touching their fidelitie: specially being but newly entertained, since that not being made fast, they may easily cast away or hide the same in time of perill or doubtfull fight: which suspicion ought diligently to be removed by him which carrieth an entire desire and full intent to deale truly & loyally.

He ought likewise to beware, vnder paine of great punishment, foꝛ running from one campe to another, foꝛ what occasion soeuer shal vꝛge him to it, but is bound to serue that partie with which he doth first place himselfe, euen vntill the ende of the warres.

I haue seene it likewise not lawfull, that a captaine should receiue into his seruice a souldier that is departed from another Captaine of the same faction, and this was obserued, to the end that souldiers should be kept obedient and stedfast vnder their Ensigne, where first they haue placed themselves. Provided alwayes, that their Captaines intreate them honestly and well, which is to be decided by the Marshall of the fielde. Neuertheles, so often as a souldier is forced of necessity to leaue the warres, he ought not to depart out of his seruice, but by the speciall licence of his captaine, accompanied with an autentike pasport of his good seruice, so that he shun many confusions which are great occasions of scandals & infinite troubles, by means wherof he may

freely

freely make relation of the good service he hath done, and boldly shew himselfe before any mans face.

He ought to take special care, that he be not the beginner and occasion of any disorders and mutinies, neither consent thereunto, what reason soeuer should lead him thereunto, since that such peruerse proceeding doth not agrée with the worthie, noble, and famous art of war, which is a dangerous discredite to such malefactorz, and for the most part without any recoverie doth procure the generall ruine of many valiant Captaines & mightie armies. And therfore ruffians and common hackers that liue idle in the streets at home, and follow the wars onely for spoile, are most unfit to make souldiers, for experience makes manifest, that they are the onely cause of mutinies, so that one such is able to corrupt and disorder a whole band. Wherefore a good souldier ought rather to applie himselfe to suffer things impossible, then commit so great an error, for by the one great honour and praise shall redound vnto him, and by the other vile act, he shall gaine manifest blame and assured death: for such notable errors, without any remission, or any pity (as in part I haue before touched, and her easer in the marshall Lawes shal set downe) are seuerely to be chastised.

When the companie doth disband, and euerie souldier is to go to his lodging, or cabbin, it is verie requisite he stay vntill such time as he see the Ensigne layd by and lodged, to the intent, if he be of the gard about the same, that night he may attend to do his dutie, otherwise he may lawfully depart, & thereby shun the shamful name of a stubborne, licentious & disobedient persō.

He must learne to vnderstand the assured sound of the drum, thereby to know alwayes whereunto he is appointed, and what thing is to be done and obeyed, which of duetie is accustomed to be done, since that with this instrument souldiers are giuen to vnderstand, during the warres, what things be necessarie to be executed. One thing besides is most necessarie for a souldier, which is, that he learne perfectly to swim, both for that waters cannot alwayes be passed with wading, neither at all times boats & bridges can be conueyed with the campe, by reason of naughty passages, as also in diuers enterprizes a man is both more safe and more bold, knowing what he can do: whereof young Shelley made a most famous profe, who at the victualing of Midleborow, when

when their nauie was assaulted by the Flushingers, having all his companie slaine, swam a shoze with his armes, being the last man left alieue a shipbozd: and as the Spaniards at the passage of the arme of the sea, when they went to besiege Siricke seas. Besides the notable attempt made at the great riuer of Alba in Saxonie, the yeare 1547. where the Imperialists had so famous and glozious a victorie.

Now therfore let no man perswade himselfe, that the severall and particular experience which belongs to a perfect good souldier, can be perfectly and duely obtained by anie other way, but by a continuall delight, exercise, and obseruation: for no man doth bring any worke to perfection, whereof he hath not the art: euerie art doth spring of experience and knowledge, and knowledge doth arise by meanes of studie and continuall practise. Militarie profession being then more perfect and aboue all other arts, consequently it is necessarie we vse in the same greater studie, and more continuall exercise then is to be vsed in any other art: for so much as it is a most ancient and prudent sentence. All arts do consist in exercise: and therfore continually at idle times it is verie fit and necessarie for a souldier, to practise and exercise himselfe amongst his companions in the campe, in running, leaping, throwing the barre, or such like, to make him active, and to auoid such idle pastimes as souldiers commonly now a daies vse, contrarie to all good order.

Besides which, as I haue partly touched before, euery private souldier ought not only to be well able to vse the weapon he serueth withall, but also sodainly to vnderstand all comandements of his gouernors, whether it be by voice or sound of drum or otherwise, and to know how to maintein himselfe in order without breaking aray, not onely marching, but also turning in a troupe or retyring. For that souldier which knoweth his dutie how to behaue himselfe in the campe, in watch, scout, &c. and likewise in marching, turning, retyring, and fighting or skirmishing to obserue the order prescribed by his captaine, may be called a trained and old souldier: whereof if he be ignorant, although he haue bene twentie yeares in the warres, he is not to be esteemed a souldier. But in these exercises the sergeants and officers are daily & duely to instruct generally and privately ech souldier, which officers ought of necessitie to haue knowledge

in reading, that both what is written before, and shall be written after in this booke, specially touching the martiall lawes of the field, they may ever read as a lecture to their souldiers, being in corpes de gard, or at other fit and conuenient times. For these be things so necessary to be known and obserued, that it doth both import very much that each souldier should haue them by heart, & if it were possible, sowed vpon their garments to be a perpetual glasse to looke into, whereby they might guide all their actions, that thereby they might see what they ought to shun for feare of punishment, and what to embrace to increase credite.

To knit by this our first discourse, he that findes himselfe sufficient and well inclined to exercise this most excellent profession, ought with all modest humilitie, & good intention, frame himselfe to a perfect obedience, aswel to obserue order, a thing so conuenient and necessary in this exercise, as also to execute that which shall be commanded him by his captaine.

Before a souldier bind himselfe to serue in a band, he ought advisedly to consider, and expressly to perswade himself, y<sup>e</sup> vnder an expert, valorous, and worthy captaine, seldome or neuer our trauaile in well doing is forgotten or lost: when as the contrary doth chance vnder those that be vain, vitious, and of small experience, who through want of perfection and practise, doe not know the merit of the valiant and valorous acts of a good souldier: so that consequently they neglect all toyle & trauaile done in any honourable enterprize. Therefore it behoues a souldier to make a good choyle at the first, for after whatsoener he be, he must still obey him: and likewise alwaies haue respect, and carrie a reuerence to the iustice of martiall lawe, and the ministers of the same, though they be of base condition, since both by the law of nature and nations, they ought to be obeyed and obserued, and particularly knowne, and had in memory of euerie priuate souldier: for thereby both hozelmen and footemen are kept in perfect order.

But aboue all things a souldier ought not to forget his dutie and deuotion toward the godnes of our Lord God, and towards the holy catholicke Church and our sacred christian religion, by which the true gift of vertue, valour and fortitude, and all good things beside, we most certainly receiue, and are assured to attaine whilest our determinations be lawfull and honest, And  
for

for that a souldier being subiect to a thousand dayly dangers, it behoues him continually to liue as he dare die, and oftentimes to reconcile himselfe to God by confession, penance and satisfaction, and receiue the benefite of the other heauenly and most blessed sacrament.

I haue bene somewhat more copious in this first discourse touching a souldier, then perchance I meane to be in any of the rest, by reason this is the first step and degree a man ought to set his feete vpon, before he mount the throne of perfect gouernment in martiall affaires: for if a souldier can obtaine tried experience in this first point, he may with more ease ascend the other, since this is onely the ground-wooke of all the rest.

The office which appertaines to a corporall, cape de square, disnier, or chiefe of chamber.

It is not to be doubted, but that al notable errors depend onely of idlenesse, and that all worthy and commendable acts spring of vigilant warinesse: Therefore a corporall, cape de square, disnier, or chiefe of chamber, or how you list to terme the, ought to be no lesse prudent and carefull ouer the gouernment of his people, then a father in ruling of his family, and as euery parent doth passe in age his children, euen so a corporall should be such, that he may exceede anie souldier, if not by experience and yeares, at leastwise with diligence and sharpnesse of wit. Through which induer and exercise, ioyned with a seruent desire and delight, to attaine to the perfit tip of this honourable profession, he shall euery day become more capable, and of greater experience: wherefore I would as neare as is possible, not only haue him expressly acquainted with the aduertisements and martiall lawes following, but also indued with the best of those conditions which I haue set out in my former discourse of a priuate souldier. Since y<sup>e</sup> to mount vpon to this second degree, it is very necessary & requisite, that he haue made long abode in the practise and experience in y<sup>e</sup> first step of seruice appertaining to a priuate souldier. The captaine must select & chole foure of the most skillfull souldiers, which be honest, loyall, and perfect catholicke Christians, out of euerie hundredeth in his band: whereof two are to haue charge of the shotte, the other two

of the pikes, euerie one guiding 24. a peece, the which ought all of them to be lodged together, and the corporall himselfe in the middell of his charge. Whereby when anie secret seruice is to be done, they may call and assemble by the appointment of the superiour officers, their whole Squadron, or what lesse number els, without the sound of anie drum.

Now then a corporall with his Squadron of 25, or more, according to the discretion of the captaine, lodging together with his companie, must provide generally for all their reasonable wants of wages, match, powder, and other munition, and must instruct them how to handle their weapons. He must likewise remember perfectly howe euerie one is armed and furnished when he receiueth them in charge, and to see that no part thereof be spoiled but preserved neat and trimme: and aboue all things to looke well to the behauiour of his companie, not suffering them to vse vnlawfull and prohibited gaming, neither to giue themselues to drinke and surfetting, but to spare of theyr pay to furnish themselues brauely and surely against the enemy, wherein he ought to vse his chiefe induour. And if it happen that any fault is committed, his part is not violently to punish the souldier himselfe, as hereafter is touched: but to make it knowne to his captaine, who must not neyther, as some rashly do, reuenge himselfe, but communicate the same with the Marshall or his prouost, who onely haue vnder the generall authoritie to punish: and this due course of iustice shall be moze terrible to the souldier, and breed lesse euill will in them to his captaine and officers: generally in these respects, the corporall must touching the foresayd causes or such like, or if any souldier be sicke, hurt or absent, by way of imprisonment or death, immediately make report thereof, finding any thing worthy relation, and spare no man, but deliuer ouer the trueth to the sergeant, the sergeant from hym, or together with the corporall to the lieutenant, & he or they all ioyntly to the captaine, who is to take order in the cause. Thus shall dignitie of officers be maintained, and officers and faultes redressed, to the great example of the euill, and comfort of the good. But somewhat moze amply to set down the foresaid respects together with certayne other aduertisements. A corporall must alwaies foresee and examine, that the souldiers of his Squadron keep their armes in order,

der, clean and intyre: and the Hargabuffers stozed with match, bullets, and powder, and such like necessaries: a thing worthy to be noted and obserued in this profession: the which makes thew that the same is of a good souldier not onely vsed in time of war, but in all other times and places, being a knotone difference betwixt the legitimate, and lewd professors of armes. He ought of necessitie still to instruct & exhort them, y they liue together friendly, wout discord: that they be modest and sparing in their victuals, profitable in their apparell, and y generally they do shun swearing, and blaspheming vpo greuous punishment, by which act of blaspheming and swearing by the holie name of the sacred Trinity, they commit greater villany & offence befoze God, then if befoze the world they did commit most wicked acts, or infinit errors. Likewise let him prohibit al vnlawful games, for the perfozance wherof he ought to proceed w as great dexteritie and curtesie as he can, that alway in matters of importance, he may haue that due obedience which is required, & not through crueltie gaine the hate and euill will of those persons, which in many other thinges beside are to obey him: for to chastise them, lies neither in hys power, neyther in the arbitrement of other officers, although they be of degrees higher then he, but doth iustly appertayn to his office of the maister of the campe, and marshal of his field. The which point is to be noted and obserued, to his discredit of some captains, which at this day delight to imploy their murthering hands in the blood of souldiers, and merit perfozance of honest behauior, being moued thereunto through some hatred, toy, or beastly passion.

Therefore he must alwayes be mindfull to obserue this honourable rule of diuers good and discret officers, who sometimes do ouersce and winke at light faultes, and proceed with a certain modestie and lenitie, although in matters of greater insolency, with seueritie.

Notwithstanding these & such like authorities, the corporall ought to be no lesse obedient to euery least poynt of the marshal lawes: and in ranck and aray, or in other places where those of greater gouernment be, he must perfozme & obserue the part and dutie of a priuate souldier, and retain like order and obedience: for where our betters be, the lesse giue place.

But when alone with his Squadron he is conducted to his place where

where he is to make watche and ward: then must he take vpon him his office, and make prouision of wood or coles, that he may alwaies haue fire burning in his corps of gard, aswel in the day as in the night, and aswel in the summer as in the winter: wout which he ought neuer to keep watch, because it is a most necessary munition for the Hargabusters, to light their match withall, & for other needfull respects. Likewise he must prouide for oyle, for candles for the night time, for lanterns and such like at the sergeant maiors handes, or of some others, who haue charge to prouide for those things, & are accustomed to distribute the same. If he keep his corps de gard in an open and plain place or otherwise: he must conform the company of his Squadron, according to the order appointed by his betters: and with the most speedy & artificial maner that he can, must arme and fortify with ditches, trenches, and Sentinels, the place where he must make his abode with this his small band and troupe of souldiers, the better to resist his enemies furie, or any surprize he might assault him withall, considering that sometimes, yea and that very often, being set vpon, the Sentinels and corps de garde be repulsed and haue their throats cut, to the great disturbance & vniuersal damage of the whole campe. He must ordaine his watch in such a place, that in the same at all times he may remaine warie and vigilant, placing himselfe in the mosse high and eminent seate of all the corps de gard, to the intent that he may know and discern in due time every particular accident that shall happen or succede: and thereof immediatly aduertise his captaine of all, that hee may prouide remedie with speede, according as the case requires. Warily and secretly, euē at the closing of the night, vntill the bright spring of the Diana, and sayre day light, he must ordaine and place Sentinels, and often search and visite them, with the aid of two of the captaines gentlemen of his companie, called of the Italians Lanze Spezzate, or might be fermed more aptly, extraordinary Lieutenants, that he may alwaies remaine vigilant and assured, to the intent hee be not assailed vnprouided, to his great damage, and before he can giue warning of the enemy to the campe, which doth rest and lie in safetie in that quarter where he is, vnder his charge, care and diligence. In such cases he ought therefore to imploy the best men he hath, that he neuer rest deceiued in a matter of so great

impoz

impozance, since that of those which be but meane souldiers, or as I may well terme them, negligent persons, nothing else is to be looked for at their handes, but erroz, losse, and danger.

Moreouer, he must at the least cause the third part of his Squadron to remaine & stand continually armed at all poynts, both night and day, consisting of greater or lesse quantitie of people, according as the suspicion doth argue the neede of them to be small or great: the Hargabusters hauing their flasks and furniture tied to their girdles, and their peeces readie charged, that vpon a sodaine they may contend by skirmish, according to needfull occasion, and readily resist the enemy without slacking or any remission of time, vntill all the Squadron be put in order.

He must be very circumspect, that the rest of the souldiers weapons, and principally his owne, be laid by and placed in such order, one kinde being deuicid from another, that in one instant they may be speedily and readily armed: the which hee must daily put in practise, and inure them withall, by fained alarmes, by speciall commandement and of set purpose, which be most necessarie to be practised before-hand for diuers honorable and impoztant respects, wortie to be had in good consideration.

Therefore let him haue and carie a continual care, that their armes neuer remaine in any confused order, the which if hee should suffer, he should find no doubt to be a great want: but the same may be preuented, and made easie, by accomodating the Hargabusters in ranck one by one, vpon a beord or banck: his pikes and corlets, in order reared and hanged vpon some wall or other apt place in the corps de gard, and vpon each particular weapon and pece, every souldier should haue a proper and speciall mark before-hand made whereby to know the same. He ought daily to instruct his Squadron euerie one apart, howe to handle the weapon wherewith they serue: the Hargabuster to charge & discharge nimble, & the man to tolle his pike w great dexterity.

Sentinels ought with great reason to be placed about the corps of gard, to the intent the same may be defended and kept w more safety and securitie. He himselfe at the closing of the night, must place the first Sentinel, and consequently the rest, instructing them orderly what maner they haue to obserne, and howe they ought to gouern theselues in such accidents as might insue: who

C 2

are

are to remaine in Sentinel in winter and cold weather, but one houre, or two at the most: but in sommer, two or three houres befoze they be changed: for which respect, that every one may be fayded with equitie, let him first make a iust diuision of his number, according to the number of the houres in the night, and following that proportio, let him see the same perfozmed, without fauoring or omitting any, the which he may the moze certainly perfozme, if the names of his souldiers be wozitten in a roll, and when y<sup>e</sup> houre-glasse hath run their time (which is necessary for him to haue in his corps de gard) then to prick their names, and place newe in their roomes, so shall ech souldier be partaker of the trauaile, and rest marueilously wel satisfied. But for that in wars, Canuifados, Surprizes, Sallies, such like casualties & aduertisements be infinite, I will leaue the rest to his owne vigilant discretion, & suppose it needlesse to aduertise him of every particular point, moze then that I haue and will touch in this my first booke of Militarie directions, as cases mozte proper for priuate souldiers. I therefore at this present thinke it sufficient for a corporall to know, y<sup>e</sup> it is necessary he should so dispose the matter through his prouident prouision, that all his people may be reduced into order, and already haue taken their weapons in their hands, befoze the enemy giue charge vpon them. And therefore in time and place of suspicion and danger, he must place loff Sentinels without the watchword, a good distance off, from the Corpes de garde, in places mozte suspect. But in other places not needfull so much to be suspected, and that be nêrer him, he ought to set Sentinels with the watch-word, so farre one from another, as it shal seeme vnto him reasonable or requisit, & that they may inuizon the ground one within y<sup>e</sup> sight of another, or so y<sup>e</sup> the enemy cànnot enter, or any espie issue without their knowledge. If great occasion so demand, let him place together one hargabuster, & one armed pike, to the intent y<sup>e</sup> the one may keep the enemy far off, and in a certain sort sustaine his fury at the point of his pike, whilst the Hargabuster with the discharge of his pœce, giues arme to the corpes de garde and campe: which exployt may be the better perfozmed, if a corporall-Shippe of pikemen be ioyned together with another of shot. Somtimes without making any noyse or rumour, Arme is giuen to the campe, for one of the two Sentinels may retyze, and make relation to the corporall

porall what hath appeared, bin sene, hard or happened, wherby he may spẽdily with great silence giue Arme to the gard, without leauing the place of the Sentinel disarmed, which they ought neuer to abandon, but at such times as the enemy is manifestly discovered. The occasion of the Alarme being certaine, at which time being retyzed, they must vnite themselues together with the souldiers of the gard, that they may all wholly in one companie execute that which shall fall out best for their purpose, which is, to retyze fighting or skirmishing to the Campe, according to ordinarie custome, notwithstanding by the order and appointment of those which haue authoritie to command them, as their Captaine, Sergeant Maior, &c. but neuer otherwise.

He ought mozeouer to be circumspect, that in the body of the watch a solemn secrete silence be kept, without singing, brau-ling, or any rumour or noise, and specially in the night, both in respect of the enemy, to heare when the Alarme is giuen, and to the intent that those which rest & sleepe, and are not yet in Sentinel, may be the moze apt to resist & apply themselues to these factions & exercises, which are required of them with vigilant watchfulness, since a man cannot without great difficultie remaine without sleepe or rest, any much longer time then our nature is accustomed by ordinarie course to beare, and therefore at the entrance of the corps de garde, he ought likewise to keepe a proper Sentinel appertaining to the gard, that neither friend nor enemy comming out of the Campe or else where, shall be able to enter without yeelding the watchword: and in this sort must the Corporall proceed, euen vntill the Diana be sounded through all the Campe. For other respects, I finally refer him to my following discourse, which together with that wozitten befoze, it is requisite he haue in perfect memorie as well as the priuate souldier.

Sixe speciall points appertaining to souldiers of all sorts.

It is wozitten in the Historie of Pietro Bizari, touching the incredible and maruëllous obedience of the Turkish souldiers, that a certaine Gentleman at his returne from Constantino-ple did declare vnto the Earle of Salma, that he had sene foure myracles in the Turkish dominions: which was, first an infinite armie almost without number, consisting of moze then

four

30 The art of Warre.

foore hundred thousand men. Secondly, that amongst so many men, he saw not one woman. Thirdly, & there was no mention made of wine. And last, at night when they had cryed with a hie voice *Alla*, which is God: there continued so great a silence through the whole campe, that euen in the Pavilions they did not speak but with a solo soft voice, a thing worthe to be admired, to the great shame of the confusion of Christians: therefore if the infidels obserue such strict discipline, why should not we that be Christians inuour our selues to surpasse them therein: and begin with the Spaniard, the *Salve* and *Auemaria*, which they vse thise throughout their whole campe, recommending themselves and their affaires to God, with great reuerence and silence, which I would wish to be continued untill the diana, when together with the sound of the drummes, the same might be with a cheerefull crie renewed. But together with silence to set downe certaine other vertues, take them here as I finde them written.

Silence.

In all places of seruice such silence must be vsed, that souldiers may heare friends, and not be heard of enemies, as well in watch, ward, ambush, canuado, or any other exploit: in which point consisteth oftentimes the safetie or perdition of the whole Campe.

Obedience.

Such obedience must be vsed, that none regard the persons but the office to them appointed, diligently obseruing the same: any offending to the contrarie, runneth into the danger of the law, for longer then obedience is vsed and maintained, there is no hope of good successe.

Secretnesse.

Souldiers must be secrete, and haue regard that they disclose nothing, though sometimes they vnderstand the pretence of the hier powers. The disclosers of such, merite most cruell punishment.

Sobrietie.

In Sobrietie consisteth great praise to the souldiers, who vsing the same are euer in state of preferment, such regard their duties,

The art of Warre. 31

duties, and reprove the rash busibodies. Drunkards, &c. are euer in danger of punishment.

Hardinesse.

The Captaines and souldiers that be hardie of courage, be much available in seruice, specially such as will ponder what may be the end of their enterprize. Some in times past haue hardly giuen the onset, and after repented the same: but the praise of the aduised cannot be expressed.

Truth and Loyaltie.

The vertue of loyaltie and truth is farre exceeding my capacity to write, the practises of the contrarie, are not worthe of life, but to be sone adiudged. Subtile enemies approue to corrupt souldiers with giftes, and the diuell to entrap them with the swete intising baites of lewd libertie. But since the reward of truth is euermore lasting life, & the vntrue and dissembler, loseth the same in continuall darkenesse, I trust none of our countries men will learne the one for the other, will be false to his soueraigne, or flee from the assured pillar of the Catholike faith: from which God keepe all good souldiers.

How a souldier may maintaine obedience, and keepe himselfe in the fauour and good grace of his Captaine and Generall.

A God souldier ought to haue consideration, that since due orders and lawes are the assured foundation & stay of euery state: and contrariwise, discord and disobedience the ruine of all Realmes: so that aboue all things a well governed Generall, and a carefull Captaine, ought prudently to foresee that their Campe and souldiers be paid and punished with equall execution of iustice, not respecting person: yielding to the offenders punishment, and reward to the vertuous: Depressing vice, and exalting vertue: vsing commendation to the good, and correction to the euill, ioyned with admonishments of magnanimitie, the which if they preuaile not, to chastise them: and as the god husband doth, plucke & weeds out of the god corne, to the intent that they by their wicked & pernicious example, do not infect the rest, & consequently doth provide & no fault passe unpunished, nor no  
bale



valorous and forward: by which meanes he becomes feared, fauoured, obeyed, and beloued of all the armie: euen so on the other side, the good natured souldier must euer haue respect to keepe the bondes of modestie towards his superiour, and yeld many thanks to God, that he hath giuen him so iust and vertuous a Captaine and General, towards whom he must alwayes yeld like obedience, that the soune doth to the father, being bound so to do by the diuine law, without shewing himselfe opposite to the order of generall iustice, nor ingratfull for his receiued benefites, but continually by his good guiding in the one and the other, giue his Captaine iust cause to loue and like wel of him.

Souldiers be euer bound to obey the iustice and commandements of their superiours: and the superiours likewise to embrace the obedience of their souldiers, whilest he doth see himselfe honoured and obeyed of them, either in deeds or words, in earnest or dissembling.

Although the general or captaine were a right Sardanapalus, so that his lawes be obeyed all things fall out well: wherefore a souldier ought with al his indeuour to be obedient to the law, with his whole heart loue his Captaine, and feare him with al his force.

Cyrus being cruell, couetous, miserable, and an exacter of taxes, through iustice was beloued and obeyed.

Cambyfes, Marcus Cato, and Marcus Antonius, the two first being seuer and cruel, yet amongst the souldiers were maruolously fauoured: and the third, although he was drowned in the deepe and gaping gulfe of Lecherie, Gluttonie, and riotous gaming, yet was he so beloued of his armie, that his souldiers would haue suffered themselves to be crucified, to haue done any thing gratefull vnto him, and that chiefly through his iustice: and therefore it behoues a souldier to keepe inuiolate the marttall lawes of the field. But to touch the chiefest meanes whereby a souldier may be drawne to obey, to feare, and loue the Captaine, and altogether gaine his good liking and fauour, carie in mind what insueth.

First, a souldier must presume and perswade himselfe, that whatsoeuer he doth in secrete, that it shall come to the knowledge of the Captaine, whether it be good or euill: which feare,

if he be wise, wil restraine him from doing any thing pernicious, or against the martial law, or to the mistaking of the Captaine, and so ought to rest in continuall doubt, lest his euill deeds come to light, and to the eares of the superiour officers, that with the sword of iustice, the rod of reuenge, and the scepter of rule, may and will chastice him. If he remember this, no doubt he will liue modestly, in obseruing those lawes which are commanded by the Captaine and General: for it behoues a souldier wil to liue in suspect, that spies and intelligencers be euer present at his elbow, which no doubt will accuse him for his euill behaviour: of which sort a Captaine and General haue great store to keepe the Campe and souldiers in continuall suspicion and feare.

A souldier must euer shew himselfe grateful to his Captaine in words and deeds, by remaining patient in his actions, and not to vse complaints in his speeches, suffering with quiet contentation the penurie of victuals, if the Campe should want, either through fault of the General, barenesse of the countrie, or otherwise by his negligence, or through the malignitie of fortune, that neither by water nor land corne and victuals can be brought to them in safetie: wherefore he must weare out this want patiently, & not with a melancholike countenance, make apparance of a wrathfull and furious person, by charging of the chieftaine openly with those wants: for which proceeding, let him assure himselfe that he shall be esteemed of euerie man an insolent, seditious, and impatient souldier.

Murmure not against thy Captaine with thy tongue, but rather lament in thy heart thy euill fortune, resting content with that portion of victuals his sergeant shall giue thee for that day. Seeme ioyfull whilest thy Captaine is merrie, and sorrowfull when he is grieued, yelding comfort and consolation, together with faithfull counsell, as the cause requireth.

Shew not thy selfe full of wrath and malcontent, for want of thy wonted pay, although thou manifestly perceiue the same to proceede of the couetousnesse of thy Captaine: but dissemble and shew him so grateful a countenance, that he thereby may be moued to pay the band, if not all, at the least part. If these delayes proceede not by his fault, and that therefore he laments thy lingering want: make free offer vnto him to suffer all lacke and dis-

commo

commoditie to pleasure him withal, wherely he shalbe maruelously moued, and much moze bound to loue a curteous souldier.

Do not molest him with demanding moze succour and prest money, then thou hast néede of, yea and that when néede force constraines.

Report not any thing but that which is profitable and beneficiall for the publike state: for otherwise thou shalt be accounted a malicious detractor, insolent, and insupportable, making reherfall of euerie little trifle, whereby hatred is gained in exchange of gaining fauor. Falle neuer in the diligent execution of thy duetie, and make shew of thy forwardnes, euen purposelie with the first, euen in those things that appertaine not to thy charge.

Disobey not the Captaines or Generals precepts, nor withstand the martial lawes: neither affirme that any thing is euil wrought which is done, for it appertaines not to a souldier to reprehend: but to a counsellour to admonish.

Do not importune thy Captaine to reward thy frauell and seruice, but attend his liberalitie: for if thou become importunate, he will likewise become Marcus Crassus, who at the first vsing great liberality, being continually and ouermuch craved, became at the last extreame couetous.

Present him neuer with any thing, specially with any thing of valour: for thy Captaine which hath no need of that which is thine, and perceiuing thee to present him that which is not correspondent to the merite of his worthinesse, will esteeme the same to be done in maner of merchandise, as proceeding of craft: but if thy Captaine demaund any thing vnder shew of praising and commending the same, or the beantie thereof, it is then requisite that the same be liberally bestowed vpon him, it being a curteous demaund, which he commonly will magnificently recompence, as did Artaxerxes.

Accept neuer any thing of thy enimie souldier, neither receiue any letter, yea if it should be from thy father, without licence of thy Captaine Generall, as a thing which onely appertaines to counsellours and chieftaines: for thy Captaine would become ielous ouer thy fidelitie, suspecting that thou wert corrupted. There is another note, specially to aduertise all souldiers of, that they doe not rashly, neither of purpose disdain to be

be governed and commanded of a Captaine, which is perchance of no ancient house, as an infinite number of fond and presumptuous fellows do now adayes: who being rude and rusticall clownes, disdain to be guided by captaines, whose valour and vertue, and not whose ancient stocke, hath giuen them that degré, being ascended to so hye honour by the steppes of vertue: for I haue seene some that but lately haue left their needles, their hammers, and their spades, hauing scarce seene a small skirmish, but that they presume themselues to be expert souldiers, and will say, what is my captaines valour moze then mine: Is not he of base degré as well as I? Not considering that we be all sprung out of one stocke, but that our valour and vertue hath made vs noble, as hath bene verified in diuers Princes, kings and Emperours, as Caius Marius, Lucius Quintus Cincinatus, Attilius Collatinus, Valentinianus, Maximianus, Francisco Carmognuolo, Iulian Romero, and Mondragon, besides diuers others moze, which at this day doe liue, being exalted by the degrés and way of vertue, to the tippes of such praise as is most conuenient to worthy Captaines: and therefore no souldier ought to disdain to be governed by such, whose vertue hath made noble their minds.

And moreouer, if anie such a one that is become Captaine, either by meanes of fauour or vertue, be blotted with some vice or defect, yet we ought not to disobey him: for Caesar was ambitious, great Alexander a drunkard, Hanniball vnfaithfull, cruell, and without Religion, Fabius Maximus by lingering esteemed a coward, Marcellus rash and vnaduided. And therefore although thy Captaine be accounted most vicious, yet if he know how to gouerne and guide his charge, a souldier must obey him, and neither calumniouly reprehend him, nor corruptly imitate and obserue his vices, but duely and directly fulfill his precepts: so that no souldier or Gentleman, of what great house soeuer, ought to disdain to be commanded of such as haue risen by vertue, to the height of honour, neither any man, how great of linage soeuer he be, to disdain to accept lesse degrés then a Captaine: for those be the steppes by the which he must ascende vnto higher dignitie, as manie auncient and noble personages haue done, who from inferiour degrés by little and little haue

come

come to superiour, whereof the great Emperour Caius Iulius Cæsar may be example: who being borne of a noble house amongst the Romans, was first chosen Pretor in Spaine (a base office in respect of his worthy parentage) as being reputed unworthy of any greater office, he did beare the same with a ioyfull mind, accepting it as a meane and beginning to make him ascend to the highest of Fortunes wheele, vnto the which the valor of his worthy minde did aspire. These things considered, let no mā disdain, how great & illustrious so ever he be, y<sup>e</sup> lowest degrees of seruice, for by these steps he must ascend to the throne of statelie governement. In sum, because I will not grow tedious, I conclude, that if any souldier would be beloued of his Captaine, let him still obey and reuerence him, performe his duetie and office willingly, and neuer imagine to do any thing that is not gratefull to him, but feare & obey the law of armes, which he must imprint perfectly in his heart, and haue continually in memorie, as here in order do presently insue.

Martiall and Militarie lawes, whereunto souldiers of all degrees must be sworne, to keepe and maintaine inuiolated at all times and in all places, whether they serue Emperor, King, or Prince.

- 1 First, he y<sup>e</sup> contrary to the word of God (whom in al our actions we must first haue respect vnto) doth maintaine, perswade, & fauour any infidelitie, heresie, schisme, strange or new religion whatsoeuer, and doth not cleaue to the Christian faith, shall incurre the law appertaining.
- 2 Item that those which without the feare of God despise and deride his holy word, be punished accordingly.
- 3 Item that no man speake against the Christian catholike faith, neither write against the same.
- 4 Item that no souldier of what soeuer degree or office he be, do breake, spoile, abuse, or prophane any church.
- 5 Item that no souldier omit or absent himselfe from diuine seruice, if his Princes vrgent affaires will admit him to be present.
- 6 Item that all souldiers obserue and keepe the precepts of the church.

7 Item

7 Item that contrariwise, no man be so hardy to outrage any zealous man, either in word, dede, or any other sinister meanes, but in lieu thereof, carrie a reuerent respect to all and euerie of them.

8 Item that in like sort no man go about to defloure, commit adulterie or fornication, with virgins, wiues or widowes, neither by force, neither by other accident (vnlesse the partie were consenting, and the matter secrete, which neuertheless is not lawfull befoze the face of God) vpon paine of death without mercie.

9 Item that no mā shall destroy, ruinate, endamage, or set on fire any sacred place, without licence of y<sup>e</sup> Captain or General.

10 Item together with these foresaid religious cases, or any other, whosoever shall blaspheme, reuile, & horribly sweare by the almightie name of God, by his diuine word and sacraments, let such a peruerse, impious, and blaspheming person be punished openly, and to the terrour of the rest let it be executed: for no doubt the plague of the highest will not depart from the tentes of blasphemers and despisers of religion: for how should we vse iustice indifferently vnto men, when we are content with silence to suffer such iniurie to be committed against God? Therefore first the offences done against God must be straightly punished, and he then wil giue thee wisdom to decide the rest, and triumphant victorie.

11 Item all souldiers in generall, hauing taken their oath to serue God and aduance his word, they shall then next be sworne to be true, iust, and dutifull to their Lord & soueraigne, and his graund General, or chiefe captaine of the field, to be tractable & obedient vnto euery officer placed & appointed to rule ouer him, and to be ready both day & night to serue, whether it be by land or by water, as occasion of seruice shall fall out and require: and whosoever doth repine or sheweth disobedience herein, of what degree or condition soeuer he be, he must be duly punished by the iudgement of the superiours, appointed for that purpose.

12 Item that whensoever any Chieftaine or Captaine of any band, shall vpon vrgent cause appoint in his absence any other whom he shall thinke good, to supply and execute his roome of captainship, euerie man ought to follow and obey the said deputie with no lesse care & diligence, then they would the captaine him.

himselfe, upon paine of such punishment as the Generall or his assignes shall appoint.

13 Item that all souldiers must content themselves with their places appointed, being ioyned together in bands, or severall without resistance, whether it be in marching, watching, incamping, or besieging, being also commanded thereunto by the Captaine or other officers, upon such paine as shall be thought good by the Captaine.

14 Item that euerie souldier shall for his honour sake, gladly fauour, & mercifully forbear vnto the vttermost of his power, all women lying in childbed, or being with child, or lately deliuered from child, to defend and succour them from the rage of the cruel and rude souldiers, or others which follow the campe for spoile. Also it behoueth, as I said before, that all souldiers defend all priestes of godly calling, and all spirituall persons: but now adates they be y first to whom abuse is done, of what opinion or religion soeuer they be: but God no doubt will iustly plague all such before they be aware, and when they least suspect it.

15 Item that euerie souldier shall serue, and is by the law of armes bound by long custome to serue thirtie dayes for euerie moneth, and after that rate he shall receiue his moneths wages.

16 Item, if that any souldier haue receiued his moneths wages afozehand, or any part thereof, and departeth without leaue or pasport from his Captaine, and hath not serued for it, he or they apprehended, shall for the said offence be iudged to die.

17 Item, if there be any souldier or souldiers in marching, breake his or their aray without iust occasion enforcing them, then the prouost marshall, Lieutenant of the band, or sergoant, shall compell him or them with violence to keepe his or their rankes in order: and if so be that he or they so disordered, doe chance in this case to be slaine, there shall no man be blamed by his or their deathes, by the law of the field, for by such disordered people the whole armie may be in danger of ruinating by the enimie.

18 Item, if that by the appointment of the chiefe rulers of the armie there be a battaile fought, and that by the mightie power of God, the victorie be obtained on your side, the law of armes is

is such, that if any souldier hath receiued his moneths wages afozehand, he shall be discharged of the same, neither shall he serue any longer for the said wages, after the day of victorie, neither shall owe any thing for it, but he shall be set free from the moneths seruice.

19 Item, if it chance that in time of skirmish, or in any other conflict with the enimie, some one do aduenture to flie and run away from his fellowes, if in the flying his Captaine or any other souldier by shooting at him, or by striking at him do chance to kill him, they shall incurre no danger for so doing: and if such a flier chance to escape at that time, and afterwards be taken, let him according to the law of armes suffer death for the same: for one such a recreant may be the ouerthrow of a great multitude.

20 Item, it standeth with the law of armes, that ech common souldier shall be sworne, that they will not haue amongst themselves any priuate counsels, assemblies or conuenticles, upon paine of the losse of their liues.

21 Item, there shall no souldier, neither in time of marching, nor during the time of their incamping, hold or keepe any whispering or talke, or secretly conuey any letters vnto their aduersaries, without lycence from the chiefe Captaine, upon paine of the losse of his life.

22 Item, if there be any one, or a more number, that shall go about any treason, or any other conspiracie to be committed against the Campe or garrison, such a traitour or conspiratour shall be accused vnto the knight marshall, and he that betrayeth and accuseth such an offender, shall haue for his reward a moneths wages or more, as the fact is hainous: so the reward is to be increased vnto the partie that reueileth the same, and the offender to receiue the reward of a false traitour.

23 Item that no souldier shall be suffered to be of a ruffianlike behauiour, either to p. uoke or to giue any blow or thrust, or otherwise wilfully strike with his dagger, to iniurie any his fellow souldiers with any weapon, whereby mutinies manie times ensue, upon paine of the losse of his life.

24 Item, if any one beareth hatred or malice, or any euill will for any occasion done vnto him, and so striketh him, let

leteth

loseth his hand, if otherwise he seeketh reuenge, then by law he loseth his life.

25 Item if any souldier be warned to watch and ward, and he do not come, he shall be punished at the discretion of the captaine: but if any souldier be summoned to watch, and he appeare, and after the watchword giuen, & the watch set, he departeth and leaue the watch, such a one shall without mercie be punished with the losse of his life: neither shall any man set another to watch in his place without the leaue of the Captaine, vpon paine of his life.

26 Item if no souldier or souldiers draw his or their swords, or vse any other kind of weapon, with violence to do hurt within or without the Campe, during the time of the warres, vpon paine of death. It hath lately bene vsed with moze fauor of life, as such an offender to lose his hand: but it is the discretion of the Lord chiefe Generall, in whose hands lyeth both the life and death of the offenders after their arrainment and iust condemnation.

27 Item, the like law is against the officer & officers of any band in the campe, if he strike any souldier without such occasion, as is permitted him in the articles to do, otherwise he may defend himselfe.

28 Item that no person or persons presume to be mustered, or to take wages befoze he be sworne to be faithfull, and truly to serue his Prince in those warres present, vpon paine of death.

29 Item that the Harold at armes shall proclaime & publish al that the Generall shall giue him in charge, in the place & places where he is commanded, and not to adde or diminish any part or parcell thereof vpon paine of death.

30 Item, there shall no souldiers or other men, procure or stir vp any quarrell with any stranger, that is of any other nation and such as serue vnder one head and Lord with them, neither in their gaming or otherwise, vpon paine of the losse of his life.

31 Item, there shall no souldier or other person, being in Campe or march, take away any thing from any man being their friend, by violence or deceit, as their victuals or other necessaries, vpon paine of the losse of his life.

32 Item

32 Item when that there are any victuals caried or brought vnto the campe, no man shall run out to take any part of them befoze they be brought to the appointed place for the purpose: no though they offer for them moze then they be worth, vpon paine of the losse of his life.

33 Item if that the prouost martiall haue at any time taken an offender, and according to his office, he carrieth him to be punished: and if that one or moze souldiers seeke to rescue the said malefactor, and in this stirre the offender escape, he or they that are the occasion of this escape, shall be punished with the like punishment as the malefactor should haue bene, whether it be by life or otherwise, according as the waight of the crime requireth.

34 Item if there be anie found, that hath entered his name vnder two captaines, and hath taken wages, armour and weapons befoze hand: such a person shall be taken for a periured man, and by the law of armes, shall for the same lose his life.

35 Item if any man that hath a place appointed him by the harbinger or officers for his tent or lodging, hee must hold himselfe content withall: neither shall hee molest any man lodging within his tent or cabbin, or other lodging at any time, for anie occasion vpon paine of the chiefe captaines displeasure, and such punishment as he shall thinke most fit for the offence.

36 Item that no man shall sound and make any alarme, except it be neede, or vpon commandement from the higher officers, vpon paine of the losse of his life.

37 Item when of necessitie the alarme is made, each man must be hirre him to be ready for battaile, vpon paine of the losse of his life.

38 Item at the first warning of the drum or secretly, all souldiers must be in a readinesse, and resort to the place appointed, which commonly is the market place (being first of all vntied with his ensigne) and from thence in order of aray to the enemies, as they be commanded, vpon the paine of the losse of his life.

39 Item all souldiers, being horsemen or footmen, must diligently in order of aray by sound of drum or trumpet, accompany the ensigne to watch, ward, or reliefe of the same, being there silently in a readinesse to withstand or discover the enemies: & as occasion shall serue to brute the alarme, with the vsuall worde,

arme

42 The art of Warre.

arme, arme, or bowes, bowes, if numbers or anie bandes be in paine, vpon paine of losse of their liues.

40 Item all souldiers must keepe their armor and weapons faire, cleane and seruiceable in a readinesse at euerie sodaine, none intermedling but with his owne, euerie one to helpe other to arme, and diligently to resort to the place of seruice, at scrie, and larum vpon paine.

41 Item all souldiers must honestly intreate, and truely paie victuallers and artificers, allowed for the reliefe, being friends or enemies, and with curteous words encourage such to victual, and relieue the companies or campe vpon paine.

42 Item all souldiers, in watch, ward, march, or otherwise, shall haue special regard, that if there be man or woman desirous to speake with the superiours, or being thy enemies for feare doe forsake his owne power, and resort to thee: let such secretly be conneied to the Lord chiefe generall, regarding that they view no secrets, leaſt they be double spies vpon paine of the losse of their liues.

43 Item captaines and officers, must oft frequent and resort vnto the souldiers lodgings to see in what state their armor and munitions be, and to giue great charge that their furniture be alwaies in a readinesse, their corlets with all peeces belonging to the same, and their caliners to be made cleane and oiled, to haue match & powder drie, bullets fit for their peeces, stringes whipped for their bowes, their billes and halberdes to be kept sharpe. And often to view euery particular, vpon paine.

44 Item he that shall depart out of the place where he shall be put, by his head or any officer whatsoeuer, for a lost Sentinel, spy, watchman, scout, or warder, as well by day as by night, as it often happeneth, to discouer some dealings of the enemy, without attending and staying for him, that placed him there, to take him away, except he should remoue in hast to aduertise his head of the successe of the enemies assaulting or doing anie outrage, shall be punished with death.

45 Item whoſoever should rashly offend or hurt, either in word or deedes, any man belonging to the deputies or head officers of iustice or captain, there being in pay for sergeants. And they being appointed to carrie no other weapon, with scales or scales, but billes or halberds, they may be knowne for men of iustice,

The art of Warre.

43

iustice, and not for souldiers.

46 Item whoſoever standeth within or without the campe or barres, to watch or scout, and doth his dutie so euill, that thorough his negligence, the enemy setteth vpon the campe at vnawares, he shall die.

47 Item he that vnder colour of doing the duetie of a scout or spie, perceiuing the enemies haue assaulted the campe, and he with such faining lieth still, shall die for it.

48 Item he that shall forsake the defence, in generall or particular, of the batterie of the trench, of the passage of a bridge, or other like to him committed, but lightly, not forced goeth away, shall be for so offending, punished with death.

49 Item whoſoever entring into a Citie taken by force, followeth not his ensigne whither soeuer it shall go, vntil the Generall make proclamation, that euerie man shall take booties: And if the general cause no such proclamation, to be made, & that souldiers make spoile, he shall incurre the paine of death, and if proclamation be made that they shall cease from taking prizes and booties, and after licence giuen if they giue not ouer, they shall fall into the same punishment.

50 Item whoſoever seeing the ensigne, vnder the which he warreth in fraies or fight, by chance be fallen in the hands of the enemies, if he be there present, and doe not his indeuour to recover it, and when it is cowardly lost, to punish the souldiers which haue suffered it to be cowardly lost, with death.

51 Item, he that shall flee from the battaile, being in the face and front of the enemies, or shall go slowly and slackly to toyne, and a front with them, in case it be to fight a field battaile, or in anie skirmish what soeuer, shall be punished with death.

52 Item he that shall faine himselfe sick, to auoid the fighting of the enemy, or because he would not goe to anie other enterprise to vse his handes, but (I meane) there for to rob, for to such affaires they will be ready inough, shall be cruelly punished.

53 Item whoſoever seeing his generall, or his captaine, or other colonell, and officer of the campe, in the hand of the enemies, and succoureth him not with all his power, and may doe it, not respecting any danger, shall suffer death.

45 Item he that shall rob or spoile the people of the countrie or subiectes or vassels of the prince he serueth, shall die.

54

55 Item

44 The art of Warre.

55 Item he that by theft should steale or rob the armes, weapons, or horses, or other thing from anie other, seruing against the enemies, shall die.

56 Item hee that should ransome or take, or otherwise mis-ble the people of the countrie, except they should be enemies or rebels to the prince, shall be greatly punished.

57 Item he that shall play at any game for his armes, weapons or horses, which are written vpon the roll, or through his negligence shall lose them, or lend, giue away, or lay them to pawne, let him die.

58 Item he that goeth further then two hundred steppes or paces from his quarter, without licence of his captain, specially when the campe looketh or staieeth to be assaulted by the enemies, except he should be sent for by his heades, shall be punished with death.

59 Item he that shall goe longer then the houre appointed in the night abroad, in the campe wandring, except hee should be sent by his superiours for a matter of weight, from head captain to head captaine, by a counter-token, shall be cruelly punished.

60 Item he that shall lodge strangers, whether he be of the campe or not, without licence of the generall or of his captaine, either in his lodging or vnder a tent, except he be of his chamber or squadron, or by the captaine appointed for service forth of the campe, shall be punished. But euerie one ought to be in the night with their Camerads and chamber-fellowes, and not to be deuided from their lodgings, that occasion seruing, they may be ready with their weapons in their handes: neither ought they to lodge watch, or scouts, or of the search: for that the spies hauing no lodging, any excuse being found out, may the better be apprehended. Also if the scout-watch be taken from their quarter, faining to be a souldier of the campe when they are to spie in the night: they for so offending shall be cruelly punished with death.

61 Item whosoever shall make anie wordes, daedes, or questions in the ward, or in an ambush, or in other place, where respect and silence is needfull, shall be punished.

62 Item he that should be reuenged of anie iniurie received, either newly or before-time done, by an indirect way: that is, traiterously and not by way of reason, or by way of combate, shall die.

The art of Warre. 45

die to bodie, by the licence of his Generall, shall suffer death.

63 Item he that should dare be so bold as to play with false cardes and dice, or should vse in play anie priuy falshood, theft or deceit in any wise, shall be punished.

64 Item he that of presumption should passe out of his place into another, either before the battell or in marching, should out of order make halt to go before, to be the first that should come to the lodging of the campe, or in marching should goe out of his rancke from one battaile to an other, or he that doth not obserue the order of marching, shall die.

65 Item he that shall take or ransom vpon his host or lodger, or vpon any other that is not his lawfull prisoner by good order of warre, and that he is lawfully taken, the ransome excell not the articles of agrément, that there be a iust ransome set, vpon paine of punishment.

66 Item he that shall enter in, or goe forth by any other gate, stræte or way, then that which shall be accustomed, into the citie, pales, or list or fort, where the campe is lodged, that is going ouer the walles, or vnder some breach, and not by the ordinarie gate, let him fall into the paine of death.

67 Item whosoever doth not immediately retire, when hee shall heare the trumpet or drum, sound the retreat, either of a set battaile, or of a skirmishe or batterie, or of anie other fight, or should goe in or come forth of the citie, when the assault is giuen to the walles thereof, shall die.

68 Item he that speaketh, or calleth, or crieth aloud, amongst the ordinance, or in the battaile, or in anie place where silence needeth, except he were a head, or other officer, or sergeant, commanding some new order, shall die.

69 Item hee that shall commit anie thing whatsoever it be, whereby it may be coniectured, that it is against the prince, and damageable to the generall and the campe, shall die.

70 Item drums and pipes must oft sound and exercise their instruments, warning as the mouth of man, to all pointes of ser- uice: so must souldiers diligently learne and obserue the mean- ing of the same, that none plead ignorance, neglecting their dueties to seruire appertaining. Also sometimes they shall re- ceive from the higher officers or captaines, secret commande- mentes by word of mouth, the which must withall diligence be obserued,

46 The art of Warre.

observed and cruelly executed vpon the losse of their liues.

71 Item no man in their marching through what place soeuer they shall passe, shall set any thing on fire, no not their cabbins and incamped place at their departing, without commandement from the chief general, vpon the paine of the losse of their liues.

72 Item if at any time, any man shall in the time of his drunkenesse quarrell and fight with his fellowe, and in so doing, chance to kill him, he shall in so doing receive as great punishment by death, as if he had bene sober.

73 Item if any souldier doe drink himselfe drunke, or be found drunke, within the compasse of the day and night of his watch, and specially if he be unable to stand in Sentinel, or do his dutie, such a one must be most severely punished.

74 Item note that souldiers shall sweare at their first entring into seruice that they will faithfully and truly serue their captaine for sixe monethes together, and when the sixe monethes are expired, they shall sweare to serue him sixe monethes more, if he need them: And if the captaine needeth them not so long, but mindes to discharge his band, the captaine shall allowe each of them halfe a monethes wages at his departing, and so discharge them.

75 Item there shall no man make anie shott, or other stirring noise in anie corner or open place of Citie, Town, Castle, Fort, or Campe, whereby any danger or inconuenience may grow vnto the companie any maner of wayes, on paine of the losse of his life.

76 Item he that shall disclose the watch-word to enemy or friendes, except it be to such a one as hee shall be appointed by his gouernour: or shall be found a sleepe in the watche, scout, or ward, shall be punished with death.

77 Item if any captaine for corruption sake, shall giue licence to his own souldier, or to any other souldier without the licence of the Generall to depart the campe, shall receive the same punishment that the souldier should receive.

78 Item that no souldier should goe out of the campe in the night time without the watch-word, in danger of his life, for if he be slaine so by the watche, there is no blame to be laid vpon them that kill him.

79 Item there shall no souldier go out of the campe without his

The art of Warre. 47

his armour and other weapons, vpon the paine of the losse of his life.

80 Item euerie captaine shall sweare, that he shall charge euery corporall vpon his oth, that he shall denounce euery souldier that is vnder his charge, and that is not able and meete to serue.

81 Item in like case if the said corporall shall receive anie new or strange souldier into his band, his part and dutie is, that he giue vnto the higher captaine knowledge thereof.

82 Item no man of what condition soeuer he be, shall be so bold as to conuey away anie offender vpon the paine of the losse of his life.

83 Item that euerie souldier shall haue vpon his outermost garment some special signe or taken, whereby he may be known, such a one as the higher captaines shall agree vpon. As for example, he shall haue vpon his garment a red crosse, and vpon his armour, a red lace or such like, whereby he may the better be knowne of his fellowes: and if there be anie shall be found without the said signes and tokens, he shall be vsed as an aduersarie, or enemy.

84 Item that all souldiers, entring into battaile, assault, skirmish, or other faction of armes, shall haue for their common crye and word, S. George, S. George, forward or vpon them, S. George, whereby the souldier is much comforted, and the enemy dismayed, by calling to minde the antient valour of England, which with that name hath bin so often victorious, and therefore he that vpon any sinister zeale, shall maliciously omit so fortunate a name, shall be severely punished for his obstinate erroneous heart, and peruerse mind.

85 Item if anie Captaine or other Officers shall procure skirmishe, or fight the battaile without commandement from the higher Officers, for so offending, they shall receive death.

86 Item if that anie number of Souldiers be commanded, and placed by the head Captaines, to defend or keepe anie Citie, Tower, Castle or Fort, or anie other place, and they being sharpely assaulted by the enemy, once, twice, or thrice, or oftner, in this case the lawe of Armes is, that the Lord Generall shall allowe, and paye vnto such a number



ber of souldiers but ordinarie wages: neither is there by law of armes any thing more due unto them: and if the said Castles, Towers, or fortresse, shall be solde or be betrayed by the said captaine, officers, or souldiers, or otherwise yeilded, without the commandement of the prince, or at the appointment of the generall: shall be as false traitors vsed.

87 Item if anie Captaine, Lieutenant, Sergeant, Corporall, or other officer, or souldiers, shal come into the hands of the enemy, any citie, fortresse, tower, or place of defence, doth incurre, as I haue said, the danger of death, if yet by chance be not more then constrained to deliuer by the same, or that it is like a man of valour would haue done so: and therefore they ought neuer to abandon the place, for words or letters of the enemy, neither at the sight of the inuironing campe: for it is not lawfull for the Castellane to leaue his Castle, if he haue victuals, men, and munition, or doth hope for succours. Therofore respect is to be had, which must be holden as a maxime, that where the place may be defended by assault without batterie, that at least one assault is to be abidden, and mo to be aspected if it be possible: and if it can suffer batterie, they must abide at y least a volée of Canons: and if the place be so weake that it cannot sustaine, neither the one nor the other, and that it be farre distant from succours: to yeeld doth merite neither punishment of the prince, nor of the enemy: but otherwise being of force, able to sustaine the enemies furie, and cowardly or traiterously to deliuer the same, merites death of the one and the other.

88 Item if there be anie Citie, Castle, or other fort, yeilded by the enemy, without expugnation: there shall no man be so bold to enter into the said place, to spoile or otherwise to kill or do any outrage, without leaue of the generall, vpon paine of the losse of his life.

89 Item there shall no man depart out from the precinct of the campe, with anie bootie or spoile, without leaue of the chieffest officers or head captaine, vpon the paine of the losse of his life.

90 Item if any man for feare forsaketh the place appointed him to fight in, and for feare throweth downe his weapon, the officers or souldiers may kill him without anie danger.

91 Item if any man saying that he hath done some worthe thing in fight, & be proued contrarie, shuld be punished by death.

92 Item

92 Item if a Regiment, or band, shall by mistakes or otherwise incurre the lawes of the field, if is requisite and necessary, for that all shall not be put to death, that euerie mans name be taken and put into a bagge, and that the tenth lot should be executed: The which although euerie man do not feele, yet neuer thelesse he shall feare the euent.

93 Item at such times as the General or captaine doth muster, traine, or saue any battaile, skirmish, assault, or other warlike encounter, if anie souldier doth either negligently or wittingly, hurt, maime, or kill his companion with powder, bullet, or meanes soener, such a one shall seuerely, and exemplarily be punished accordingly.

94 Item that ech corporall, and other officer, shal haue either in witten hand or print, these marttall lawes, and this booke, wherein a priuate souldier is instructed, bought and prouided at the charges of the whole Squadron out of their paie, to the end that it being continually repeated to the souldiers, no man may plead ignorance, but receiue condigne punishment according to his offence.

95 Item that enery captaine, lieutenant, ensigne-bearer, sergeant or corporall, so often as their bands, Squadrons, and souldiers enter into ward, shall appoint the clarke of the band or some one that can read, once in the day or in y night, to read vnto the companie (that must attentively giue eare) not only these marttall lawes heere set downe, but also all the course of my directions belonging to a priuate souldier, Corporall, &c. contained in this booke, for their instructions, vnder paine of open punishment by the Generall, or Marshall.

96 Item that the foresaid officers after one twelue monethes seruice, wherein the souldier hath had sufficient experience, & is inured in these preceptes and directions, they shall euen as the scholemaster doth the childre, call euery one particularly to account, & examine them seuerely heerein, and to esteeme those for old and perfect souldiers, that know these lawes and their dutie by heart, and at their fingers endes, and the rest Bisionians and fresh-water souldiers, that are ignorant, although they haue serued seuen yeares, yea & to place them in the most seruile seruices. And if there be any that maliciously or disdainfully persist in their blunt ignorance, either to dishonour them, and discharge them,

50 The art of Warre.

them, or else to punish them with open shame and infamie.

97 Item if there be any man that shall infringe, and not maintaine, confirme, and to his power diligently and dutifully keepe and obserue thise articles aforesaid, such shall as pertained persons with all severity be punished: And if any souldier or souldiers shall offend in any manner of thing that doth belong and appertaine to the duty of a souldier, whereof there is no mention made in these articles, such an offender shall be punished at the discretion of the Marchall of the field and Generall.

These articles must be openly read in the presence of the chief Captaines, by the notary or scribe of the Court, and after that they be read, the oth shall be ministr'd unto every man by the pretor in this wise, or the like wordes, to the same end and purpose: speaking unto the whole companie, and saying: My brethren and friends, that are here present, you have heard the articles of our soueraigne, containing the chiefe and principall points of our rights and lawes of the field, and of the oath, and the maner thereof, which euery souldier ought to take. All you therefore that do meane faithfully and valiantly to obserue, maintaine, fulfill, confirme, and keepe the foresaid articles, let him heere now either openly refuse to be a souldier, or with me hold by his finger, and say after me.

All these articles which haue bene openly red vnto vs, we hold and allow as sacred and good, and those will we truly and stoutly confirme, fulfill, maintaine, and keepe so helpe vs God, and his deuine word, Amen.

These articles with others, which for tediousnesse I omit, would be published, some vpon paine of death, some with greater, and some with lesse punishment, to euery one that doth offend, without any remission or forgiveness, or regard of blood, degree, kindred, or friendship: specially at the beginning to lie in campe, whereby the army may the better be set in good order, and to make it fearefull of God, of iustice, and of the Generall, with loue and feare.

The execution heereof onely appertaineth to the Maister of the Campe, for the hearing, ordering, and determining of causes of iustice vnder the Generall, as the Lieutenant of a Citie or Towne, deputie, for the prince. For the maister of the Campe is the

The art of Warre. 51

The chief of the orders, who hath place in the field in many things as principall next to the Generall, who hath the chiefe government in pitching the campe, and dislodging.

Briefly from the General downward, it is the greatest charge and burden that is in the armie, and therefore it is requisite that he haue good knowledge and remembrance of all the orders whereby the warres is to be gouerned, and that he be of good practise and experience, and duly obeyed.

But such cases as are capital and of great importance, should be heard and determined by the Generall and his iudges: It sufficeth that God is the knower and determiner, and next vnto him his deputies vpon earth: who failing to do iustice, either for zeale, loue, or hatred, shall yeeld account thereof befoze the diuine iudge, and this law cannot be auoided by vs, but we shall be cited and called by way of appeal.

Briefe notes of other meane offices, as Drums, Fifes, Surgeons, and the Clarke of the Band.

Drums and Fifes must be chosen of able qualities and personage, secret and ingenious, skillfull in the sound and vsing of their instruments, which must warne as the mouth of a man to all intentes of seruice, diligent in times conuenient to instruct souldiers in the same, that none by ignorance neglect their duties. These be oftentimes sent on messages, imposing charge, which of necessitie require languages, sometimes to summon or command the enemies to render, sometimes carrie ransomes, or redeme, or conduct prisoners. Many other things to them do appertaine, as befoze is rehearsed, &c.

A chyrurgion is necessary to be had in euery band, who ought to be an honest man, sober, and of good counsell, skill in his science, able to heale and cure all kind of sores, wounds, & griefes: to take a bullet out of the flesh and bone, and to stake the fire of the same, and that he haue all his tooles and instrumentes with other necessarie stuffe, as oyles, balmes, salues, steepes, roulers, bolsters, splinters, and all other things to the science belonging. Which also ought to haue courage for his patient, and alloted stuffe, he shall readily employ his industrie vpon the sore and wounded, and not intermedling with others, to his own charge nolesome. Such be placed with the ensigne, and lodged neere

to the captaine, and neere their baldricke in time of fight, which by law of the field is their charter.

The Clarke of a band would be a man chosen of a discrete behauiour, such a one as hath the vse of his penne and skill full in Arithmaticke, who must haue a booke in the which hee must write all the names of the souldiers appertaining to the band, diuiding euerie weapon by themselves, that they may be the readier to be mustred, & otherwise to be placed in order of march, at watch and ward the clarke must be attentiu with his booke to call euery mans name, to see who is absent, and that certificate thereof be made vnto the captaine, who must as befoze is rehearsed, without sicknesse or some licence of the head officers see him or them punished to the example of all others. He must sometimes in the watch and ward, read vnto the souldiers, the Militarie lawes and directions, causing first a solemne silence to be made, and then proceede in reading, examining, and considering with euerie particular and common souldier, touching his memozie of these thinges, for his full instruction. Also the Clarke is to take charge of the captaines munition, who seeing it deliuered vnto the souldiers, must take note how much is deliuered, vnto whom, and what daie of the moneth it is deliuered, with the price. Likewise he must repayze to the Clarke of the victuals, and by the Captains warrant receiue such bread, beere, and other victuals, as is to be had, and to deliuer it to those that shalbe thought by the Captaine to be of credite, to victuall the band by the princes price, and to take tickates of them as well for that it is deliuered vnto them, as what they doe deliuer vnto souldiers. Also he must in the captaines name and by his warrant repaire vnto the merchantes and other artificers, and take such wares as the officers and souldiers haue need of, who must at the paie daie by the Captaine be answered. Also provided that the victualler alloweth but the Souldier six pence a daie, the ouerplus goeth to their payment of furniture and apparell.

*hon* The Clarke must oft peruse the tickates to see that no more be deliuered than their wages come to, that the captaines thereby receiue no losse. The clark ought to inquire when any be departed this world, also when any be slaine, and discharged the band, and to make a iust note thereof, wherby certificate may be made

to

to the muster master, that y<sup>e</sup> Prince in no wayes may be hindered, neither the Captaines by the victuallers receiue any detriment or losse. Finally, he must vpon the report of the Corporals or other officers, finde and procure of the Captaines, reliefe for the sicke and wounded souldiers and prisoners, which ought to be redemed out of the enemies hand.

The Prelates charge that takes care of souldiers of the Band.

**T**O knit by this first discourse of Militarie directions, and martiall lawes, special care must be had to prouide one man amongst the many scozes of souldiers, that may governe and direct in spiritual causes, who ought to be wise, learned, honest, sober, patient, and of exemplare life: who must offer by dayly sacrifice of thanks for his whole companie, must instruct them to be penitent, confessant, and restore to euerie man his right: to communicate in Catholike and Christian manner, so often as they can, chiefly at speciall times appointed by the Church, and befoze any dangerous attempt, to feede them with wholesome fode of learned instructions, wherein they may learne how to liue, and so consequentky to teach their companies their dueties towards God and their Prince, and to giue ghostly counsel and spirituall reliefe vnto the sicke, wounded, weake in bodie or in conscience, and that such be well armed with spirituall armour, that is, with god knowledge and god liuing, readie to perswade them manfully to withstand their enemies, the flesh, the diuel, the world and desperation, putting them in sure hope through y<sup>e</sup> equitie of their cause, their conformitie to the church, and their firme faith in our sauour Iesus Christ, to enter into the campe of euerlasting life, where they shall ride amongst the souldiers on white horses, clothed in white and pure silke, crowned with bright triumphant garlands, as the scriptures do witness. This and such like belongs vnto such personages as take care of the souldiers in a warlike band.

Now then to conclude, & to make an end of my first discourse, I would wish all valiant minded souldiers, carefully to carrie in mind those precepts which are proper and due vnto a priuate souldier, which I partly haue collected and set downe in this

H 3

hozt

54 The art of Warre.

short pamphlet, that when he shall be called unto a higher office, he may deservedly ascend the third steppe of martiall office, and so by degrees rise to the height of supreme government.

How pikes are to be carried in aray, march, or battaile.

Those that are appointed to carrie pikes in aray of rankes or battell, must know that pikes amongst all other weapons that belongs to souldiers, is of greatest honor and credite: and truly, whoeuer doth carie and manage the same weapon well and with good grace, doth make a bette beautifull and pleasant shew to the beholders, and chiefly when it is caried vpon the shoulder, sustained and supported with a good grace, and the hand that doth sustaine it be on that side the shoulder where it is placed, and with *il Combedo alto*.

They must likewise be aduertised which march in the foremost rankes, if they be vpon the right side, to hold their pikes continually in marching in the right hand, and vpon the right shoulder without euer changing it: and so likewise being vpon the left side of the ranck, to hold it alwayes vpon y left shoulder: those that be in the middl of the ranckes haue libertie to vse that side y is best for their commoditie, either vpon the right or left hand, and to moue their pikes from shoulder to shoulder at their choise and pleasure: It is true that the iust carying of the pike of those that march in the middl of the ranckes, is to hold it vpon the left shoulder, & to carie their right hand behind vpon their dagger, or vpon their side, and so generally all, as well they that be in the middl, as those that be in the head of the ranckes are to obserue this order, to carie that hand which is at libertie behind them, or vpon their sides. Let him march then with a good grace, holding vp his head galantly, his pace full of grauitie and state, and such as is fit for his person, and let his bodie be straight and as much vpright as is possible, and that which most imports, is that they haue alwayes their eyes vpon their companions which are in rancke with them, and before them, going iust one with the other, & keeping perfitte distance without committing error in the least pace or step, and euerie pace and motion with one accord and consent, they ought to make at one instant time. And in this sort all the ranckes entyrelly are to

The art of Warre. 55

to go, sometimes softly, sometimes fast, according to the stroke of the drum. The heele and tippe of their pikes would be equally holden, both of length and height, as nere as is possible, to auoid that they fall not out to be by bearing them otherwise, like vnto Organ pipes, some long, some short. The measure & proportion thereof, to hold the heele of the pike is this. It is necessarie for him to haue an eye to the rancke that doth march before him, and so carrie the butte end or heele of his pike, that it may be iust ouer against the ioynt of the ham of the souldier, that in march shall be straight before him: and so euerie one from hand to hand must obserue the proportion of that height, that is right behind vpon the ioynt of the knee, for by doing so they cannot commit error, carying in their march that legge that is vnder that arme that sustaines and carries the pike of iust and euen proportion, by mouing their pace right vnder the staffe of the pike, going in their march, as I haue said before, iust and euen, with a galant, stately, and sumptuous pace: for by doing so, they shall be esteemed, honored, and commended of the lookers on, who shall take wonderfull delight to behold them march in that order.

The

THE SECOND BOOK OF  
MILITARIE DIRECTIONS,

WHEREIN IS SET DOWNE THE  
office of a Sergeant, Ensigne bearer, Lieutenant,  
and the Gentlemen of a band, how to traine,  
skirmish, and discover.

*And first, the Office of the Sergeant of a Band.*

**S**ince euerie officer through his continuall exercise and dayly diligence in executing his charge, doth attaine vnto perfite experience by dayly practise, which is as it were conuerted into nature: *Againe* soze he which determines with himselfe to be accounted sufficient and of abilitie, to discharge the place of a good Sergeant of a band, with a forward intent to learne and be thoroughly instructed, ought first to be a souldier that hath seene much, and a Copozall of good experience, according to the directions of my first booke: In which two romes it is verie conuenient, that he haue tasted and bene present at great diuersitie of seruice, & warlike enterprizes, and to carrie a resolute mind to delight in y<sup>e</sup> exercise of this office, to the end he be not found therein irresolute and ignozant: and that likewise he faile not in the readie performing of any enterprize, when martiall affaires do call him forth to put the same in execution.

First of all it is verie requisite that he haue most perfitelie in memozie, the number of all the souldiers of the band, and distinctly with what weapons they are armed, what quantitie of Copozlets and pikes, how many armed and disarmed carrie short weapons, what number of hargabusters with murrians and without, how many musket-eares, how many light armed pikes and targets of pzoofe, that the better & moze redily vpon a sodaine, he may put the company in order.

He must euer plant the best armed in places most necessarie, as at the front and backe, the right and left side of a square. The first

first ranck in ozdinarie long marching, y<sup>e</sup> targets of pzoofe must go in as a readie rouer and bulwarke against the enemies shot: next to them the musketpzes, then the hargabusters, and after them the armed & light armed pykes: amidst whose ranckes he must at al times place y<sup>e</sup> Ensigne, garded with halberds or bills, & then againe the light armed and armed pikes, hargabuse and musket-eares, and last of all targets of pzoofe: by this equalitie of deuision, y<sup>e</sup> whole band at one instant shalbe readie to receiue any suddain surprize of the enemy. The sergeant carrying these things in his mind, hauing laid a distinct plat, he may verie easily varie their sozme and order as he shall be appointed, and as the situation of the place doth require, or the accidents of warre do constraîne.

He must neuer worke vnwarily, or at al aduentures, and tending to no determind purpose, as those that doe not remember the perfite rules and reckonings of their office, whereof there be now adayes ouer many, for when it is necessarie for them to alter their order, and that perforce they must quite change the sozme and fashon that then they obserue, they know not which way to begin. Therefore to the end his order and ranckes may be to the purpose duely and directly changed, and with facilitie disposed: let him euer disseuer and deuide one part of his weapons from another, causing euery one to turne and enter into their ranckes and order by themselves, so shall he proceed in turning away, setting forward, and intermixing one sozt of ranckes with another very orderly. And thereby the ful pzoportion of his band shalbe framed, as he hath determined, or as it is deuised by him that commands, either in marching forward and backward, or in turning without disorder, by 3. 5. 7. or 9. in a ranck, as the Lieutenant, Captaine, or Sergeant Maioz appoints.

He ought euer to beware that in ordering the ranckes, and appointing the souldiers their places, that they begin not to make debate or stomake one another for dignitie of place, the which doth oftentimes fal out to their great anoy and damage, and the officers tedious toile, for in enterprizes of great importance, euen in the presence of the inuading enemy, some vaine glorious fellows are accustomed to strue for the chiefest places: the which romes by all reason & of dueltie appertaine to the best armed, and not to any others, whose vnwary rashnes may be the ruine

## The art of Warre.

ruine of the whole band. Therefore fit and conuenient places are to be obserued with humilitie, the naked in their places, and the armed in theirs: but to touch one point which we haue alredie spoken of, I iudge it most conuenient that the armed (those for skirmitie excepted) must remaine in Maine stands and battalles, as some say, so abide by the stake, who ought to be so wel armed as they may heare and support the blowes of their enemies, and resist any furious charge, either of horsemen or footemen. Whereas besides their well ordered ranckes, by reason they be armed they make a more galant shew: giuing courage to thy owne people, and discourag to the enimie, and in profe are more profitable then the disarm'd, who remaining in their rooms, the contrarie succeds.

The Sergeant of the companie must haue speciall regard when victuals cannot be had for money, by forage or otherwise, to make repaire together with the Clarke of the band, to the principal munitions, that his companie tast not of famine: and from thence procure to haue so much as he wel can, or as is conuenient, and according to his receiued order, so must he depart and distribute all manner of munitions amongst the Corporals, that euery one of them may giue to their souldier their portion.

The like ought he to vse, touching powder for the Hargabur syes and Mucket syes, lead for bullets, match for them to burne, and eeh thing else whereof they haue neede, to the end they may alwayes remaine in order, and be verie well provided and stored, as nere as is possible, & as is most conuenient and to perswade the souldier that to gaine a place of more account, he will spare his pay to arme himselfe the more brauely. He must likewise haue diligent eye, that the said munition of match & powder be conserued warily from wetting, and kept with a speciall spare from vntimely spending: for this prouident precept doth import verie much in all enterprises, by reason that the negligence of the Sergeant, touching this necessarie foresight & care, hath bene the cause that the shot haue not bene able readily to performe their duties according to the appointed determinations, or as necessitie did require, by reason of their vnwarie keeping their munition in wet weather, or their generall wanting through vaine mispence, by which meanes many & most notable errors haue succeded of great losse and moment, & to the hinder

rance,

## The art of Warre.

59

rance, shame, and totall ruine of a whole companie or campe. Therefore it is most expedient that the Sergeant, together with the severall corporals, do diligently and narrowly examine, visite, search, and view the proper flasks, tutch-boxes, pockets, & other places where the souldiers are accustomed to carie & keepe their powder and match, and peruse diligently all those things without negligence, faining, or fauouring: diuers haue receiued great ignomie & shame in their office, for want of y<sup>e</sup> performace thereof: whereas by carrying a contrary care, they haue bene vniuersally wel thought of, and commended of al good souldiers and valiant Captaines. Therefore as occasion doth serue and offer, he may admonish, put in minde, and reprehend with dexteritie the souldiers vnder his charge and guiding. To him it appertaines to lay his helping hand about al things necessarie for his companie, as well in prouiding for them, as dispencing, or deferring necessarie charges, except for the prouision and deuiding of lodgings; which is the office of the Furrier or Harbinger, who ought to be very tractable, diligent, & altogether officious, not being partial to any one for peculiar profite or pleasure, and therefore it is necessarie a Sergeant should know how to write, for it is hard by memorie to discharge his charge.

The Sergeant must be careful to accompanie, at the houre appointed, the guard to the place of the watch, in going by and downe alongst their flankes when he hath placed them in order, to see them keepe due distance, make the Laumband, march in straight line, with their ranckes carrie their armes in conformable proportion: and if vpon pleasure they giue a volée of shot in passing, to aduertise them to doe it orderly with due forme, one rancke after another, as they passe ouer against the Generall, or other great officer or personage, and not in a confused sort altogether, or by paces.

When he is arrived at the Corps of gard, and hath placed euery one in order, and prouided for all things necessarie for the watch of that night, he must then giue his aduise and counsell to the Corporals, that they keepe good order in their Sentinels, yea sometimes and verie often, it is good that he himselfe aide them to choose out the most fit places for them to stand in, to the end that the circuit of ground, which for all their fasties is to be kept, may be conueniently garded.

32

86

60 The art of Warre.

At the beginning of the day & the night, or somewhat later, he shall secretly give the Corporals the watchword, with the which they are to governe the gard as wel by night as day: the which word by the commandment of his Captaine, he must procure the Sergeant maior to give him, or of some other that shall haue the charge to give the same for want of his presence, or in place of this great officer.

He must arme himselfe in such sort, that he be no lesse apt then any other souldier to be able at time of need, both to defend himselfe, and offend the enimie: touching which effect, Duke Octauius Farnese in the expedition of 12000. foot men and 600. horse men, which Paulus the third Pope of Rome sent into Germanie against the Lutherans in aid of Charles the sixth, did dispose, that all the Sergeants of his bands should arme themselves with hargabuzes and murrians: saying, that so great a number of valiant men being Sergeants, as was in so great an assemble and expedition of such importance, it was neither good nor commendable, that they should onely be armed with their halberds, and therefore he ought to haue his Page or Muchacho second him with those furnitures: Neither seemes it inconuenient, but hauing placed in order all things pertaining to his office, that he place himselfe in ranke with the rest of the souldiers, yet in such a place as he may easily depart from thence when necessitie calles him away, to reforme or vse remedie to any disorder he vnderstands of.

He must with dexteritie proceed in reprehending and exhorting the souldiers to keepe their due order, and not to disband and stray abroad, but vpon needfull and lawfull occasions, and to take order in all other particular points, which are requisite to be obserued for the honour and profite of the companie, which things are chiefly to be procured and obserued by other officers.

Let him beware and abstaine from beating of souldiers at any time, that thereby he grow not odious: for it is not conuenient nor comely for an officer to strike a souldier, for thereby he so offends, that he doth incurre the paine to receiue punishment for so doing, of his Captaine or the master of the Campe.

He must be diligent, carefull, and vigilant in all his affaires,

The art of Warre. 61

for in this office, diligence and dexteritie is both to the purpose and most necessarie.

It is necessarie he be alwaies confozmable vnto the sergeant Maioz, by imitation and obedience in action, and like his shadow, to second him in all his doings: Of whom he may alwaies receiue information and order of all such things as be necessary for seruice of his band. And of him he may learne to proceede by confozmitie, in that which is conuenient for his office. For hee that is in companie with men of vertue and valor, that be of more excellent qualitie then he himselfe, shall euer reape some profite, and the rather for that he is bound to be in the sight, and nere about the sergeant Maioz, at all such times as anie thing is to be done: where he ought with a good eare, and diligent eye, give readie attendance, to execute such commission as shall be giuen him: specially those which appertaines to the ordering of the ranckes, and euerie thing else whatsoener without doing anie thing vpon his owne iudgement, but conferre with that great officer, towards whom he must alwaies be courteous and confozmable, and with an obedient and benevolent minde, diligently imitate him.

I suppose it moreouer necessarie as I said before, that he be able to write and read, considering the infinit number of things which are to passe through his hands, and which he ought to execute for the benefite of his companie, which cannot be alwaies ordered, disposed, and guided only by memorie: So consequently the sergeant is to take diligent & care of all the foresaid thinges to execute the pointes of his office speedily, and to rebuke and teach such as do amisse with lenitie, and although hee cannot violently strike and hurt anie man, yet neuerthelesse no man can resist his authoritie, but obserue the same as to the Captaines owne person, if he were present.

He is not to heare anie mutinous or rebellious wordes amongst the companie, but immediatly to reueale the same, that speedie reformation may be had, and faults amended. And thus must he be still occupied in reforming manners, mispence of munition, broken araires, and to be readie daie and night to seruice, by the captaine or Lieutenants commandment, to instruct the companie, to march, traine, and trauaile, aswell by signes from him framed, as other wise by wordes spoken, and to

haue speciall regard to the companie, to see that their armour and weapons be in a readinesse alwayes for seruice, for the diligent and skillfull vantage of this office, is of no small momentanie good order throughout the whole band, no lesse then the Centurion amongst the Romaines, who was captaine ouer a hundreth, and so likewise euerie hundreth in ech band ought to haue a seuerall sergeant to direct and gouerne.



The office of an Alferus or ensigne bearer.

**I**f it be a thing most requisite that a private souldier should haue a speciall zeale ouer his proper honour and credite, how much more is the same necessarie for a valiant Alferus or Ensigne bearer. Therefore hee must with all carefull diligence, and due discretion, ascend the fourth degree of this honourable discipline, being alreadie trained vp in the three first degrees, which is, of a private souldier, a corporal, and a sergeant, where by to his great commendation he may sufficiently merite the swaie of this office.

Having solemnly receiued the Ensigne of his Captaine, like a noble and expert Souldier, hee ought carefullie to keepe the same, and beare a certaine reuerent respect to it, as to a holie thing, yea and to be gelouse ouer the safetie thereof, no lesse then an amorous person ouer his louing mistresse: Since that onely with the sacred shade of the ensigne, being well guided, the generall reputation of all the band and companie is conserued.

Therefore the Alferus ought to be indoued with such custome, and vse himselfe with such courtesie and ciuilitie, that he may not onely procure the loue of his confederates, and friends,

friends, but of all the entire companie.

Besides, it is necessarie to haue neere vnto him a couple of assistantes at the least, that be practised and good Souldiers, which may be of the number of the Halbardyers that gonert his Ensigne, to the end that when hee is constrained to absent himselfe from the same, through some vrgent and necessarie occasion (for otherwise it is not to be permitted) hee may cause one of them take care and charge of his Ensigne, in what accident soeuer might fall out during that time. For that thing ought neuer to be left alone or abandoned to a slender and loose gard, which is of such a great importance, whereupon euerie mans honour and estimation dependeth: wherefore it ought at all to be carefully kept, and well accompanied.

Note that the Alferus, to defend his ensigne and himselfe at one instant, must haue in his one hand his drabone sword, and in the other the Ensigne: which thing is conuenient of him particularly to be performed, when it is time to assault the enemies vpon a Wall, Trench, Scalade, Bulwarcke, Breach, or in anie strait passage, or enterprize, since that with the point of Iron of the Ensigne staffe small defence can be made, aswell for the weakenesse of the staffe, as through the trouble and continuall waivering of the silke which is about it, so that in bearing the same displayed, hee ought rather to haue regard where he shall set his foote, then to the top of the staffe, or anie other place lesse necessarie, aswell thereby to flee affectation, which in carying thereof, is made manifest, as also to conduct the same with more assured courage.

Moreouer note that the most honourable place of the three or rancke is the right hand, and the second the left hand, which degrees likewise be obserued in all the rancks of other souldiers, aswel as when diuers ensignes do march together in one ranck, for amongst the bandes and squares of souldiers, the flanks doe alwaies resist the assaults and furie of the enemy: as the sides which be nearest to them, be alwaies garded of those that be most practised, and the middels part not, onely except the first and last rancke of the ordinance or battaile, where the middell is the place of greatest estimation: for the head or backe of the square being assaulted they then withstand the greatest



greatest furie. And by good reason, for this place of the midst is euer much more broken and endamaged of the enemies armes and force, then anie other part: wherefore amongst expert and valiant souldiers, this roome is of greatest honour, and of most estimation, as the place that hath greatest need of defence, which being subiect to moze open and manifest perill then the rest, is of greatest dignitie. For Captaines are accustomed to shew notable and singular fauour to that souldier which they preferre to an enterprize of perill and danger: so that it be capeable of issue and altogether desperate.

Neither is this to be accounted for a marvell, for as this profession is altogether different from others, so likewise the orders, and ceremonies are diuersly managed: if a man may terme those things ceremonies, which of necessitie ought with diligence to be gouerned with great care, art, and industrie: It becometh the Alferus, whilst he doth march in ordinance amidst the band, to go with a graue and stately pace, aduisedly and courageously ioynd with modesty, and without affectation or vainglorie: neither ought he to bow or decline his bodie at any time to anie person, that thereby he may represent and maintaine the reputation and excellencie of armes, and the ensigne before his Prince, chiefe ruler, Lord Generall, Colonell, Captaine, Gouernour, &c. As he passeth before them, he ought to aduance the point and tip of the ensigne, or rather with his arme bow down neer-hand all the rest of the ensigne, & so much more, by how much he is of greater dignitie & authoritie. In this sort shall he make signe of reuerence, and not pull off his cap or hat, neither bend his knee, nor moue anie one part of his person, thereby to retaine that dignitie due to the ensigne & his office.

The Alferus being in square, rancke, or ordinance, with the ensigne displaid, doth change (almost neuer) the place where he is planted to march, which is in the midst of the footmen, as a place most safe and best defended. Therefore those that otherwise would vse it, doe ground their opinion vpon some ancient order of the Romaines or Grecians, wherein they are deceiued, because at this day we are constrained to varie our order, considering our armes be varied, which do now fetch and bound much more and further off, and are moze pearcing then those of ancient time.

Neither

Neither is it expedient to put this officer, which is of such great respect, alwaies in hazard, as well for the good qualitie of his person, & which we must alwaies presuppose him to be of, as also for the office of great importance he supplies, since he doth sustaine the displaid ensigne wherein the reputation and honour of all the companie consists. But at such times as he shall march to a Scalade, breach and batterie: the valiant Alferus with his ensigne in one hand and his sword in another, as is before said, ought to enforce himselfe to be the first, and by all meanes to mount vp, to enter amongst the enemies, and to aduance and inuite the rest forward, both his inferiours, companions, & betters: for in effect at such times the particular guiding of the band appertains to him. Now to the intent that the souldiers at the instant time of a dangerous enterprize, and in a combersome & perilous time and place, may be inuited, & feruently stirred vp to follow the ensigne. He must therefore vse such courtesie to all men, that in all hazardes and great exployts, he being beloued of the Souldiers, may be verte much ayded and defended by them, where as otherwise they doe either suffer open ignomie, or danger of death, when as they be either abandoned at the point of extremitie, or traiterously slaine or wounded by their owne companions and followers: as at the assault of Dalahani, and a skirmish of brauerie at Louaine, chanced vnto two Generall Ensigne-bearers: of the Baron of Sheueran, Colonell of the tenne Ensignes of that. Therefore since he is the shadow of the vale, and good condition of his captaine and companie, let him be carfull of his dutie.

The Ensigne bearer may of his discretion and authoritie, espying the companie trauaile, or follow enemies to their disadvantage and perill, losing the wind, hill, or ground of advantage, disordering the aray, may stand still, and cause the drums and fifes to stand and sound the retreat, that the companie may resort and come to the Ensigne, and order the aray by the advantage of the ground, rather then abide the coming of the enemy.

He ought alwaies to haue about him, and to lodge where he doth himselfe, so manie good Drums as there be hundreth in his band: that at all times he may make Racolte, and gather his souldiers together, and for such like necessarie respects.

He

He ought neuer craue licence to go to anie enterprize whatsoeuer, for ante he hath to make himselfe knowne, or to win fame, but ought to remaine stedfast and firme, when his turne of seruice comes, in respect of the great charge he doth carie in the manage of the ensigne.

It is necessarie he haue a horse for his owne vse, the which whilest he marcheth ought to go nere the Ensigne, whether he be in square battaile or long march, for by taking his ease on horse-backe, he may keepe himselfe continually lusty and fresh, and therewithall may accomodate his cartage, or baggage, as some souldiers may likewise doe among the ordinarie cartage, prouided for by the captaine.

Note that the Ensigne which he receiued of his Captaine, must by him be restozed again at such times as he is discharged out of the company: if during the time of his seruice, there hath not chanced a battaile, assault, or other enterprize, wherein the Alferus being present, he hath not made manifest apparance, that he hath merited and deserued the same. For in such cases it is to be vnderstood, that he hath wonne and gained the same and not otherwise, vnlesse the captaine of his free will doth not giue it him, which is a verie ancient custome, specially amongst the Italians.

It is verie requisite the Alferus haue besides his two assistants, a valiant and couragious seruant, who is a practised souldier, and not a nouice or yongling, as some verie fondly and vnadvisedly do entertaine now adays, that continually being nere him, as well in the maine square battaile or elsewhere, to second him with a peece, pike, or target of proose, & may haue in such a one that intyre faith and assured credite that he should haue of a faithful companion, whom he must not keepe as an abiect seruant, but he ought to maintaine him, apparell him, and arme him with conuenient armes of defence, for sometimes it shall fall out in the daie of a fought battaile of a whole armie, that those deputed seruants may haue the custodie of all the Ensignes in the maine square battaile, and the Alferus of each companie, as men well armed be placed in the head of the battaile, or in some other principall or necessarie places which are to be gouerned and defended by practised and valiant souldiers: as particularly fell out at such time as the Marques of Vasto,

fought

fought at Cresola in Lombardie against the Frenchmen, which iourney was lost by the Emperialistes, although that daie they fought valiantly, and besides in other enterprizes, such men haue executed gallant seruice.

He must alwaies prouide a sufficient corpes de gard about his ensigne, as well by day as night, in what place soeuer he shall be, although no suspicion were to be had of the enemy, that thereby he may remaine safe from all sodaine surprizes, or vnprouided casualties, and the rather to maintaine the honour and reputation due to the ensigne, whereby all sinister inconuenience may be auoyded, and the maiestie and office of the same generally well respected: Specially when time and place of suspect ministers occasion. The Alferus must march to y<sup>e</sup> gard, either armed with a Curase of proose, or some other conuenient garment of defence, being still seconded with his seruant, who is to carie either target, halberd, peece or pike, or such weapon as he doth delight in, which at the seat of the gard, taking his Ensigne in his hand, he must let rest in the keeping of his seruant. Neither is it requisite in going or marching, that he vnlose and display the ensigne, without some speciall occasion, but ought to reserue the aduancing and displaying of the same at full, vntill he come in the sight of chieftaine or prince, or in the sight of the enemy, or other places of seruice.

It is necessary his ensigne haue certain speciall countersignes and markes, that it may easily be knowne of his souldiers, both nere hand and farre off, to the intent that in all exployts, and at vnknowne sodains, his souldiers may perfectly perceiue the same amongst the other ensignes, different from the rest, wherein the Alferus must vse an exquisite manage, that by his wise and valorous actions without anie other mans relation, may discerne his vertuous actions and forward proceedinges, which he ought to make apparant by some notable enterprize.

The Alferus must be a man of good account, of a good race, honest and vertuous, braue in apparell, therby to honour his office, and continually armed as well when no perill is feared, as in time of danger, to giue example to the rest of the souldiers not to thinke their armes burthenous, but by vse to make it as familiar to him as his skin.

Finally he must be a man skillfull, hardy, and couragious, of

k 2

able

able courage to advance and beate by the Ensigne in all extremities, secret, silent, and zealous, able often to comfort, animate and encourage the company to take in hand, and maintaine such extremities, enterprises, as they are appointed vnto, and neuer to retyze, but w<sup>h</sup>e of noble policie the higher officers command the same. Vnto this officer there should be certaine ceremonies v<sup>s</sup>ed in deliuerie of the Ensigne, reseruing it by oath in the presence of his band, at which time he must make bow and professe the same rather to be his winding sheete, and therein to lose his life, then through his default to lose the same: whereunto every priuat souldier should likewise be sworn, as among the Romans it was v<sup>s</sup>ed when he was not accounted a souldier, but a theefe, or robber, till he had taken his oth. And therefore their warres was called Militia Sacrata.

The office of the Lieutenant of a companie.

That persons vpon whom anie charge doth depend, and doth deseruedly manage anie affaire, must frame himselfe to vse due diligence, and with dexteritie suffer such tedious toyle, as in these serious affaires succeed, since that charge (as I haue already said) signifieth nothing else but a burthen of affaires.

Therefore that a souldier may deseruedly mount vp to this degree of worthy honour and martiall dignitie, he must vse all circumspect care to perfoyme his office like an expert Lieutenant, that the companie be well gouerned, which he must accomplish with a forward and willing mind (though of duetie he is bound to perfoyme the same) as well to content the minde of his captaine, as to augment his own honour and reputation. He must neuer appropriat vnto himselfe any one point of authoritie, but diligently discipher and vnderstand all thinges, and make relation thereof to his captaine, of whom it is necessarie he take all his commissions and directions. His part is to giue willingly and readily counsell and aduise to his captaine, as often as he is demanded, and otherwise neuer, vnlesse he see that the same may do manifest good, or in case of present perill.

The Lieutenant ought to carie w<sup>h</sup> him a diligent care of concord, for that particularly the pacification of discords & difference amongst y<sup>e</sup> souldiers of his companie, appertains vnto him, which

must be done without choler or passion, and must still handle them verie indifferently and curteously. For his indifferencie, besides the gaining of him trustie credite, doth make easie the desciding of any difference or disagreement, and is one point which of necessitie is most conuenient to an honozable peacemaker, although it be a verie difficile thing to procure peace in points of honour, specially amongst souldiers that stand much vpon their Punctos, and for that respect is it very hard to vse a iust balance: therefore in such causes it is most requisite that euerie one of the interested, shew at the full his entire cause, the which is a thing not bulgar, neither of small importance. And although the pacifier ought neuer to hang more vpon the one side then the other, yet it is conuenient he haue some small respect to him that is wronged against reason, rather then to him that is y<sup>e</sup> vnlawfull worker of y<sup>e</sup> iniurie. But if he finde any difficultie in resoluing these differences, let him confer with the Captaine, to the end that he, who is knowne to be the occasion, and wil not agree to an honest end, may be immediatly discharged: but if it be thought good that he remaine to serue a time, for the execution of some spectall enterprize, then the word both of the one and the other ought to be taken, vntill the same be perfoymed or the pay past, and then may discharge him, as is said, to shunne a greater scandale: for to enter into vnquiet quarrelling and discord, one equal with an other, and with one that receiues the like stipend, is not the part and qualitie of a subiect souldier, but of a free carelesse cutter, and band buckler, and of an insolent and importunate person, whose nature doth argue in him that his doings tend to an other end, then to become excellent in the honozable exercise of armes. But the case that one of them should valiantly overcome the other, yet vnto the Captaine doth arise no other then want, losse, and euill satisfaction: for when first he did receiue them into his seruice, he did presume that they were both of them equally to be esteemed, men of good credite and behaviour, and that for such they were conducted, and receiued stipend. So that quarelling and killing one the other, as often it falls out in resolute persons, or putting him to a dishonour or open foile: such a one doth not onely deprive the Captaine of a souldier, but also of himselfe likewise: For the law of reason doth binde the Captaine not to maintaine

an impotunate person, a malefactor, and an homicide, in one band no lesse then a wellordered citie: Considering it is requisite and conuenient his souldiers, rather then to imploy themselves in such quarrels, should indeuour and aduenture their bodies to ouerthrow and kill the enimie, thereby to procure his owne proper praise and peculiar profite. Always prouided, that the occasion of y<sup>e</sup> wars be concluded and published to be lawfull and honest, which easily in this respect doth remove all difficulties, whilst a man doth place himselfe in the service of a prince that is religious, prudent, and iust, and that haue expresse and lawfull power to leuie armes, and not with those which are of small authoritie, or tyzannous vsurpers of other mens states, and wicked blood suckers.

Therefore when the Lieutenant cannot by his owne dealings supply these wants, or pacifie and accord them, in such causes he may remit the care thereof vnto his superiour & Capitaine: And thus let him haue speciall care that by his meanes no quarrels do grow, neither that he suffer any faction or dissension to take deepe roote, for feare of banding and mutinies.

He ought to haue speciall respect that the Corporals and Sergeants be able duely to execute their office with due diligence, for the better performance of seruice, and personally aid them in setting the watch.

Likewise, to the intent that the Sergeant persist not ignorantly, or fall in any one point of his office: it behoues the Lieutenant in many particular pointes to aid him, both in respect of his owne credite, and for the generall benefite of the whole band: as in vsing diuers directions, disciplines, inuentions, putting the band in order, rancke, square, in accompanying them to the watch, and in executing such like enterprizes which commonly are to be performed.

So ought he likewise to delight himselfe extraordinarily (besides the other necessarie parts of his office) in taking view of the Corps de gard, and the Sentinels of his proper companie, to the intent they may remaine continually vigilant and redie, and ech mans duetie duly executed, the martial lawes read and examined, and a solemn silence generally maintained.

He must obserue great affabilitie and fraternitie with the Alferus, and friendly consult with him (specially if the Lieutenant

nant doth not manage both the one and the other office, as the Spaniards and other nations doe vse, and might very well be bled of vs, if the Generall or Coronell thinke good, both for a voyding of emulation and charge of pay,) but if they be two particular officers, and beare distinct sway in the band, then let the Lieutenant be very carefull (as he that is the chiefe) to auoide all stomaking and strife that might arise betwixt him & the Alferus, for thereby oftentimes great scandales haue salne out, and the diuision of the company, a thing aboue all other to be carefully forseene and shunned. He ought to vse a gracious iecture, & a courteous entertainment to all his souldiers, countenance euerie one ioyfully, and sollicit their causes carefully towards the captaine & the other officers, as the treasurers, pay-masters, commissaries and such like, yet euer by the captaines consent, yea & to the captain himselfe, by whose friendly fauour inferiour officers may be relieved for their pay or other wantes. Besides he ought to giue order and direction to all the company, deuiding & distributing the Squadres indifferently and discretely, to the intent the Corporals & other officers may be obeyed, & that ech enterprize may be performed without reply or contradiction.

It is necessarie that he put in euerie Squadre an equal number of euery sort of armes, and that ech weapon be sorted in a readinesse, to the intent y<sup>e</sup> in what place & time soeuer occasion doth require, euery one of them may to his great aduantage, proceede and fight the inuading enimie with a forceable strength.

Likewise it is good sometimes not to suffer a Squadre or rather a whole Corps de gard to consist of souldiers al of one countrie and nation, but ought rather to be artificially mixed, and to separate them, thereby to auoide quarrell and generalitie of factions, which by reason of their being together may the rather arise amongst consoyts of one natie countrie, & that moze commodiously then if they were separated.

The Captain being absent, the Lieutenant possesseth y<sup>e</sup> principall and chiefe place, and ought to be obeyed as captaine. Nevertheless in his presence, it is requisite he vse a certaine brotherly friendship and familiaritie towards al, yet that notwithstanding, he must proceede in all things with such modestie and granitie, as he may retaine such authoritie and reputation, as the office he doth hold, doth most worthily request him withall.

There

There ought to be in him a reasonable good knowledge and facility in expressing his conceit and meaning sensible, that the souldiers may vnderstand what they haue to do, to the intent he may the more easily imprint in the heartes and mindes of his souldiers, all such things as he determines, and that be necessarie for the better seruice of his Prince, and the benefite of his countrie and companie, whereunto he ought to apply himselfe with all possible diligence, since that of the Prince he is liberally paid, hath his being of his countrie, and is diligently obeyed of his band, where he swayes his present office & charge, which is truly of great credite and no lesse commoditie.

Let him prouide himself of a horse to beare him, to the intent he may be lustie and fresh in all enterprizes, and that he may continually take the view and diligently suruey the order which they are to keepe in marching, or in making *Alas*, and at other times besides in what enterprize soeuer.

He must take order that his baggage or carriage, which ought to be as little as may be, (which rule y<sup>e</sup> common souldiers ought likewise obserue) be bozne and conuaide amongst the common cartage, which the Captaine hath ordained and prouided for the vse of the whole band.

He must take diligent care to the redeming of prest or lent money, which the Captaine shall make according to occasion or neede amongst the companie, & to distribute the same conveniently amongst y<sup>e</sup> souldiers, & therof to reder & yeld good account to the Captaine, by doing whereof he shall pleasure the souldiers much, in which time of pay he hath verie good oportunitie to put the souldiers in minde, and to teach them to proceede in wel doing, and to desist from euill.

It appertaines generally to euerie Lieutenant of a band to be of great experience and ripenelle of seruice, whose authoritie in the absence of the Captaine (as partly I touched before) extendeth to examine, trie, reforme, correct, and amend any offence committed within the band, and also day & night to bring the companie with the Ensigne to the place of assemblie, there in order traine and exercise the same, as to the necessitie of seruice doth appertaine, and being commanded by the higher powers to march towards the enimie, must encounter and fight with them, as if the Captaine were in presence, who vpon impediment,

pediment, must sometimes be absent.

Finally, it appertaines to the Lieutenant to watch, ward, appoach, conduct, aduance against the enimies, and to encounter, animate, comfort, and also to encourage the companie by word and dede as need serueth: to refryze continually, maintaining skirmish, vntil he haue recouered some place of safegard.

The office and duetic that appertaines to the Lanze-Spezzate, volentarie Lieutenants, the Gentlemen of a Band, or Caualliere of S. Georges Squadrons.

The sundrie degrees whereunto valiant souldiers with aspiring minds seeke to ascend, for that they be many, & for that those which haue attained and serued in those romes and other great offices, by diuers sinister meanes and accidents, be now and then disseuered and made frustrate from their charge, as experience hath made many times apparant, who yet neuertheless being naturally desirous to continue in seruice, and perchance through forrain necessitie are diuen to remaine in pay, in attending further preferment: Therefore this place was first inuented for such persons, as a speciall seat wherein the flower of warlike souldiers doe sit, like a greene Laurell garland that doth enuiron the martiall head of a mightie armie, whose order for warlike force or fame, giues not place to the Grecian Falanges, the chiefest of the Romaine legions, or to the knightly constitution or couragious enterprizes of those of Arthurs round table. For there neither hath bene, nor can be found any place of such honour or reputation, as to be a Gentleman of a Band, whether we serue for pleasure or for profite, or haue attained thereunto by merite: or whether we haue bene Corporal, Sergeant, Alferus or Lieutenant, wherein Captaines sometimes do plant themselves, specially in the Collonels Squadre, and tempoize the time, vntill preferment do fall: for thereby their former reputation is nothing disgraced, nor their charge had, in or of any other companie, nothing derogated: Considering that those in these Squadrons either are, or ought to be souldiers of such policie and perfitte experience, that they be capable of any office vnder the degree of a Collonell, and may supplie any of those foresaid offices, or perfoyme any other enterprize of great importance, commanded by the Captain, Collonell, or Generall.

L

And

And for that many youtnes of noble parentage, and Gentlemen of ancient houses do likewise follow the warres, I would that vpon due triall of their merite, they should enter into these Squadrons, which the Prince or Generall is to confirme, and make a distinct order of valiant aduenturous souldiers, and call them Cavalliers of S. Georges Squadrons, at whose entrance thereinto, they shall take a solemn oth appertaining to their order, and their Cozpozall shall invest them with some Baudroll, Medall or Scarfe, whereupon is portrayed S. George his armes, which they must be bound to weare openly at all times and in all places, enterprises, skirmishes, battailes and assaults.

It is requisite that a singular good souldier, being the Gentleman of a band, and Cavallier of S. George his Squadron, if hee meane to gain the grace and fauour of his Captaine & Colonel, that not onely he be sufficiently valiant and wise, as of necessitie is required at his hands: but it is also conuenient for him to be reasonable well hoised, and to haue in store all sortes of armes, as a Halberd, Hargabuse for the match or firelocke, Armour and Target of proofe, his Lance and case of Pistolets, his Pike, his Pertisan or Epieu to go the Round withall, that he may both day and night vary and change his armes at the offer of all enterprises is requisite, and as change of seruice doth call him forth.

He must alwayes of necessitie haue more then one seruant, and ought to apparel him in galant order: these are to be nere his elbow to follow him with his armes. He ought alwayes to lodge himselfe as nere as is possible, to the lodging of his Colonel or captaine, to the intent y either armed, or without armes, he may alwayes, according as y cause doth require, be about his person, either on horseback or on foote, for that the principal gard of this singular personage, y is to say, the Collonel or Captaine, doth consist in the diligence and custodie of the Cavalliers of S. George his Squadrons. These things notwithstanding, day & night whe it falls to his lot, or that he shall be commanded by his Cozpozall to watch, he must dispose himselfe to be able to make particular gard, & that after a most exquisite order: wherein he must haue a special care (without making refusall at any time) to performe that which shall be appointed him by his Cozpozall,

or by any other that shall command in the name of his Collonel or Captaine. His office in time of watch, for the most part consistes in going the Round, searching the watch, keeping god order in the Corps of Gard, in being a coadiutor to y officer that guides the company or rules the watch, and is for the most part exempted from standing Sentinel, and such like duties of a common souldier, vnlesse great necessitie or special seruice constrain.

It appertaines to him to haue god experience in going the Round, that in performing the same, he may discretely gouerne in the ouersight of the watch, called the Sopranguardia, for in this point doth very much consist the prouident god order and forme that is to be obserued, in auoyding the stratagemes, surprises, Sallies and disceits of the enemie. Approching nere to y Sentinel, he must giue eye and diligent regard in what order and sort he doth finde him vigilant, how readie he is in demanding and taking the word, & after coming nearer him, he must examine all that hath passed or fallen out whilest he hath bene in Sentinel, & the order he doth obserue, and what hath bene appointed him to do: the which if it be god he must confirme, and when he doth finde it to be otherwise, he must rehearse & refer the same to the Cozpozal of the Sentinel, that he may vse diligent redresse.

Arriuing in any Corps de gard, he must about all things aduertise them, that they alwayes keepe fire light for the necessary comoditie of Hargabusers, and for light in the night, taking order with the souldiers that they and their armes may remain in a forceable redinesse: through which his god instruction, there may grow to be no want, & so consequently he must in like cases proceed with like prouident diligence.

After this he must with great consideration and modestie, examine euery particular thing, carrying a mind with himselfe to continue & increas the same from better to better, & both in himselfe and to them vse necessarie aduertisements: & in such sort shall he passe through all the Corps de gards and Sentinels.

If it chance him to encounter another Sopranguardia by round, to shun the occasion of dangerous difference, which somtimes is accustomed to follow: or for pollicie, in fearing to giue y watch word to him that purposely comes to lobbe the same, that coming from the enemie secretly, counterfaits the Sentinell, or by some other practise, as it somtimes hath caused damage

to the grieuous losse and total prejudice of the armie, to prevent such inconuenience, let that Sopraguardia which shalbe nearest to the next adioyning Sentinell, turne backe, giuing the word after a due accustomed sort vnto the said Sentinell, to the intent the foresaid Sopraguardia may do the like, and when they are of accord, euerie one may follo w his owne path, but if otherwise they do disagree, the disceit remains discovered: not onely in that counterfeit round, but also in the fained Sentinell, whom the Sopraguardia must examine and demand at his hand some speciall countersigne or double word, that thereby he may know him for an assured friend, or finde him an enimie or negligent person, the which of all men is verie well knowne to merite sharpe and extreame chastisement, which at no time, so nere as is possible, is to be omitted.

This former rule is to be obserued of those souldiers that be of one selfe nation: but when the Rounds or Sopraguardes be many and of sundrie nations, and the Corps of Gards likewise, then the Sopraguard comming into a quarter that is stranger vnto him, is bound to giue the word to the Sopraguard of that nation, & of that quarter: so that by such meanes as wel y suspicion of disceit, as the occasion of discord shall be auoyded.

And if in case the said ordinarie Round or Sopraguard, do encounter in their owne quarter, with the extraordinarie, those that be ordinarie shall indeuour themselves to take the word of those that be extraordinarie. For so is it conuenient and most conformance to that order beforesaid, wherein I haue set downe what is necessarie for a Sopraguard or Round to do in a strange quarter. And for that it is requisite, as I haue alredie touched, that the Cavalliers be alwayes about the person of his chiefe captain, without either being bound to Standard, Guidon, or other Ensigne whatsoever, he must indeuour himselfe, when any enterprize or warlike affaires is committed to his charge, to be apt and readie to vse practised experience in directing & guiding a skirmish, in taking the view of a battery, in discovering of the enimie, in marching or making *Alta*, in *Passa parde* in the battailie, in repulse of a sodaine invading enimie by *Barwill en bouche*, in taking view of the situation of a place, in guiding a Roade or troupe of Horsemen, in giuing Alarome to the entrie, in plucking aduertisements from the enimie, in plac-

cing

ing Ambuscades, in giuing Canuasados, and to know verie well how to execute with sound iudgement these and such like important affaires, the which for the most part appertaine to the Cavalliers of this Squadron to performe. As likewise it hath bin the custome to giue the charge to plant Gabiones for the defence of the Artillarie, to batter and endamage the walles, the Trenches, the lodinges, and the enemies Squadrones.

Let him remember when hee hath bin at any exploit, to bring backe againe into his Quarter, those souldiers hee hath led forth to any enterprize, vnited and in rancke, marching together behind him, and neuer suffer them to returne disbanded one by one out of order, which is an occasion of great confusion, and brings but small reputation to the Captaine and conducto; of them.

Moreouer it is verie necessarie hee knowe how to make a roade and distroie the enemies countrie, the which likewise doth oftentimes appertaine to him to performe: in which exploit hee must beware aboue all thinges, that no souldier in those enterprizes disperse or disband themselves, but with an assured good order, for the most part conformance to my following discourse, wherein I set downe directions, how to conduct souldiers to the skirmish. And particularlie where I declare that he ought to keepe and maintaine for his people the strongest place of situation, wherein he must skirmish, for that commonly souldiers being in disorder, wearied and laden with spoile, may be easilie put to flight, broken and oppressed of the enemies, vnlesse they be seconded or shaded by some forceable succour.

I suppose it likewise most necessarie, that hee indeuour himselfe to be apt and sufficient at all times, and in all places to sollicite and negotiate for his Prince or Chieftaine, any cause of what weight or moment soeuer, considering that most men are not fit to attempt the performance of such doubtful and difficult causes: for although many make great estimation of them selues, and presume much by their dailie reading and Theozicke of those weightie affairs, yet do they want and come farre short of that bold and readie practise, which plainly appears, that the worthy professors of Armes possesse: and

L 3

Specially

specially in the presence of great Princes, whose Maiestie and reuerence for the most part, doth make cold and bring out of countenance the boate and most resolute determination. As Demosthenes before Philip of Macedone made apparet, when he was not able to pronounce these words of a long premeditated Oration, in behalfe of the Athenians.

This worthy gentleman of a band, this Caualliere of Saint Georges Squadre, and likewise all other professors of warlike armes, ought to carie in mind, that of him and his equals the exercise of Armes is to be applied, and diligently to practise the same, to the intent he be not for want of knowledge despised of others: and not ignorantlie to despise them that deserue due commendations, but rather to carie and vse the countenance of authoritie to those persons that merite not to beare swaie and gouernement, then towards forward souldiers. Yet for all that towards the rest in some other respects, hee ought to gratifie them and helpe them to his power, and so courteously win the good wils and friendly fauor of all souldiers his equals, to instruct and courteously to admonish euerie souldier priuatelie and apart, what appertaines to his duetie.

This Caualliere must be able also to traine souldiers, to make them march in orderly proportions, to cast them in Ranges, Files, Squailes, Batches, Squadres, to receiue and giue charge, to faue skirmishes, onsets, retreates, and how to order any number of Souldiers, from a hundreth to fife hundreth, for so manie may be in a band, and vnder one Ensigne, as the Swizers and Germains yet vse at this day, and as in former ages our Countriemen haue vsed, which in some respects may passe without reprehension. If a Captaine be disposed to haue so manie vnder his Ensigne, when hee is not able to bring the number vnto a whole Collonelship, together with the knowledge of the order how to traine, hee must indenour himselfe to be perfect in drawing platformes, in the Mathematickes, in the martiall Lawes, in besieging of townes, batteries, mynes, and each thing else belonging to Martiall discipline.

Let this worthy Caualliere of Saint Georges Squadre haue then before his eyes such like precepts, and manage of martiall affaires, that he may encrease his owne credite, win his countrie fame, fauor of his Prince, & honor of his house and friends, rather

rather then for the regard of riches, statelie houses, liuings, and such like, but rather prefer prudent pollicie, courage, valor and approued experience before such base benefites, whereby hee may attaine to the lawzell Crowne, where with diuers mightie conquerors haue their heades adozned: That hee may be an example to the reproch of such as lewdlie spend their daies in idleness, prodigalitie, lust and obloquie.

The order of trayning Footemen, necessarie to be obserued of all Sergeants, Lieutenants, and Cauallieres of the band.

**T**hat the ignorance and decay of Armes in the beginning of this age, and in these partes of Europe haue brought great confusion to diuers, which haue rashlie and rashlie professed the same, to the hazard of their liues and countrie: And for that mustering and trayning of souldiers to make them expert to seruice is one of the greatest errors hath bin committed: therefore I haue thought good to borrow out of Master Stywards Booke of Martial discipline, his maner and forme of trayning, which I find in him set downe in more plaine and exquisite maner, according to the moderne vse, then of any that hath hitherto written so particularlie either in our owne tongue, or in any other foraine language, wherein the Authour doth merite great commendations, whether the same proceedes of his owne experience, or that he hath drawne it out of other mens traualles.

But first before I enter into particulars, I thinke it good to set downe, what Characters I meane to vse in these descriptions, that they may be the better vnderstood, together with other notes appertaining to these present directions.

The Letters and Charecters.

<p>{ C L S D F }</p>	<p>for</p>	<p>{ Captaines. Lieutenants. Sergeants. Drums. Fiftes.</p>	<p>{ s a b p h }</p>	<p>for</p>	<p>{ Hargabusiars. Archers. Halberdiers. Pikes. Horsemen.</p>
--------------------------------------	------------	--	--------------------------------------	------------	---

The



The Orders which are to be obserued for the furnishing of the foresaid weapons.

Caliners or Hargabuzieres, or Musketieres

Such must haue either of them a good and sufficient peece, flask, tutch-boye, powder, shot, yon, mold, woyme, tyrebale, rammer, sword and dagger, and a morrion. The like must the Musketeare haue, with a forked staffe, byest hye, with a stringe to fasten to his wiest. Such as serue with shot in raine, mistes and windes, must haue their peeces charged and pyimed: They must carie the tutch hoale of their peeces vnder their armes, match light in their hands couerly and drie, their peeces faire and cleane within and without, so bee they seruiceable at all times, hauing regard they keepe their march and retyre of good distance in sunder, their match and powder verie drie, and their peeces often chardged and discharged.

Archers or long Bowes.

Necessarie it is that euery man haue a good and meete bowe, according to his draught and strength, light & easie, a light side iacke hanging lose to his knee, with a skul, sword & dagger, nothing vpon his armes, wherby in time of seruice hee may easilie draw the arrow to the head, that they may deliuer the same with strength and art, as Englishmen bee accustomed. They must haue also a bracer and shooting gloue, their stringes whipped and wared ouer with glew, their feathers drie: and so is hee seruiceable.

Pykemen.

Those bearing that warlike weapons, especiallie the fronts, where sometimes Captaines, Lieutenants, Sergeants, and Cauallieres of bandes, be oftentimes planted with Pykes, and is the place for Gentlemen to serue in, must haue a fayre Millan corselet, with al peeces appertaining to the same: that is, the curats, the collers, the poldrons, wyth the vambraces, also the long faces with the burganet, with sword and dagger, their pykes of the vsuall length (for the strength of the battaile doth consist in the same) bearing the pykes on their sholders, setting their thumbes vnder the same, whereby it is ruled. They must oftentimes practise to frayle, push, ward, couch, crosse, &c. as for the necessitie of the skirmish or battaile appertaineth.

Halber-

Halberdeares or Bill-men.

These bee guards vnto Captaines & Ensignes, which be most times chosen gentlemen of experience, or Cauallieres of the Squadre, who as occasion serueth, giue orders to the numbers in aray, and the enemie appochoing to giue an onset, certain of them bee appointed to aduarce and maintaine the receipt of them: whose discrete leading and valiant courage doth much comfort the rest to follow the same. These Cauallieres bee armed with corselets, and bee placed in the hart of the battail, vsuallie called the slaughter of the field, or execution of the same, who commonlie doe not fight but in verie great extremitie.

Because there is great alteration and deuision of weapons, I meane to note vnto you the iust numbers to euerie hand: eth at this present vsed, which shall greatly profit to the making of your battailes, from 100. vnto 1500.

Men.	Pikes.	Halberds & Targets of prooffe.	Shot.
100	40	10	50
200	80	20	100
300	120	30	150
400	160	40	200
500	200	50	250
600	240	60	300
700	280	70	350
800	320	80	400
900	340	90	450
1000	400	100	500
1100	440	110	550
1200	480	120	600
1300	520	130	650
1400	560	140	700
1500	600	150	750

Of Mustering and Training.



Band or Companie being furnished with Officers, Souldiers, Armour, Weapons and Munitions, as alsoe said: In times convenient resort whollie together, to some ground necessarie, to muster, march and trains

traîne, exercise and instruct such as are not perfect in seates of warre, which be ordered sometimes by wordes and deedes, and sometimes by traîned signes from the officers, that souldiers may learne and obserue the meaning of the same. At such times of assemblie, as at watch or ward, the Clerke ought to read the bill, and to call euerie souldier by his name, that euerie man may aunswere for himselfe, and none to be absent vpon paine, without sicknes or licence. The Sergeant (as they be called) putteth them in Aray, that euerie man follow his leader man, keeping his ranck-fellowes iustlie on both sides, placing the shot in volward and rerewarde: the Ensigne and Halberds in the midst of the Pikes, so be they placed in beautie and strength, as is accustomed: sometimes to stand and aduance their weapons, turne their faces, and march any waie assigned: and sometimes to receiue a woord that shall passe from man to man, from the one end to the other, with such silence, that none heare the same, but those in aray assembled.

Certaine wordes to be vsed of the Officer that traynes.

**W**hen any Officer determines to exercise his companie to traîne them, he must call them into a Ring or such like necessarie forme, and vse these or like wordes.

By louing friends, fellowes, and companions in Armes, we be gathered togither for the seruice of God, his holie Church, our Prince and Countrie, and for that none through ignozance shall perish or run in daunger of the lawes of the field, you shall from time to time by mee or other Officers of the band be instructed by wordes or deedes in such points, as to your calling and the necessitie of seruice shall require, the which you must diligently obserue and follow, though the same shall seeme vnto you many times both dangerous and paynfull. Also if any of you my fellowes shall find an occasion conuenient to declare to mee or any other officer, his mind and opinion in any thing touching seruice, we shall diligentlie heare, and gratifie the partie the double value thereof, and (God willing) equitie and iustice shall be ministred. Also regard that all souldiers know & obey their officers in their place, according to their calling.

To



To teach and trayne Souldiers to march in Ranckes, Squares, battailes, &c.

**F**irst, for that one hundreth is the least number that a Captaine can haue in charge, I wil therefore begin with 100. setting your weapons in this order following: that is, twentie five shot, next your shot twentie Pykes, then tenne Halberds to gard the Ensigne, and next your Halberds other twentie Pykes, and then your other five and twentie shotte, the which being thus placed may be brought to those proportions here set downe, greatlie available to diuers seruices.

**W**hen the souldiers are taught to march thre in a ranke right forth, you shall bring them in this propozition of a ring, otherwise called a Limasson: & although it is not of any force, it is necessarie to traîne y vnperfect, also by bringing them in close compasse togither, they may better heare and vnderstand any preceptes touching their charge, spoken by the Captain or any other officers, as oft as is meete. This figure following of the ring is not of force, because the Ensigne lieth open to the enemies without gard of Pikes.

M 3

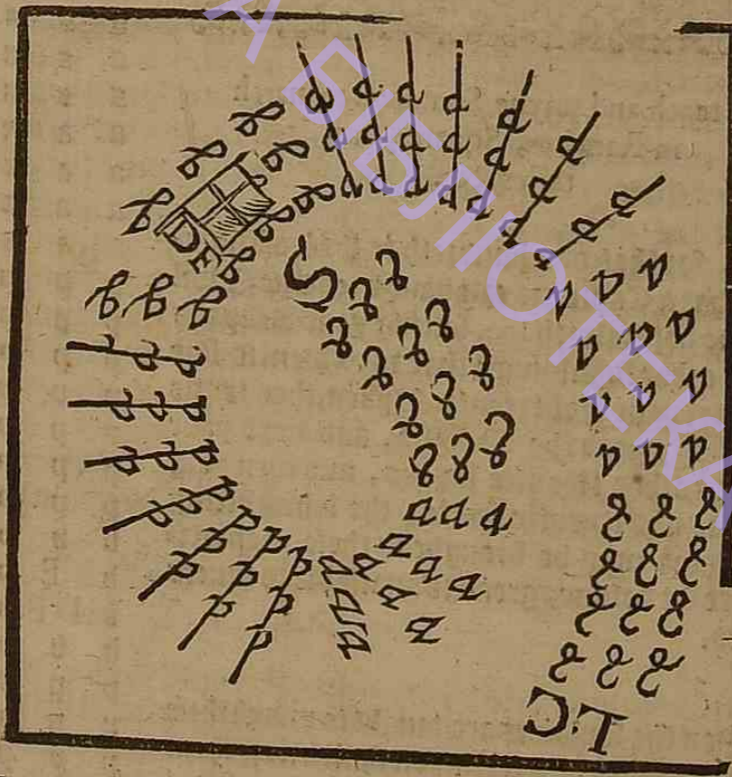
The

The Voward.

L.	C.
s	s s
s	s s
s	s s
s	s s
a	a a a
a	a a a
a	a a a
p	p p p
p	p p p
p	p p p
p	p p p
p	p p p
p	p p p
b	b b b
b	E b b
b	D F b b
b	b b b
p	p p p
p	p p p
p	p p p
p	p p p
p	p p p
p	p p p
a	a a a
a	a a a
a	a a a
a	a a a
s	s s s
s	s s s
s	s s s
s	s s s
s	s s s
S.	

The rereward.

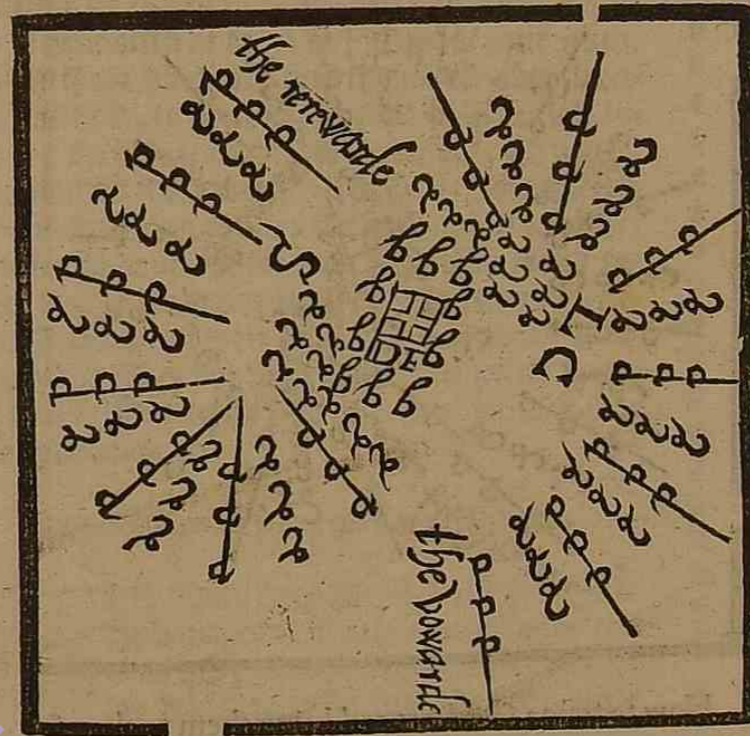
## The Ring.



Sometimes vpon good occasion you shall bring your Pikes in order of an S. your Halberds planted in the midst with the Ensigne, whereby it may be environed with Pikes for defence of horse, your shot placed betwene euerie rancke of Pikes, so that they may serve to the skirmish, either rescuing other with in gard, the which retyring into the void place, the Pikes couched euerie way for defence, the ouerplus of the shot with the Captaine and Lieutenant with other officers to be placed in the midst of the S. with the Ensigne.

An

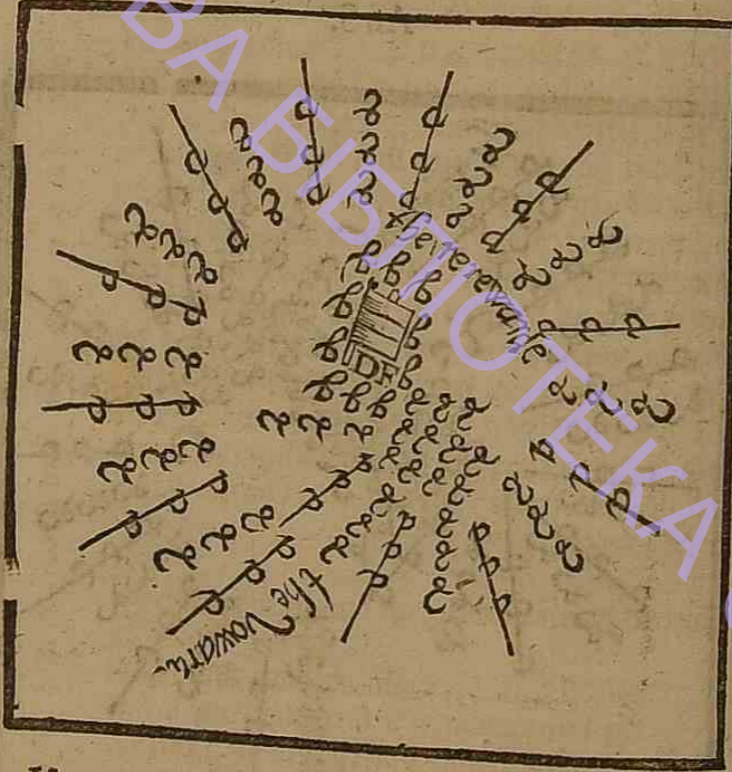
## An S.



Sometimes vpon the suddaine bring them into this order of a D. other wise called a Snaille: Place your Halberds and Ensigne in the Rearward of your Pikes, and cast your selfe round, so that you may environ your Ensigne, hauing first placed your shot amongst the ranckes of Pikes, euerie Captaine, Lieutenant, and other officer together with the ouerplus of shot, to be placed within the circuite of the weapons. This is a strength at neede, but in this order they cannot march or retire.

A D.

A D. or a Snaile.



How to traine souldiers and bring them to the vse of their weapon.

After you haue taught your company to march thre in a rancke right forth, likewise to keepe their order in Limasson or King, in S. or D. you shall command your officers to teach them how to vse their weapons. First deuide your shot from your pikes and Halberds, causing a marke to be set vpon the water, whereby you shall the better perceiue where the bullet falleth or striketh. Then cause your drumme to go befoze, and your shot to follow single, teaching the how to hold their peeces, and to put powder in the pan, the match in the cocke, how to couch and giue fire the better to bolden them: and that those haue experieuce to discharge at the marke, and euerie one for to follow his loadsmen. This done, cast them all about round, and bring them to the place where they began, then after ward teach them to charge with bullet.

Somes

Sometimes deuide your pikes and halberds in two parts, commanding your officers that they turne their broad sides, as if they should encounter the enimie, causing your drums to sound. Then charge your officers to go in y front of your pikes, to shew them how that they should vse their weapons, as first, to cause your pikes to sarie close together, then to traile their pikes with the sharpe end towards the enimie, two yards from the end of the blade, and to offer the push one at another. This being done, cause your drums to sound retreat, that is, to retire with your faces on the enimie. Then must you teach them to ward with their pikes when the push is offered against them: also to couch and crosse, for defence of horse. Likewise to aduance, &c.

How to traine or place an hundreth men.

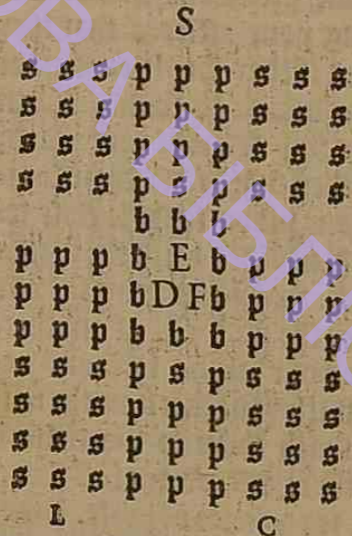
This figure here placed doth shew how the hundzed men befoze mentioned cast in a ring, may march thre in a rancke, the which may be brought vnto these proportions of strength following.

Sometimes marching in the ray befozesaid, you shall deuide the same into thre parts by 11. ranks in ech part, deuiding your shot into foure partes, and your pikes into foure parts also, placing your halberds to gard the Ensigne, so be they readie at the sodaine in quadrant as appeareth following.

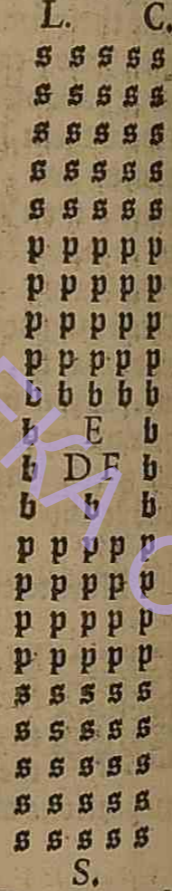
The Voward.



The rereward.



The Voward.

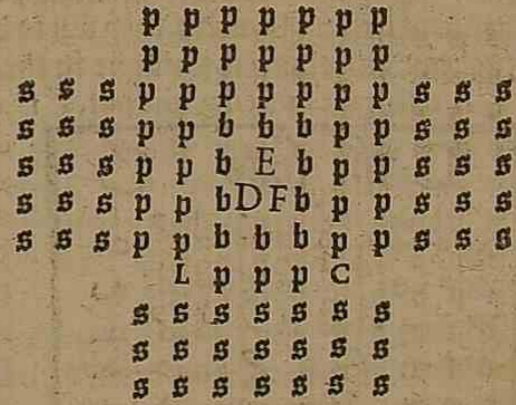


Likewise you must instruct them from three to march five in ranke, to the intent when neede serueth to ioyne vnto other bands. In thus marching, place halfe your shot befoze the other in the rereward.

Also you may practise them to march seuen in ranke, placing your halberds in the Rereward with your Ensigne, the which maketh a iust quadrant, placing your shot in the wings and rereward as appeareth following.

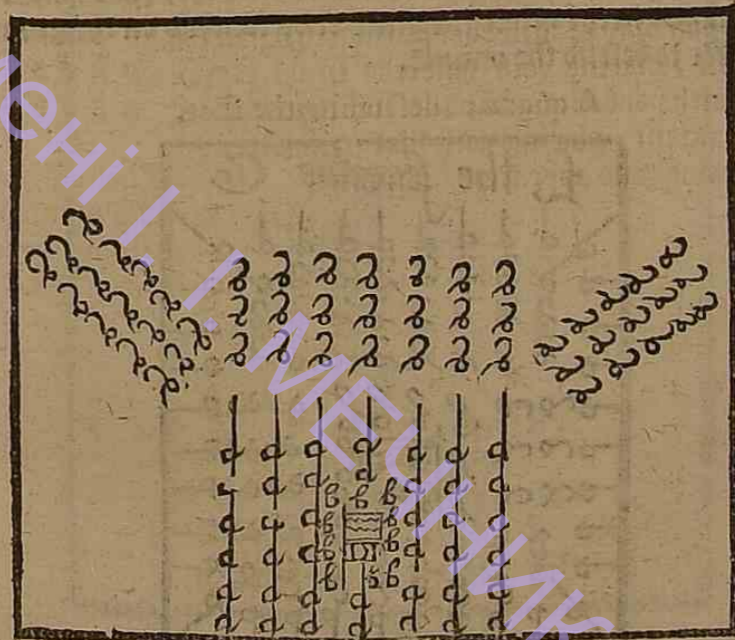
The rereward.  
To augment from three vnto five.

S.



The Rereward.

Y Du may likewise by placing seue in ranke, the which is the greatestt foze that 100. men may be brought into, place 21. shot in the front, and fiftene in ech wing, the which seruice being very apt to skirmish, is greatly vnto the anoying of the enemie: also it is readie to retyze to serue round about the battaile of pikes, as befoze.



If in marching you vnderstand or perceiue that horsemen will assault you, then place five pikes in ranke, and betwixt euerie pike a shot, so marching forward, they fall to be ten ranke quadrant, placing your halberds and Ensigne in the midst.

A quadrant mixed with shot.



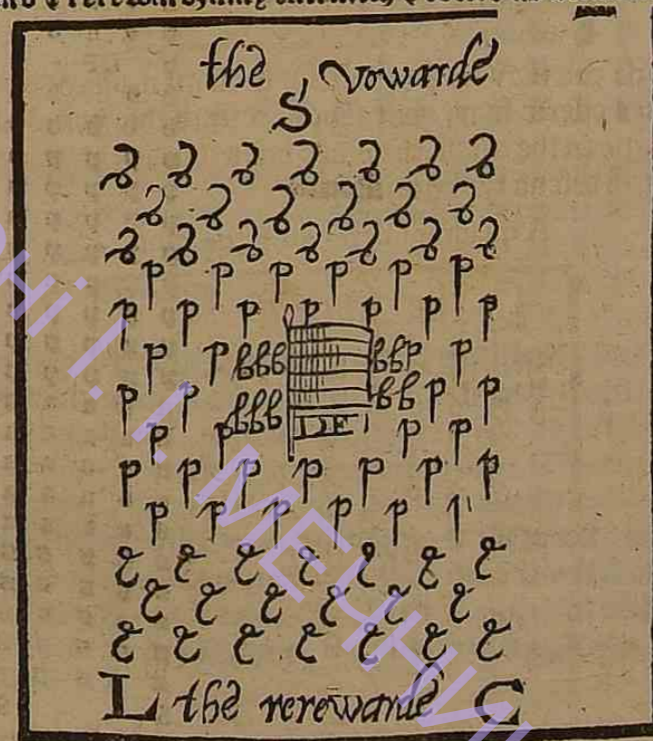
Likewise you may for defence of horsemen, place ten ranke of pikes euerie way, your shot next vnto the, your halberds and Ensigne in the midst, the pikes ends touched on the ground the better to defend the enimie.

A quadrant defending the shot.



This

This proportion sheweth the march or quadrant order at large of a hundzeth men, verie necessary to be vled in shew to the enemies, when thou vnderstandest their numbers to exceede thine: Placing 7. Pikes in the Toward, also 7. pikes in the Rereward, next vnto them 6. pikes in the second ranke, your Billes or Halberds together with your Ensigne in the midst with the Drum and Fife, as is befoze mentioned, the which number (when thou perceiuest the enimie to take view of thine) thou shalt alter and cause the second ranke of the Toward and Rereward to steppe forward to furnish the boide spaces, the which shall make of 7. thirtene in a ranke. Also if thou perceiuest the enimie pretending to encounter thee, hauing no place of refuge, shall cause the ranke that stepped forward to retire to their places, and to sarrie close together, removing out of the second ranke into the winges, the Halberds to step forward in their places, wil be 7. euerie way quadrant, as in the order befoze is mentioned, your shot to be placed in the Toward & rereward, may skirmish & retire as occasion serueth.



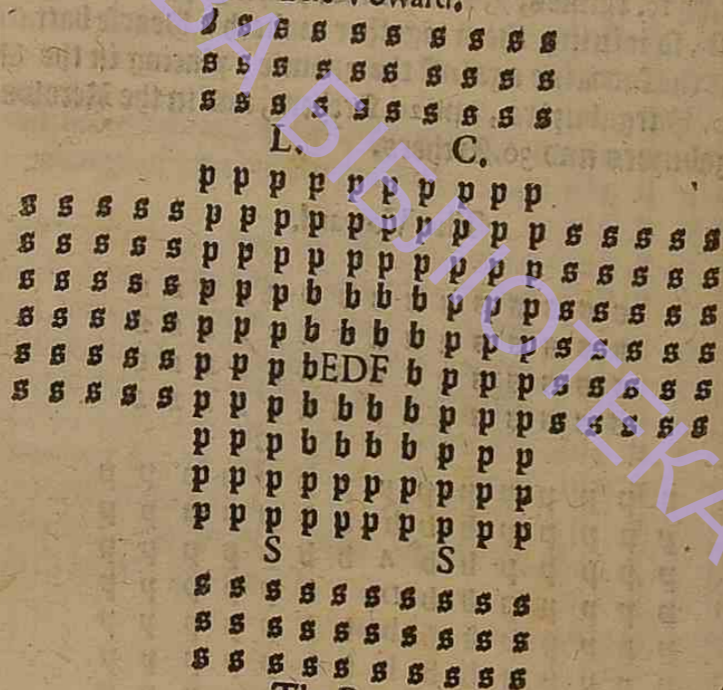
The March at large.

R3

Practises



The Voward.

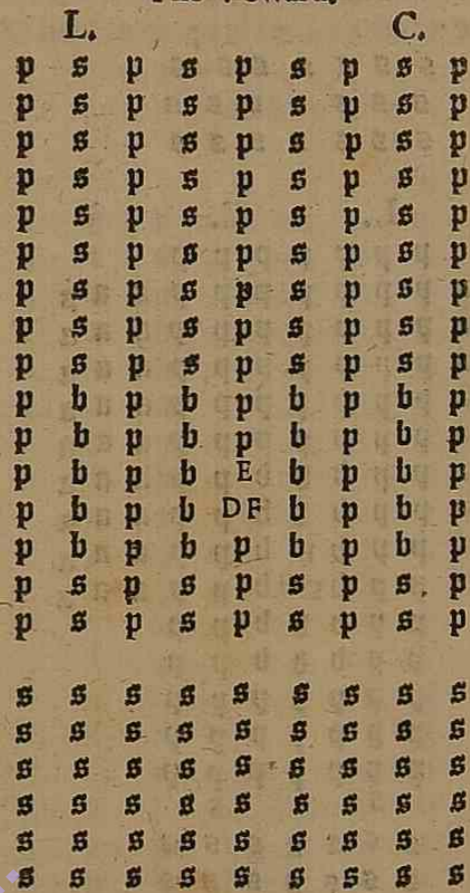


The Rereward.

Sometimes by commaundement of the General or head Officers, you are to accomplish some exploit by night, the which being led by your guides through straites, wrong ground, woods &c. It is nedefull that euerie pikeman and bilman take holde of his loadsmans weapon, placing your shot betwixt your Pikes, and your Ensigne in the midst, your Wykes to march fine in a ranke, 16. ranke is iust 80. Pikes beside your Halberds. The ouerplus of your shot to bee placed in the Rereward.

The

The Voward.



S.

S.

The Rereward.

Sometimes occasion serueth to march through long brome, cozne, searne, &c. so that souldiers must traile their pikes from the ground, close together at the halfe pikes, in the Voward the sharp ends of the pikes sozward, and in the Rereward the sharp ends of the pikes to the ground, who may at the sudaine being assailed with Horsemen, presently aduance and couch their pikes euery way for defence from the Horse, your Hargabuzers in the front and Rereward, the Archers in the flanks.

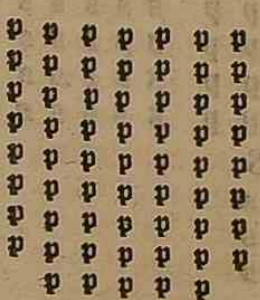
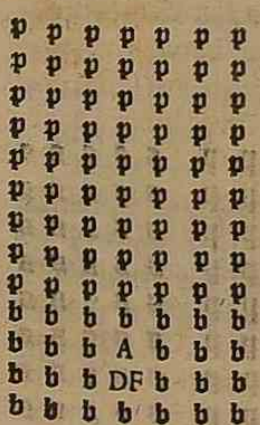
D

The

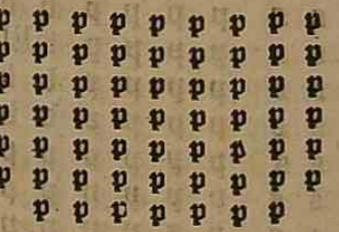
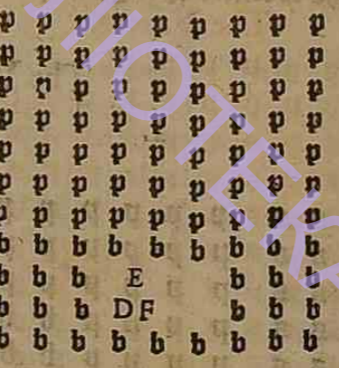
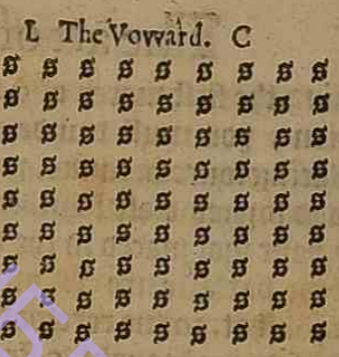








The Rereward,



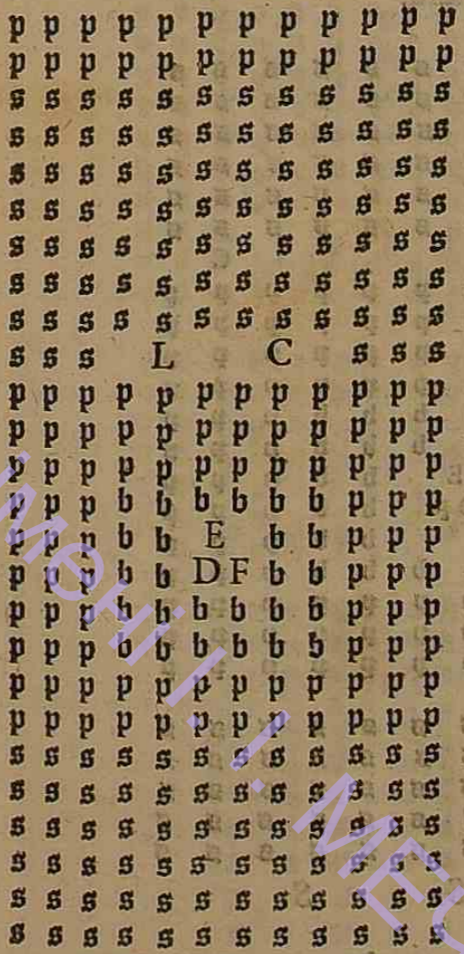
The Rereward.

Sometimes augment these 7. rankes here adioyning to 9. the long weapons of the same containe 18. rankes, your shot placed in the boward & rereward, as the ground may serue, is a hearse or broade square.

By these exercises of augmenting rankes as doe appeare, souldiers may be brought to perfection of order in aray, and by the same be brought in quadrant or herse battaile, according as numbers and ground will serue.

Orders of training three hundred men.

The Voward.



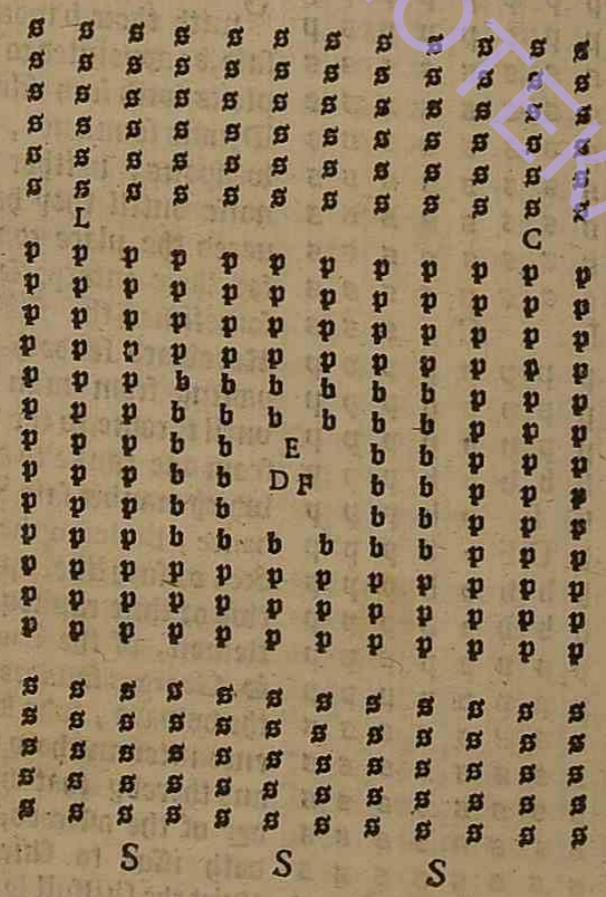
S The S Rereward S

Sometimes the Captaines with their bandes aforesaid, be appointed to some exploits with such silence that Drums sound not, nor clay weapons, neither vse any noise untill they haue recovered the place conuenient for their enterprises. Also sometimes the Officers in Rereward sendeth a word passing from man to man until it come to the boward, from one ranke to an other, which may be said Sarra, aduance, Bullet in the mouth, &c. or such like, appointing two or thre rankes of Gentlemen, of the Caualliers of S. Georges squadye, to lead the boward, who know the encounter and how to ioyne, and thereby that way by order of the officers, the shot doth issue to skirmish betwixt the skillfull leaders besoyesaid. The battaile may ioyne close together if occasion

requireth: also the rest of the shot may waite thowso to helpe the boward.

When as presently you haue placed 12. in ranke, with your halberds and Ensigne in the midd, so may they likewise sal out to be 12. in ranke in bredth, and 13. in length, if you place your shot in the front & rereward, the which as occasion serueth, may be brought to skirmish any wayes. This battell as the ground serueth is verie strong against the enimie.

The Voward.

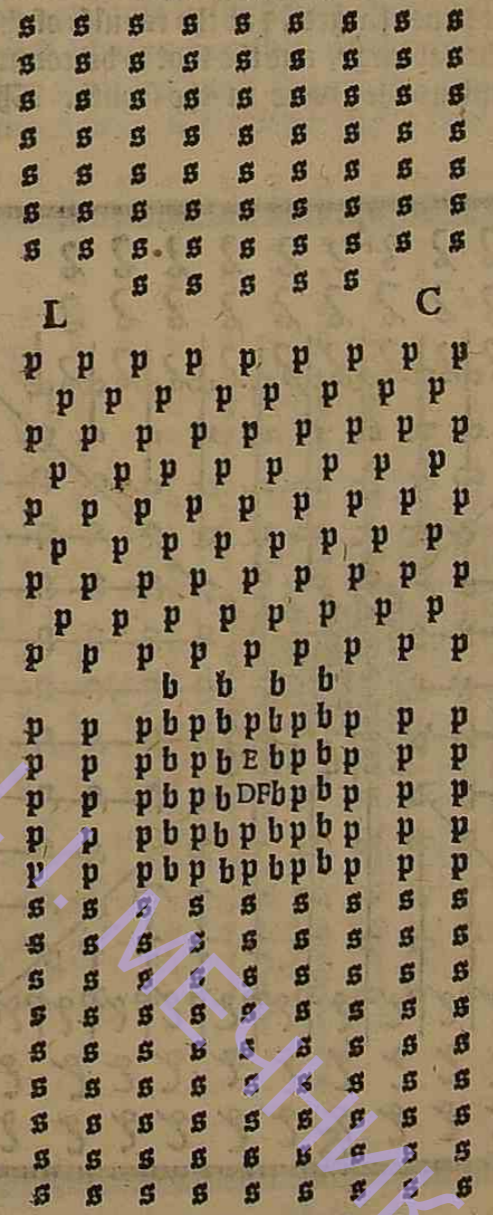


The Rereward.

Some

Sometimes marching in Straights, and especially having some gard in the rereward for the safetie of the Ensigne, you may send certaine rankes of pikes in the front towards the enimie, which shall wade through to strengthen the battaile, placing the one halfe of your shot to skirmish in the front, the other halfe in the rereward.

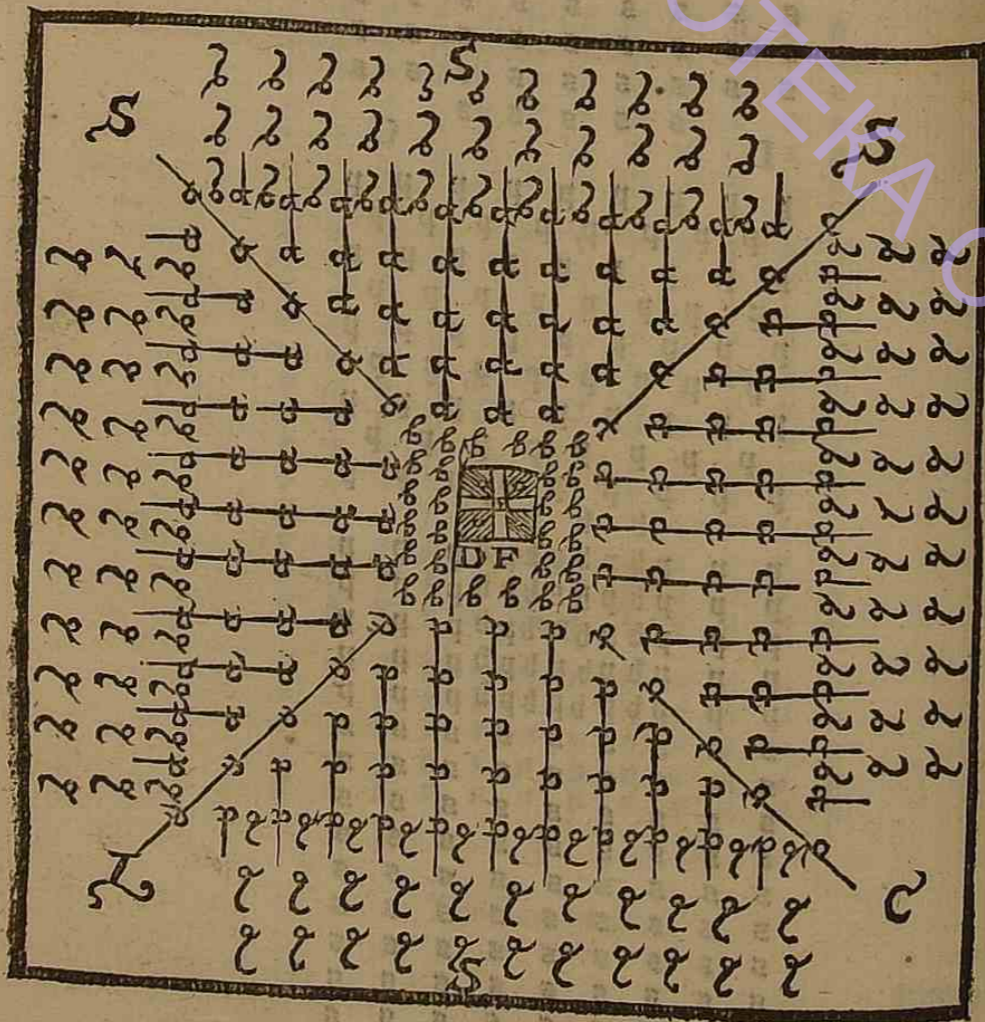
The Voward.



S The S Rereward. S P.

ИЗ  
РОП

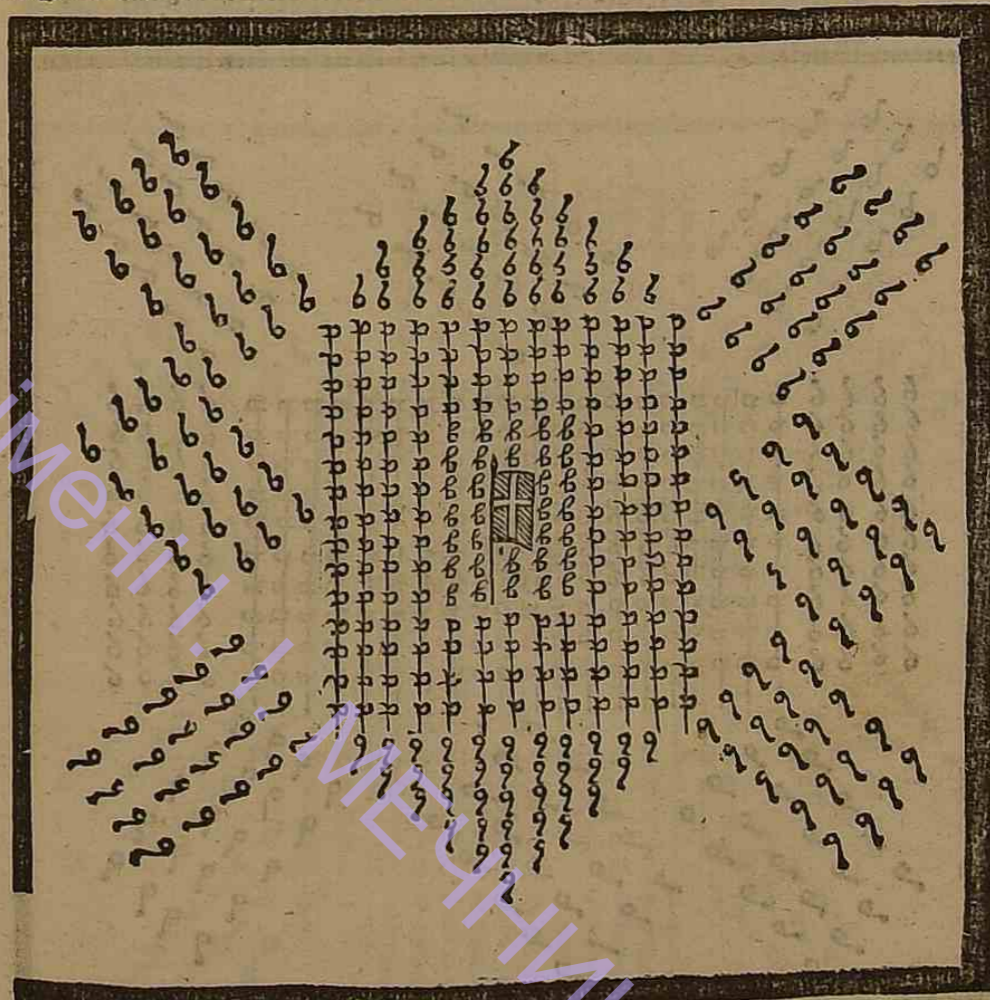
Sometimes having scope of ground, standing in doubt of horsemen, caule the numbers to march 12. in a ranke at large, a good distance a sunder, and so to stand still, everie man towards their quarters, placing their shot on al sides betwirt the pikes, which after they haue discharged, being charged with horse, may retire to the halberds, and your outward fronts sarrie close together until the shot haue charged, & at the repulse of the horsemen to open your pikes at large, and the shot to be commanded to issue and to skirmish as they were in the fronts. This battell is of great force.



To

To order and imbattell 400. in quadrant proportion.

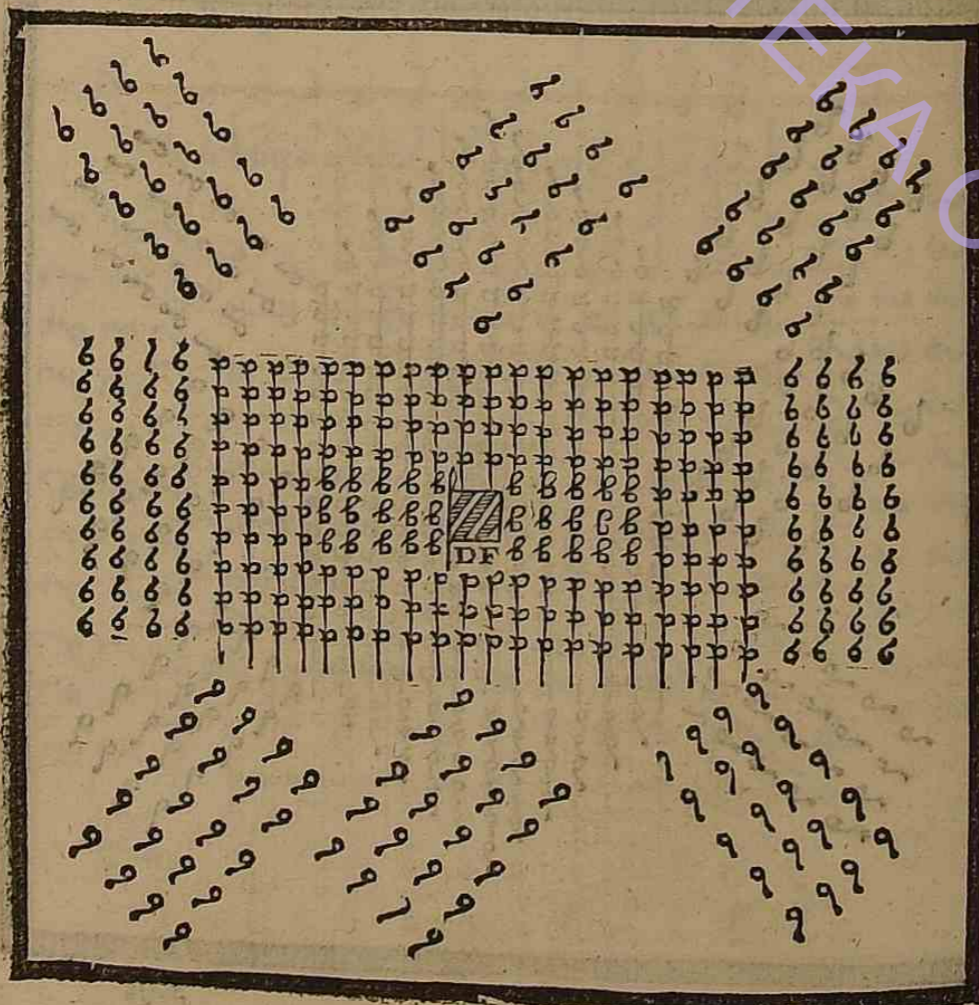
Four hundred men, whether they serue in one band or under two severall Ensignes, may be brought to this quadrant proportion against the defence of the enimie by placing 15. in the front, ioyning foure ranks of pikes in the bolward, & foure in the rereward, and foure in the flanks, your halberds and Ensigne in the midst, placing your shot in six wings for the rescuing of ech other, the rest of your shot in the bolward and rereward in Diamond wise. This battell for so small a number is of great force.



P 2

The

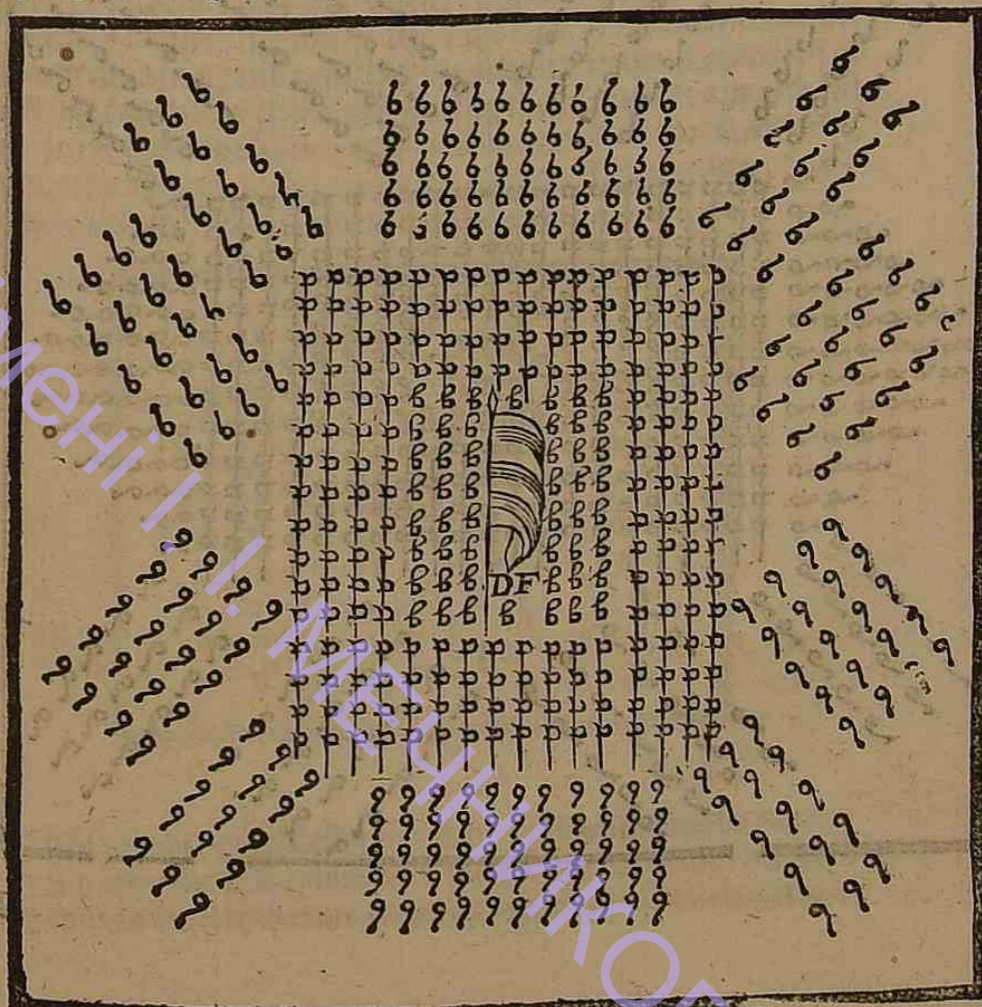
The ground may be such as it shalbe necessarie to place the same number in manner of a herse, or twofold battaile, placing ten in ranke in length, and 20. in bredth, placing your halberds and Ensigne in the midst, encoutring the enimie on your broad side, so shall you occupie moze hands then the quadrant battaile doth, taking by lesse ground in marching, then the other battaile. You must cause them to sarrie close together, trailing their pikes on the ground, being readie to offer the push to the fotemen, and to crosse for the defence of horsemen, your shot to be placed as befoze you appeareth. This is of great strength, so that the enimie cannot enuiron you.



To

To embattaile 500. men in a quadrant proportion.

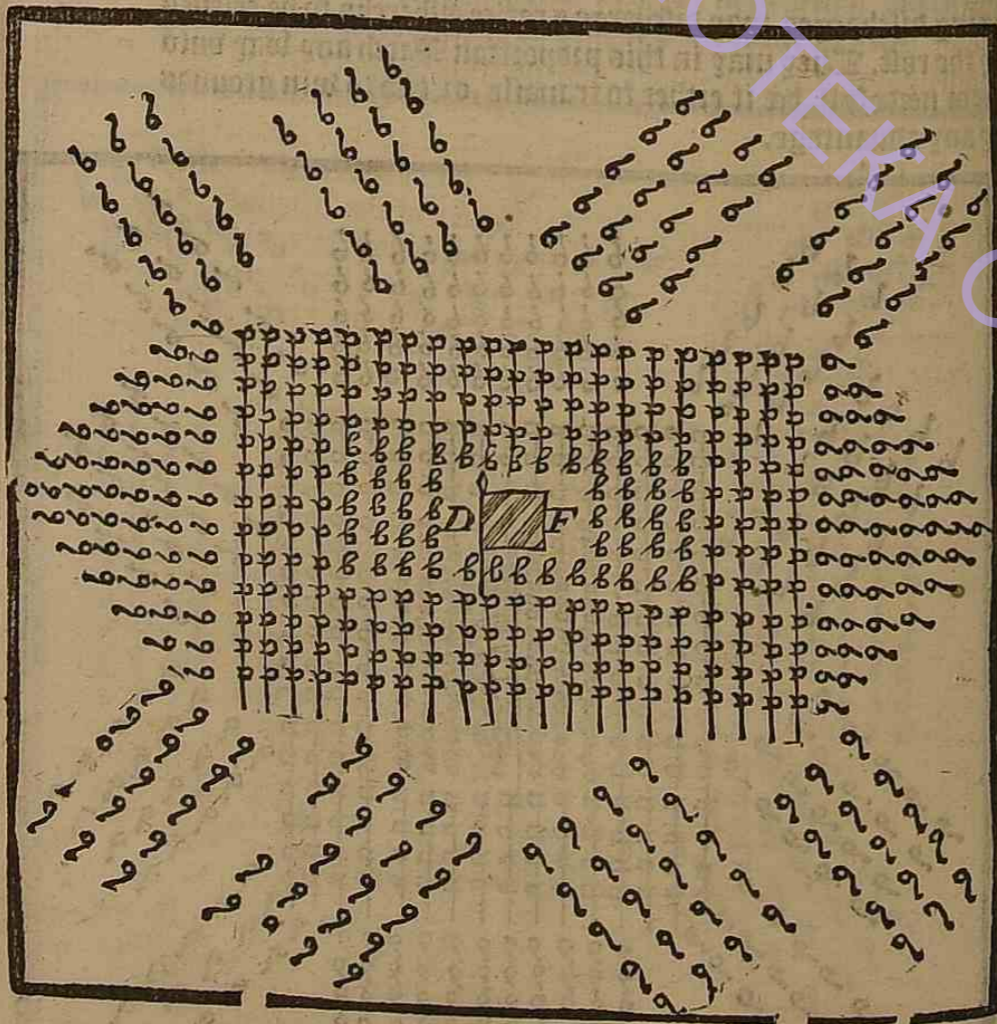
According to the worthinesse of the Captaine, the greater is his charge, as one Captaine to haue charge of 500. men vnder one Ensigne, the which if any Caualliere of the order would bring into quadrant battaile, hee must place 16 Pikes in front, making 4. rankes quadrant, placing his halberds in the midst with the Ensigne, so hath hee in the bodie of the battaile 250. men, his shot to be placed in the front and backward 110. and in the flanks of the battaile in the 8. winges 140. the which being discharged may discharge & retire, whereby to be rescued by the rest. They may in this proportion March any way vnto them needefull, hee it either to trauaile, or else to win grounds by any aduantage.



W3

Some

Sometimes by reason of the ground it is necessarie to bring such a number into an hearse or twofold battaile, which may be moze available then the Quadzant battaile. To bring them into this propoztion, you must place 13. Pikes in breadth, and 21. in length, your Halberds and Ensigne in the midst, your shot in the fronts and wings. Thus in order they may turne their faces, and march any way to them needefull, which practise may greatly auaille at time of neede, as vnto great numbers appertaineth.

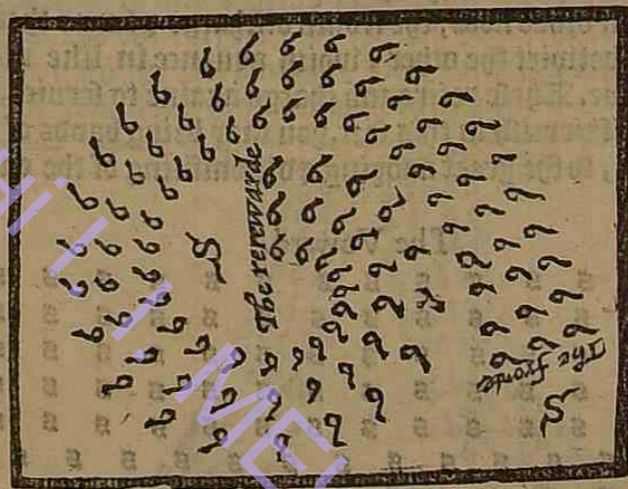


In

In what sort Hargabuziers and Archers are to be guided to skirmish.

For that in all skirmishes shot is the first that beginneth the fight, I haue thought good in some few figures to set downe how they may March, skirmish, invade, and retire in politike maner, and how by rankes to rescue one another, wherof the practise in this small number wil giue a light to greater knowledge, which still may increase as the deuises of new inuentions do spring, wherein I would wish all worthie Gentlemen & couragious minds to whet their politike industrie, that thereby they may shun diuers discommodities and vnknown dangers, & attaine to the tipe of true valiancie: but to procede.

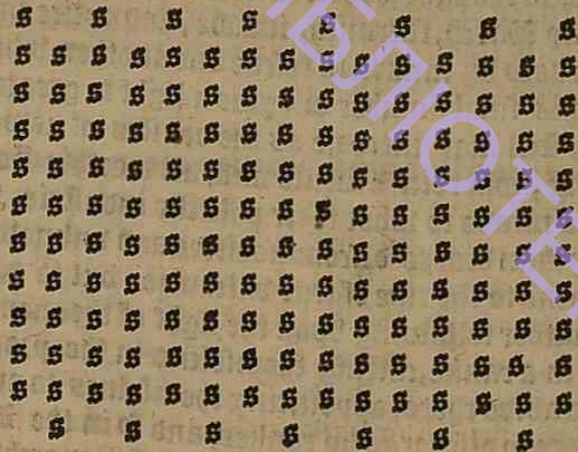
This number following vpon the sight of the enemies, must march thre in a ranke, casting themselues in the propoztion of a King, so to abide there, appointing themselues to approach still in aray, there to discharge by rankes, and so in the Rereward to charge againe, being readie for seruice, still marching round and wheeling about like vnto the Cutters.



This number encoūtring the King must discharge by rankes, and after the first ranke hath discharged, to retire betwixt the rankes vntil they come to the Rereward, there to charge and

to follow his loadsmen to service againe . Thus may you continually maintaine skirmish, how litle or great soever your number be, it giueth great encouragement to the Souldiers standing but one shot and retireth.

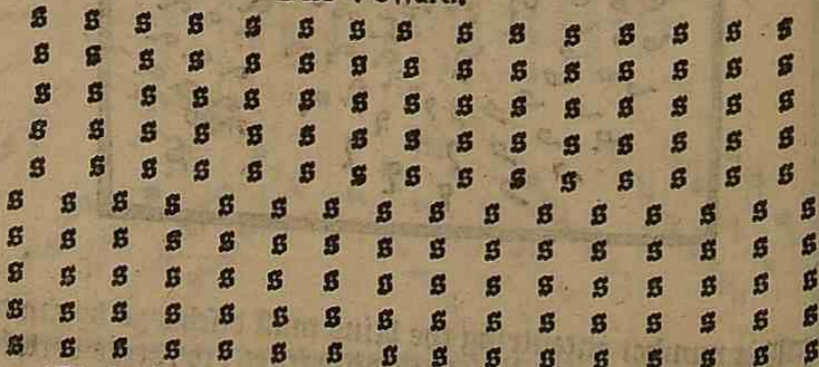
The Voward.



The Rereward.

These two bands of Hargabuziers set to encounter the enemy on their broad sides, the fronts discharge & turne their faces, resting betwixt the other, which aduance in like maner for their rescue. These retire and charge againe to service, by practicing the skirmish in this sort, you may bring bands of Archers to service, to the great anoying & discomfiting of the enemy.

The Voward.



These two bands change rankes, and place on their broad sides.

These

These bands of Archers be brought to service by the Callieuers afore them.

These bands of Archers being brought to service by the Hargabuziers, although the hargabuziers be accompted to be of greater force then they be of, and the Archers not now so much vled in the field as they haue bin, yet hauing light shaftes made to shot 12. or 14. score, may kepe their place, shooting al together ouer the heads of the hargabuziers, to the gauling, blemishing, and great annoy of the enemy.



These two bands following discharge by rankes and returne to the Rereward, and charge againe, who being placed five in a ranke like to two hoznes, are to be brought to skirmish in like proportion to this figure. The fronts or bolward hauing discharged, the one restyeth on the left hand, the other on the right hand vnto the Rereward, & there to charge againe every one a fresh, following his loadsmen to service.



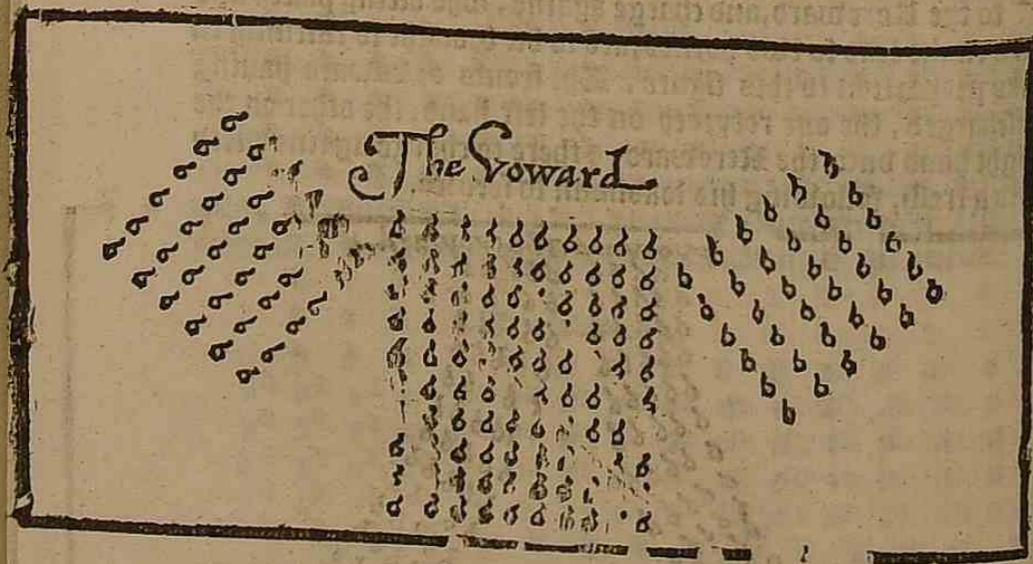
D

Acco2



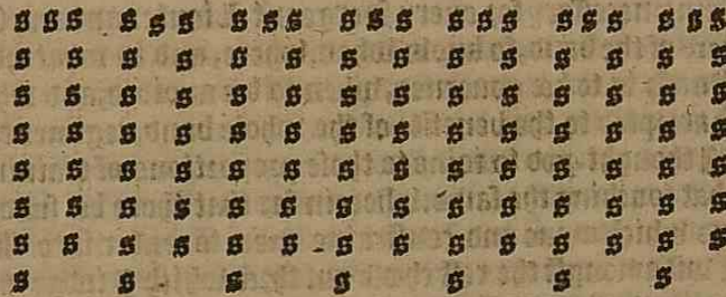
Orders of shot verie necessarie for diuers intents of seruice available.

According to the number of the enimies, you must answer them with like proportion and numbers, hauing great regard to obtaine the hill, wind, water, wood, marsh, strength of ditch, coppes, &c. the which greatly qualleth. Sometimes the advantage of ground is such, that small numbers may repulse greater numbers. The grounds large and plaine, make your main-ward of shot large and strong, the better to answer the enimie, the fronts to discharge and retire to the Rearward, there to charge againe, and being thus ioined in skirmish with the enimie, the Officer or hee that guides, must choose the best way to repulse and ouerthrow the enimie, sending two wings to flanke the enimies and to encounter them, the which being wisely foresene will greatly profit.

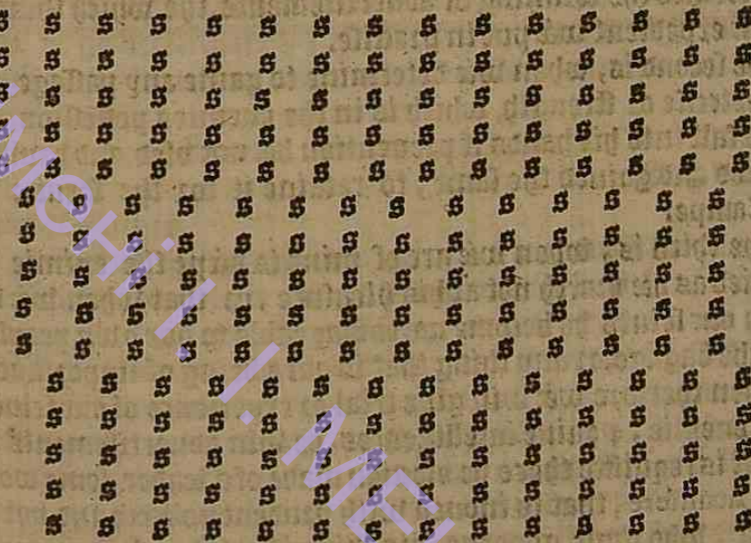


Souldiers likewise in marching, charging or discharging, inuading and skirmishing, may from the first ranks and front of the square, returne and wind himselfe thozow the ranke,

ranke, being seconded by his companions, following this example.



These three bands marching at large may wade thorough in skirmish, or retire betwixt the rankes, as occasion serueth, either band rescuing other, to charge in the Rearward, and to aduance to seruice againe. Thus may you continually maintaine skirmish or bolles of whole shot.



These practises and others of better inuention, together with such like warlike exercises in times conuenient, may bring perfection to seruice with shot at neede, the rather through the good industrie and painfull trauaile of the Officers and the Souldiers, by whose gentle patience it is sooner obtained.

The order of skirmish, how it is to be governed, when it is to be accepted, and when to be avoided.

**I**t being necessary for every Sergeant, Lieutenant and Cavalier of the band, to know when, where, and in what order a skirmish is to be governed, when to be avoided, and when to be accepted to the benefit of the whole band, regiment, or Armie, I thought good to ioine to those proportions of training, somewhat touching the same: wherein for that there be sundrie occasions which moue and constraime men to enter into skirmish, I wil amongst the rest chose out three which I iudge most principall and of greatest importance.

The first is, when we will give the enimie experience and triall of our valour and force, and cunningly to persuade him (by a souldier that yields of purpose, or alter sides) to give credit to some thing which may arise to our commoditie and his damage. Likewise by taking some of his souldiers prisoners, to vnderstand the state of our enemies, the which may be more aptly termed the winning of aduertisements, the which things is most expedient we put in practise.

The second is, when we determine to gaine any passage, or any fortresse or strength, which is in the enemies possession, or like to fall into his hands if prevention be not used, and hauing occupied and gained the same, to retaine it for the seruice of our Campe.

The third is, when we are of mind to keepe the enimie so occupied as hee march not at his pleasure, or that when we do march our selues he become not damageable to our own people, or to the bagage, or any thing that is ours being of importance.

When therfore we will give trial or experience of our selues to the enimie, & gaine intelligences, or win aduertisements of him: it is requisite there be election made of a leader, some worthy Cavalier, that is indued with prudent policie and noble valour, who must governe this skirmish: which leader, must take with him a quantitie of chosen souldiers, & according as the accustomed vse is, must haue culled out of every band so many as wil amount to the number of 10. out of ech hundred, a hundred out of a thousand, and a thousand out of ten thousand, or some such like reasonable portion.

When

When the leader of the skirmish hath made choise of the place and ground (fit for his purpose) wherein hee meanes to meete with the enimies (the which will not be difficile for that he is the chooser, inuentor, and author thereof,) he must then conduct thither a quantitie of good souldiers, with an assured array and order. Hauing first and beforehand exhorted the to due obedience, and opened and conferred with them y<sup>e</sup> chiefe circumstance of his meaning, both how long, and in what manner the enterprize is to be perfozmed, to the intent that when he hath accomplished and executed so much as he was determined, it do not seeme strange vnto them to make retire. For the which there did arise great quarrell and bloodie issue in Germanie, betwixt two Italian captaines, Giouan Dominico Napolello of Naples, and captaine Loatello of Cremona, both valiant gentlemen, the one of them perswading the other to retire from a skirmish, begin to the purpose before mentioned, by appointment of their superiours, but by reason the one would not obey, it was the cause of great disorder. He must likewise haue a prudent foresight and be verie circumspect, that like a good souldier he go verie warily & considerately into the fight and skirmish, euer watching & attending for his continuall aduantage, to the end that retiring himselfe vpon a sodaine, the enimy may remaine & rest repulled, amazed, and oppressed, that the whole armie may conceiue and be kept in a good impression, and opinion of victorie.

Now this foresaid leader being arrived with the people in the sight of the enimie, he must immediatly with his souldiers, occupie and take possession of the ground, which doth best please him, which is most apt for his purpose, & in effect is y<sup>e</sup> strongest: He must take order y<sup>e</sup> these bargabuffers be accompanied with armed pikes and corselets, without whose fellowship bargabuffers ought neuer to be sent about any enterprize, specially when they suspect they shall meete with the enimy, or with horsemen.

Whensoever souldiers are to enter into skirmish, their leader must deuide them into so many parts as he shall think expedient, which diuision must be vled according as the quantitie of the people will beare, so that in euery part their ought to be at the least 50. souldiers, and 5. or 6. severall parts and companies: Neuerthelesse alwayes foresaying and providing, that

as well all the parts together, as the number of the souldiers of euerie part by themselves, be like in proportion to the qualitie and force of the enemy, and equal to the quantitie of their number, the which may be knowne verie well, there by view and discovered by meanes of spies, or by manifest and assured fame. To euerie which part he must appoint a sufficient head & guid, a noble Cauallier of Saint Georges Squadre.

Then must he send out certaine souldiers that be most nimble and readie to prouoke the enemy, and when they be toynded in skirmish, he must sodainely increase the fight with sending forth the second part: and then rest a little to behold, to the intent the skirmish may begin to grow whotter: at which time he must likewise send the third trope for a new supplie, and so consequently one after another, continue on the encounter.

The most fit and apt time when the souldiers must enter the skirmish, make retyze, & giue a fresh onset, ought to be shewed and made manifest by the sound of trumpets to horsemen, and stroke or batterie of drummes to the footemen, from the maine stand, which is placed in some plot of ground, resting vigilant in a forceable squadron, for the sure defence and retrait of those that skirmish: to the end they may both couragiously fight, and the enemy rest confounded & despaire of his victorie, when he doth perceiue so perfect and politike an order. The which for the most part makes euerie hard difficultie to be performed with great facilitie, specially in the discret & famous exercise of armes.

To giue more light to some new inuentions of skirmish, I cannot omit to declare in what sort I haue seene skirmish a guidon of horsemen cutters, who comming to the fight in their accustomed squadres, and from thence pricking forward some of the first ranks and threds prouoke the enemy, and when these of the first ranks haue discharged their Pistolets, making Carrier & being charged, they place themselves againe at the backe of their owne squadre, from whence at the same instant time others of the first ranks do disband themselves, and giue charge upon the enemy: but being charged themselves of the enemy, retyzing, they conuey themselves behind their owne people, which already before them are ranged for their sattie in their square, so that as many more immediatly giuing a fresh onset, by breaking out of the squadre, which is maintained and renewed by

by this speciall order, doe with marvellous furie force the enemy, & in this order skirmishing in a winding ring, in round, as is befoze set downe by figure, do still maintaine themselves lusty and fresh, the which forme of fight may in some respectes serue in this place for an example.

But to returne to my former matter, I say, when the skirmish and fight hath bene maintained valiantly in the front and face of the enemy an houre and a halfe, or else two houres, and that he hath taken some of his enemies prisoners, for the obtaining whereof he must very couragiously and wholly procede, which is to be vnderstood, the winning of aduertisements and intelligences from the enemy: since by that meanes he may haue of them choise and contentation, he may then at his pleasure make retraite and take by the skirmish.

Moreouer, to the intent he may retyze with aduantage and with safetie, he must send to sustaine the fight, a fresh band of souldiers that with greater facilitie he may front the furie of the enemy, if there rise desire in them to vnye or pursue him in his retyze.

There is one note most necessarie to be obserued in an army, regiment or band, that neither any famous Generall or prince, any politike personage, or worthy souldier of estimation, enter into the faction of a skirmish, but rather that the same be guided and governed prudently by others of meaner calling. For although the enterprize did fall out to the aduantage of the same partie, yet if there should follow the losse of any famous and notable person, the same hath not onely bene of great damage, but also hath bene oftentimes of such force, that it hath stroken a terroze and feare in the minds of the souldiers, specially amongst those that were not at the enterprize, neither in like cases will it satisfie or suffice them to declare or solemnely expresse vnto them the truth, but that upon such special losse, they will grow into vnadvised iudgements and timorous dispositions.

If in case the enemy take the charge and make retyze, it is good to haue take order with the Caualliers, heads & guides of the skirmish, that as nere as possible they can, they force their people to make way, and that they follow the enemy no further, since that in this point they do not contend for any other end, then

then to breed a certaine impression and good opinion in the minds of our owne souldiers, to the confusion of the contrarie part, and to winne conuertements, if it be possible, the which is all the effect they haue to perfoyme, the which was the onely motion that moued them to attempt this enterprize.

Now when he determines to gaine a passage, or any other strong place against the enimie, which will arise to their disprofite and our owne commoditie, and hauing wonne it, to sustaine and defend the same: first choise must be made of a vigilant and valiant leader, although it hath often fallen out that without entring into skirmish a diligent captaine or leader, hath with his people taken possession of such passages or strong places. And by this prouidence, it ariseth to be neither difficile nor hard to be defended against the enimie, considering that all such suspected extremities & bands, be accustomed to be strong by nature, whereunto afterwards ioyning some little Art, for the most part they become expugnable. But neuerthelesse if by incountring with the enimie it is requisite he should skirmish, I iudge it verie good that he should rashly go no further, then so farre as the souldiers which he hath sent to the skirmish haue gained.

To obserue perfite gouernement, it is neuer good to depart from the order befoze reherfed, saue onely when he doth see the enimie bend and thinke away, in place of aduised stay & polittike retention in proceeding, I the iudge it wortie commendation to followe the victorie, but for al that, with such consideration and so aduisedly, that their ouer-great courage and carelesse ioy be not the occasion of disorder and confusion, together with the which prosperitie, he must diligently procure his people to gaine the passage or strong place, to the end if the enemy should go about to succour his flying and broken people, he become not a let and hinderance to his determination.

It is verie requisite he likewise note, that when the enimie is so fresh and of such force, that it is impossible to ouerthrow or repulle him face to face: then shall it be to the purpose to moderate the same euen vntill night, at which time he must vse all the polittikes and stratagemes he can possible to perfoyme his determination: for the onely marke whereat this leader must shote, must onely be to worke such meanes as he may gaine the

the passage, and take possession of the strong place, and not to passe the time in skirmish and fight: hauing wonne the same, he must indeuour himselfe to defend and repaire it, that they may be able to resist all the furie and force that the enimie is able to make, vntill such time as succours come to him from his campe.

When he is of minde to entertaine and keepe the enimie occupied, to the intent he march nor iourney not at his pleasure, or that if your armie doe march, he worke not any damage to your people, to your baggage, to your munitions & other things of importance: It is verie expedient that the leader of this skirmish be valiant and wise: who must determine to keepe occupied the enimie, that by the practise thereof it may arise to be profitable to the performance of some other his purposed enterprize.

After he hath made choise amongst his souldiers of those which must skirmish, he must deuide them as is befoze reherfed: and he with the rest of the people to him vntied, as neere as is possible, must march alongst the strongest situation of the ground, & then must send those that are deputed and appointed to the skirmish, one after another to the taile of the enimies battel, against whom they must skirmish and fight, euen as an old beaten dog about some Bul or furious beast doth here and there snatch, bite and turne about him, that in the end he doth keepe him occupied & wearie him, if not ouercome. When he hath put these things in execution, he must gather together his people in the best sort he can, in the aforesaid order.

If in marching his owne campe doe feare to be assaulted at the backe, or that he hath suspicion of his baggage, or doubts some impediments on the flankes: then must the leader of the skirmish make repaire with his people to that place, where he suspects the enimie will take aduantage: and march farre off, and with such distance from his campe and his battailes, as he shall thinke conuenient, and as the nature of the place doth require, to the intent he may bring to effect his determination, and prosecute the same to a good end, the which is to auoid the inconuenience, that the enimie neither hurt nor hinder his baggage and munition. And in this sort with good order he must followe and accompany his owne people, and with those that be

appointed

appointed for the fight, must keepe occupied and intertaine the enemy still skirmishing, retreating, and marching as it alwayes falls out and chanceth to him that valiantly defends himselfe.

Concluding then, I say, that it sames good and verie requisite that the skirmish for the most part should be fled and shunned, except it be in respect of some of the three foresaid occasions, or some such like, which thereunto may be adioyned, proceeding of a practised and advised iudgement, for it is a verie rash and unadvised thing to lose men of valour to no purpose, as of necessitie in skirmishes doth succede. And besides the losse of such persons of estimation, which ariseth by reason of rash disorder: Moreover it hath bene oftentimes seene, that whilest he goeth about to succour one band presently enclosed by the enemy and put to flight (by reason it hath bene negligently governed, as for the most part it falls out, when men go to skirmish moved by a fantastical rage, vain ambition, and to small purpose without a sufficient appointed chiefe or head, or rather without speciall commission from the captaine Generall, the which aduertisement is principally to be noted) there hath such inconuenience succeded, that an armie hath sometimes bene constrained to hazard and come to the fight of a maine battell vpon a suddaine, a thing marvellous perillous, and that ought of necessitie to be fled, without manifest aduantage of a perfite and a well practised Generall.

Sundrie aduertisements fit for a worthie  
Cauallier to obserue.

- 1 First in the view of a batterie.
- 2 Secondly in describing the condition of a situation of any place.
- 3 And thirdly in disclosing the order the enemy obserues, either encamping or marching.

Although an excellent and prudent captaine Generall in all his affaires must vse the seruice of practised souldiers, such as may be supposed to haue sufficient knowledge in these aforesaid respects: yet doe I coniecture it verie necessarie to make choise of a man that besides his sufficient experience in diuerse warlike

warlike practises of training, ordering, directing, and leading souldiers, yet would I with the said worthy Cauallier to carrie a haucie and hardie heart, a bold and valiant bodie, and moreover that he be accompanied with an excellent iudgement in matters appertaining to the exercise of Armes: specially in those causes conuenient to be accomplished by him or his equals. Who after he hath receiued commission to view any batterie, and that he is sufficiently armed, able to defend himselfe (which as nere as is possible he must finde the meanes to be) he ought to take with him some one hargabuster, a man of valour, to repulse and annoy the enemies which are at the defence, if hee should stand in neede or be discouered, and to the intent he may aid him in other accidents that might fall out: but after he is guided and entred into the action of his enterprize, he must aduisedly enforme himselfe, and take the view how great the breach is, and how hie the entrance is of ruined earth, and both what and how great the difficultie is to ascend thereupon, considering well what effect the fall of the wall hath made, and being ascended or at leastwise so nere as is possible, hauing done his indeuour to mount vpon the breach, he must go about to view secretly and sufficiently the largenelle within, which is betwixt the battered wall and the houses, and how much the fall of the batterie is in that place: and together with this he must inuention himselfe to see if the said batterie be flanked within or not, if it be safe or secure, if the place be plaine, easie, or hard and headlong to ascend: and in sum, he must consider by what means and which is the best way, that they within may defend themselves. Al the which, so nere as is possible, he ought to doe with great diligence and wisdome, as in speedie returne, taking view and making choise at the same instant of the most close & covert way, wherein the souldiers may with greatest commo- ditie appoach to giue assault to the breach and batterie.ouer which tropes it doth for the most part appertaine to this Cauallier to be the guide: Now vpon his returne, he must make full discourse of euerie particular to him that hath sent him, to the intent that his prince or General may with all speed appoint the order of the assault, that the lesse time may be giue the enemy to make contermures, bulwarks, and trenches to defend himselfe.

I am of opinion likewise, that that souldier or worthy Cavallier ought to be no lesse then the foresaid, of a practised and pregnant wit, to whom charge is giuen to discover the qualitie and condition of the situation of the enemies countrie, or the place where he remains: who after he hath considered of the same, although he that sent him hath not expressly declared him his meaning and intencion touching the same, or his full meaning: yet being conducted to the place, he must with the least shew, rumour or noise possible, cause the people that go with him to enter into ambush, to the intent he be not discovered or disturbed by the enimie, which done, he must warily and discretly view and over view, search and go through every place, noting out the quantitie of the waters which run through the countrie, the capacite of the plains, if therein be marshy grounds or not, the depth and bredth of the vales, the roughnesse of the mountaines, their height and capacite, if they be naked, clothed with hye or lowe wood, or else plowed and pasture ground: and if there be towne and habitations, whether they be placed upon plaines, mountaines, or nere the water, whether they be inclosed with wals and fortified or not, and of what bignesse and qualitie of forme they be: and so consequently he shall make note of everie particular point, as I haue written in a speciall discourse hereunto adiorned, considering that some of these and like particulars, may verie often helpe and do good service, and arise to be of great importance. In this selfe sort & order he may very well discover all the passages and wayes from the time he doth depart, even untill he arive againe, alwayes marking and making advised choise of the best and shortest: so that he may give to his prince or Generall a true information and full relation of everie thing, to the intent his Generall may with great reason and to his most advantage, determine of that which shall arise to his greatest profite, and to the enemies disadvantage: as was by Charles the fift obserued at the riuer Alba, by the Spaniards at Sirick sea, and by that famous Prince Don Iohn D'austria at sundrie times, specially when in person the day after he returned from Luxemburge to Namures, he made discoverie of the ground about the prince of Orange and States Campe, lying at Templo, where by the commaundement of my Collonell the Baron of Cherau, I amongst the rest of his owne Squadrons

Squadrons lay in Ambascade, for the safetie of our Generals retire, by whose prudent discoverie and valiant courage, the next day with two thousand five hundred footemen and nine hundred horsemen, we overthrew eightene thousand of the enemies, slew 12000, toke all their bagage and Artillarie.

Now lastlie when it is requisite to disclose and discover the order and maner which the enimie obserues, either being encamped or in marching, it behoues a good souldier advisedly to take the view and knowledge thereof, in as good order as time and occasion wil permit. And if in case the enimie remaine firme and encamped, I iudge it verie requisite if it be possible, to take view of the Campe round about, at leastwise as much as hee can well, taking notice how many Corps de garde they keepe without their Campe, and so likewise what part of the situation thereof doth make it most weake, what part is strongest, and which part is betwixt both, being able to render account with good reason of all these things in discourse like a politike and practised souldier: The performace whereof sometimes is with more assurance and better brought to passe in the night then in the day.

If in case the enimie be in his iourney and do march, I suppose it verie necessary to discover in what order they march, and in what manner and forme they haue planted their Squadrons, set in order and armed the Rearward, the battaile & vanguard, and both the one flanke and the other, if they haue Artillarie, or that they be without, and together with this he must discover the condition and situation of the ground where they march, and which way they bend their course to encamp, where they make stay and stay. Hee must likewise search out and diligently decipher, whether they march with feare, whether they keepe good order, whether they make halt all this as nere as is possible hee must discern, and with spere in deuoz himselfe to give information of ech particular thing unto his Prince or Generall, to the intent when the first occasion doth offer, (which is commonly when they make stay at their lodging) hee may determine to molest them by suddaine Alarums, Canuados, and other such like surprises or attemptes. And that in this second and last discovery which is of marching, to the end (being informed of their qualitie)

qualitie) hee may determine what to doe, if not than, at least, wise when occasion doth offer: wherefore I am of opinion, that together with approued practise, and the due consideration of these Rules and aduertisements, it makes much to the purpose that a good souldier should haue some knowledge of drawing and painting proportions of Cities, Fortresses, bulwarkes, &c. together with some vnderstanding in the art prospectiue & of proportion: for it often chanceth to be a thing verie difficile to giue directions, and diue him that gouernes or is Generall to vnderstand some particularities, like to these onely by plaine wordes, although they were ample and manifest, whereof the description by draught being well knowen, accompanied with the liuely voice of the Relator, it makes the Prince more capable to determine what is to be executed for performance of his important enterprizes.

Diuerse notes due for a singuler good Souldier and Caualiere to obserue, when hee must giue to his Captaine Generall or Prince, a true description and full relation of the Countries, Cities, and Castels of a whole state or kingdome.

**I**t is the opinion of all men that be of perfect experience in Armes, that it particularlie appertaines to the Captaine Generall, to haue a perfect description, and diligent relation of the fortified places, & the particular state in every point of all the Province that is committed to the Generals custodie, whether generally or particularlie.

Wherefore a worthy souldier & noble Caualiere may alwaies increase in his Princes fauor: hee must be ever readie to prefer his important affaires, chiesly in this speciall seruice of aduertisement & discouerie: (Touching which Guichardines descriptions of the low Countries may be a patterne), for the performance whereof, hauing receiued his full Commission of authoritie, it is most conuenient for him, both particularly and in generall, to examine, discouer, view, take notice, the prospectiue & plot of euery place with aduised iudgement, & not by fortune as many are accustomed, so that they cannot otherwise do, not hauing sufficient knowledge of the Bussola, which with great industrie hath bin to this end found out and made moze ample  
by

by the Conte Iulio de Tiene.

For which respect it is conuenient he take the platfoyme of euery walled towne in that state, and with due measured distance therein, must note & make the proportion of the walles, bulwarkes, the mounts, rockes, gates, ditches, the market places with their bignes, the principall streets with their circumstances, specially whether there be any hanging or high hill or ground, that vpon any side is opposite of a iust space and reasonable distance, from whence according to sufficient consideration and examination therein, artillarie or any other engine may offend and endamage the same.

Hee must set out likewise, whether the bulwarkes, walles or rocks be weake or strong, old or new, repaired or ruinous, rampiers, or otherwise, if their situation lie hie or low, on marish ground, sand, grauell, or rockes, or vpon auncient buildings or ruines. Likewise let him describe towards what part of the world they stand, whether East, West, South or North: If they will suffer or be in danger to be myned, to be battered, to be assaulted with ladders, or with any other manifest or secret expugnation, and vpon what side and place.

Hee must set downe notice if there be fountains or cesterne, if great ryuers or floodes, and if the said water be possible to be taken away, stoppt, or infected of the enimie: and must aduertise what remedie may be vsed to the contrarie.

Moreover hee must consider in what ayre those Cities stand, if in whoat or cold, drie or moist, or rather mirt and temperate, & if the places be apt to be kept & defended: If the ayre wil suffer that victuales, munitions, and souldiers wil be conserued, or otherwise.

What store of victuales is in ech Towne or Fortresse, or the countrie adioining, and whether there be fit commoditie to carie and recarie the same by water or by land. And if the place be vpon the sea coast, whether it be a hauen Towne or fisher towne, what depth the barre is of at the ebbe and full, the capacite of the harbour, and what scoare of vessels belong to the same, together with the disposition of the sea faring men, the goodnes of the shippes, both for swift saile and fight, how they are stoord with ordinance and munitions, and armed with netting, grates and seightes &c.

Let

Let him diligently obserue how many households and houses be in euerie towne, how many persons, how many able men for souldiers vpon foote, how many for horsemen, and how many for pioners, how many oxen, how many horses to draw cartes or artillarie, how many beastes of burden to carrie victuales ech place is able to keepe or make, what artillarie, what munition and victuales bee found in ech towne or fortreffe, from whence euery place may be succoured and victualed, and from whence victuales may be had to sustain those places which are apt to be defended and kept.

How many souldiers there be of the infantarie, and how many of the Cavallarie, if they oftentimes vse exercise of Armes, and make shewes or Shufflers, whether they be well or euill armed, courageous or cowardes, politike or rash, obedient or mutinous, expert or ignorant, old or new bands, and shall in effect consider what is to be looked for at their hands, or what their abilitie is apt to performe.

This done, hee may with all other requisite diligence, set downe notice of any other particular or necessarie thing. If the Riuers and floodes be nauigable, if they ebbe or flow, if they be easie to be kept, and their bridges, fords, and passages be defended, where they be weak or stronge, ebbe or deepe, the which is easie to be knowen: for where the water is most ebbe or shallow & most fit for a foard, there doth appere a rigge or streame caused of the substance and matter which doth run by the depth and doth make stay there, the which for that it hath oftentimes bin experimeted, is most true as diuers haue tried.

Hee must discerie the condition of the hilles, of the vallies, the qualitie of the confines, of the waters, of the fennes, of the myres and lakes and other things worthe to be noted, and in what part of the prouince the ground is fertile or barraine, if abundantly it bringes forth graine, grapes, fruites, oyles, sades, flaxe or hempe: what soze of castell and beastes there be, and of what sorts: If that there be wodes, and towards what part: If therein grow wood for building or for fire.

Let him likewise aduertise whether the entrance of the countrie be difficile, and the issue easie: or contrarie.

And amongst other things to be considered, it is a thing of great importance, to vnderstand perfectly whether the people be

be industrious or ydle, if warlike or labourers, if quiet or disquiet, if friendly or factious. If the footemen for weapons vse the hargabuze, musket, halberd & pike, or the bow, the dart, and browne bill, if short swords and poynaldes, or long swords and great daggers. If the horsemen vse firelocke peeces, or snap-haunces, if pistolets, launces, and long chasing staves: or else what manner of weapon they vse, their nature and order in feight: and what policies and stratagemes they are accustomed to vse. And to conclude, hee must thus in writing, in notes, in plaine draughts and painting, let him with good deliberation and aduisement, and not rashlie make manifest and apparant euery small particular thing, to the intent that his Prince, Generall, Collonell, or Captaine, beginning at the one end, may with the eye of his mind, run ouer & peruse the whole, one by one in due propoztion, brieely & plainly in a table, as y view of a gallant Theater, from whence the velle of the shading curtaine is suddainlie drawne, and make apparant to the eyes of all the beholders, the sight of some sumptuous shew, or that taking hold at the one end, hee may draw altogether like a well linked chaine: so that any one which hath not sene the place, beholding the portrature thereof, may thinke hee doth view the same with his eyes, whereby all these descriptions of the said countrie in generall, or any parcel in particular, may verie well serue, and with great aide direct him that must enter into or gouerne a Prouince, to the great increase of the honour of any noble Prince or worthy Captaine.

These and such like be the qualities I would wish to be in a valiant Cavalliere of Saint Georges Squadre, in a Lieutenant, Sergeant, or any other good souldiers, that hee may know how to direct, guid, gouerne, traine, skirmish, view, discover, and describe the propoztion and situation of Countries. And for the better performance thereof, to haue good knowledge in the Mathematikes, speciallie in Algarisme, Algebra, and Geometrie, whereby hee may worthily merite a good Souldiers name.

A rule



A rule to set any number of Souldiers in aray.

The footemen being brought into the place where they are to be put in aray: first you must foresee, that it be fit for the purpose, and so capable, that the aray may commodiously turne on the right and the left hand, as much as may be: nevertheless according to the number of the souldiers you have, afterwarde proceede in this sort.

First the Pikes must be drawn by themselves on one side together with the Ensignes, and upon the other side all the Hargabuziers, somewhat alsoe off distant from the pikes, beginning to make the hargabuziers march, so many in a ranke as you list, parting them nevertheless according to their number: You may put them from 3. to 12. in a ranke, for it is not often seene that more then a leuen is put in a ranke, how great soever the number of the footmen be, neither in troath ought they to be more then a leuen, for when they passe a leuen or twelue they are not to be accounted an aray, but rather a battaile.

Having then placed the number of the Hargabuziers you shall thinke good of, to be in a ranke, you shall cause them to march in good proportion, sending forth one ranke after another, the Sergeant standing still on one side, causing them to passe before him, iudging by eye-sight from ranke to ranke of all the Souldiers one by one, whether they be right in lyne, obserue distance, and whether they doe moue forth of their order and aray, for this is the beautie and importance of an aray.

Moreover, the Sergeant hauing speciall respect to accommodate and place at the head of the aray, all the Corporals or Lancia Spezzata which carie Calliuers, placing next unto them the best and the best furnished Souldiers, putting a Drumme behinde the second ranke, that is to say, before the third, placing at the talle of the aray the best and best armed, to the intent the aray may shew the better, soasmuch as when they are deuided into aray, the hargabuziers from the Pikes, and that they turne their faces, then the backe part is made the front,

front, therefore the backe ought to be as well furnished as the front, or the head of the aray, as you will please to tearme it: The which if you desire to doe, it is necessarie you put in the midst of the rankes the weakest and worst furnished, aduertising the Sergeant that the souldiers are best furnished, when they haue all sortes of armes and furniments that bee necessarie for them, and appertaines to a Hargabuzier, god match, sper, coall, powder and bullet, and moreover L'azzino: And this is to be obserued with that speede and diligence, that the time or occasion doth carie, and the suspicion of the enimie doth import.

And in one present time, if the Sergeant haue commission, hee must distribute munition to the Hargabuziers, as bullet, match, or powder, and to haue a man about him to carrie the munition, and hee afterwarde goe about dispersing of it, and in giuing the powder, hee must haue a Tunnell with a small and narrowe pipe, to the intent it may enter into the pipe of euery one of their flasks, and with a measure that doth holde so much powder, as hee will giue unto euerie Hargabuzier at one time, or at twice: and so to euery ranke one by one as they goe passing forwardes, the Sergeant causing to march forward his aray before him, faire and softe ranke by ranke, by which meanes hee shall not confound them.

If it chauce that hee do not distribute munition at one selfe time, hee shall cause the Pikes on an other side to put themselves in aray, as manie in a ranke as the Hargabuziers shall be, deuiding the best armed with Corselets, the one halfe to the head, and the other halfe to the backe, and the disarmed pikes in the midst, and in the midst of them place the Ensignes with their garde of Halberdes, with certaine Drummes about the said Ensignes, that is, in the Piazza or void place, where the Ensigne is to be managed: those Drummes and Fiftes that you haue, shall march before the Standards bearers: Ensignes

And the Sergeant causing the Pikes to march forward, shall number howe manie rankes they be, and shall keepe them in memorie, to the intent that if hee see to make a battilion, hee may knowe how to gouerne himselfe, and so cause the

the said Pikes to march and turne once againe, and hauing then well accommodated the aray of the Pikes, with the Ensignes placed iust in the midst, with the Drummes and Fittes before them, as I haue said, causing the Ensignes to haue an ample and large rone and Piazza, from the two rankes that bee about him, that is, from that which is before, and from the other that doth march right behind him, to the intent the Ensignes may bee well shewed and managed.

When they bee well set in order, it is necessarie to cause the Pikes to stay and stand, and the Sergeant hauing staied them, hee shall then go where hee hath first accommodated the Hargabuziers, and shall cause them to march forward, nere where the Pikes are in order of aray. And the Sergeant hauing first numbred likewise the rankes of the Hargabuziers, and being staied where the Pikes, after the one halfe of the Hargabuziers is past, that is, if they bee in all 50. rankes, when 25. bee past, the Sergeant shall enter with his Halberd ouerthwart them, and staying and pressing backe the other 25. rankes, hee shall cause to enter after a goodlie and readie manner, all the Pikes and Ensignes, causing them euer to march forward, and when they bee all past away, upon the appochoing of the last rankes of Pikes, hee shall cause the rest of the Hargabuziers to enter into aray, the which being done, the aray shall bee faire and perfect, and it will bee good that hee cause them to march and turne three or fower times, to the intent they may settle themselves the better, and that they may enter into their pace, their aray, and the vnderstanding of the Drumme, for that makes them moze apt to go iust, learning one of an other a stately and conuenient pace, and to beare their weapons of all sorts with a good grace, and specially the Pikes.

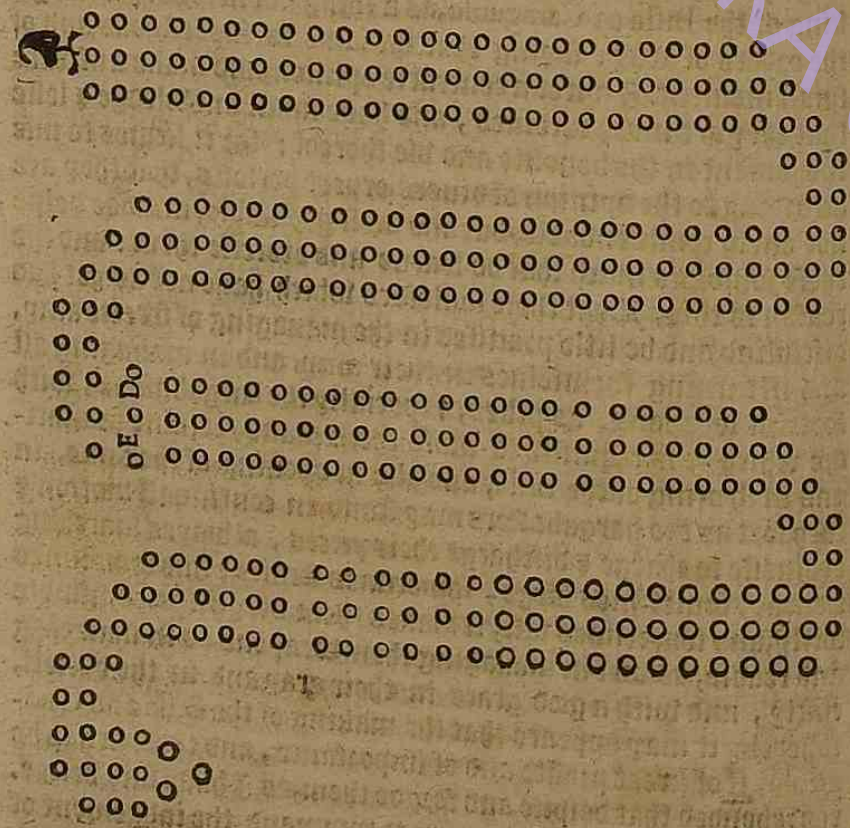
A good Sergeant must take care to make stay in euery discommodious place, or streit passage, as when they go downe or discend from some Mountaine, at the passage of a soarde or streit byidge, or at a ditch, or a water, or some such other vncasie and streit passage, that hee iudgeth would breake the aray, as oftentimes is found in marching. And orderly without confusion cause them to passe ranke after ranke faire and easilie, holding back with the end of his Halberd the ranke next to that which is in passing, until it be thorowly ouer and placed

in aray as before, to the intent the order of aray be not confounded in any ranke, neither let him depart from that place until such time as all the rankes be past, for so the aray will not be disordered, but shall march right and iust, which is a thing of great importance, specially in marching in doubt of the enemy: and therefore hauing caused them all first to make *Alia*, he shall command them to obserue aray, distance and rankes, without thrusting or crowding until all be past the strait passage.

#### A rule how to make the aray of the Bissa.

Since there be sundry souldiers and persons, which presuppose they know much more then others, who discommend the making of the Bissa or Caraguolo, as a thing not necessary amongst the orders of aray: saying that the same is superfluous and of small moment. I am of a contrarie opinion, and make answer that they are much deceiued, and haue small knowledge & lesse iudgement in the benefite and vse thereof: for it seemes to mee according to the opinion of diuers expert persons, that they are not onely commendable, but also most profitable, and doe helpe those souldiers much that do learne and exercise them: and the reason is this, That those souldiers which haue not as yet had discipline and be litle practised in the managing of strette aray, and in turning themselves in their aray, and in managing all sorts of weapons, as pikes, & specially the hargabuziers, with the which it is requisite to cause them make certaine salutations in shooting of the Bissa, and also in opening of the same, in such sort as the hargabuziers may stand in continuall motion & redinesse to charge & discharge their peeces, alwayes marching in aray, sometimes large, sometimes strait, and sometimes softly, and sometimes fast, it makes them very disposed, nimble and readie, as wel in managing their weapons as in marching iustly, and with a good grace in their aray and in the battell, whereby it may appeare that the making of the Bissa and Caraguolo, is of great profite and of importance, and those are to be reprehended that despise and forgoe them, as I haue said before. Therefore all good souldiers are to command the iudgement of him that was first the inuentor thereof, and we are to search

With all diligence to imitate the same rule, which I will here God willing goe about succinctly and at large to declare, because in my former proportions of a King, an S, a D and a Snail, I haue not done, neither touched the manner of this Bissa or Caraguolo, the which I the rather thinke necessarie, to the intent euery souldier may see with his eyes a perfect example and way how to make it, and to the end his error in this his wilfulnesse arise not to be his discredit in greater causes, and to those that hold them more trifles, and feare to faile therein, with a litle exercise shall find it easie. I haue seene some Captaines that hath made the same most gallantly to their great commendation by men of the greatest authorite in the field. If therefore you would make a single Bissa, obserue the order set downe in this proportion.

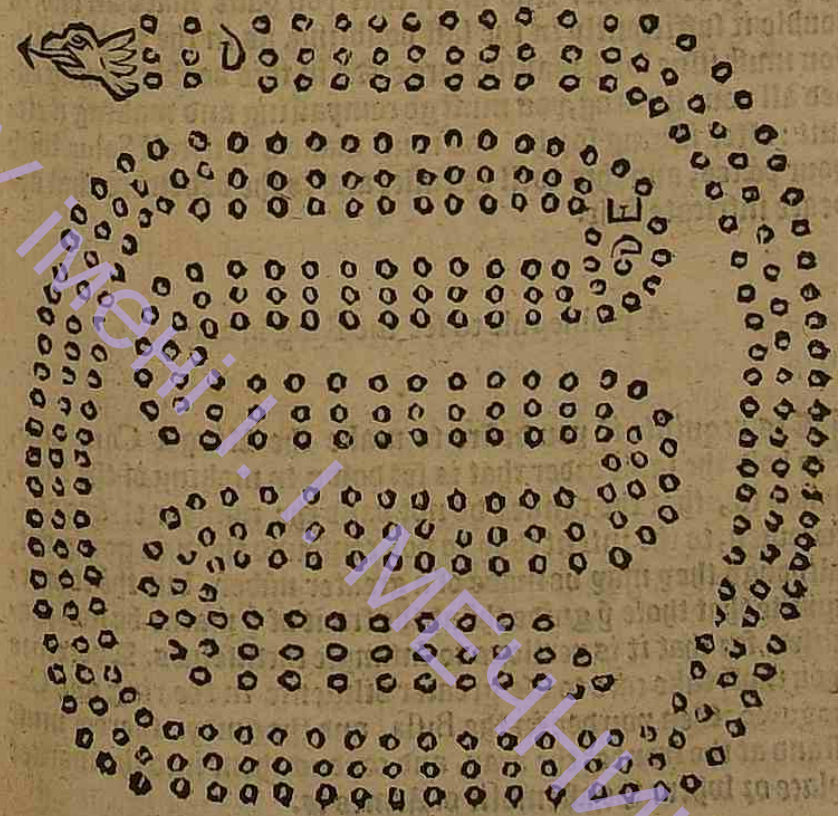


Pres

13  
BOE

Presupposing that the figure of this Bissa here set downe, is the plaine or ground where the muster is made, you must begin to enter with your aray, where the taile of this Bissa is, turning first on the right hand, & afterward on the left hand, winding your aray about another time on the right hand and on the left, until such time as you see the Ensigne be come iust into the midst of the Bissa, and that you thinke it be well: issuing forth after out of the head of the Bissa, as here is set downe, causing them to make a godly salutation, your Hargabusters at the opening and disclosing of the aray: aduertising you that these three and three in the Bissa, are the ranks of the footemen and the D signifying the Drums, & the E the Ensigne, so that beginning this order and well obseruing it, you cannot erre.

The double Bissa.

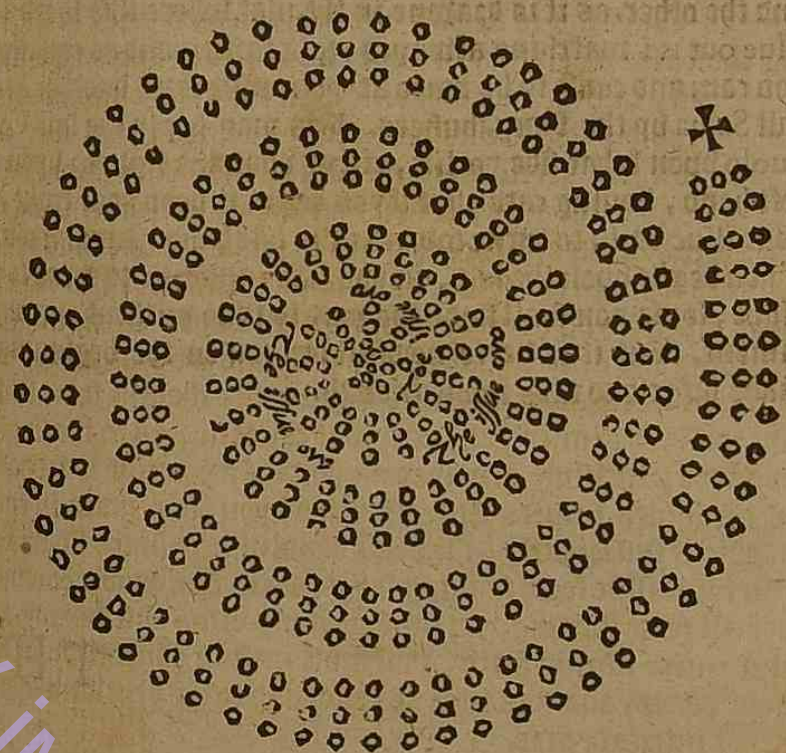


Desiring

Desiring to make a double Billa that is more inuironed and closed then the single, as here appeares, you must note that the rankes ought not to be past five in a ranke, or sixe, or seuen at the most: for when they are ouer large, they make the aray ouer broad, taking care liked wise that the place be commodious and capeable, that the footemen may be spzed, that they may march without perill of entangling: aduertising them that are at the front of the aray, when they march in their entring into the place of armes, where they are to make the said Billa to take so much space in the same, as is conuenient to do that which in your minde you haue determind. Alwayes in turning and doubling the aray, holding the path and way large, and marching as streit as is possible, if you desire that the same shal fall out well, beginning the entrie at the taile, as in the single is declared: turning alwayes as you may perceiue is set downe by the figure befoze. And after that you haue made an end, to double it sufficiently in the last doubling, as in the single Billa you must issue forth making large: So in this double hauing ended all your turning, you must go compassing and making a circuit: after issuing forth, you must make a generall Salua with your peeces, and this will be easie, and to the beholders shal appeare intricate fire.

A plaine rule to set the Ring in aray.

It is requisite if you desire to make the Ring a Caraguolo, to hold the same order that is set down in making of the Billa, which is, that the rankes do not passe the number of sixe or seven footemen, to the intent they do not confound them in going out, although they may be made of a greater nuber, but the it is requisite that those y guide the at the front of y maine be wel provided, so that it is perilous to intangle themselues. Therefore you must take care to vse greater diligence in the ring and Caraguolo, then you doe in the Billa, and the guider thereof must stand at the front of the aray, and conduct them into the market place or where the assemble of Armes is.



Presuppose therefore in your minde, hauing in charge to make this ring or Caraguolo, that here you see set down in posture, to be likewise figured in your mind upon the earth and upon the place where you are to make it, entring first where you see the crosse, and go forward marching at large, and frame a round circle, alwayes turning upon the right hand, leauing betwixt one circle & another a large way, so great that at your returne you may come within the said way, where this word the issue out is set downe, which doth note the turning backe when you are in the midst of the Ring or Caraguolo: that is, when you do see you haue closed and shut them together sufficiently, hauing left betwixt the one circle and the other of the aray, so much space that in the same you may returne backe, so the one do not touch another: Then shall you cause a goodly Salua to be made of all the Vargabusters generally at one instant.

instant. Afterwards returning backe by the left hand, you shall issue forth by that way that you haue left betwixt the one circle and the other, as it is vtaine in the plat where this word The issue out is: marching alwayes right forth, and as equally as you can: and cause to be made at your issue forth another generall Salua by the Hargabusters. You may begin the said Caraguolo vpon what side you list, either vpon the right or vpon the left hand, hauing care that if you begin it vpon your right, in your issue forth to turne towards the left hand. And so likewise if you begin vpon the left, in your issuing forth to turne to the right, for so you shall finde the way to issue without any impediment. But it is verie needfull for you in the beginning to make large and take roome inough.

THE



THE THIRD BOOKE OF  
MILITARIE DIRECTIONS,  
ENTREATING OF OBSERVATIONS  
in gouerning of Bands, of Squadrons and battailes, of  
Captaines, Collonels, and Sergeant  
Maiors generall.

*And first, the office of a Captaine which hath the guiding of a Band of men.*

**W**hat person which hath the charge to gouerne other men, specially in matters of weight and of great importance, the liues of men being committed to his handes, vnder whose conduct if any quaille through rashnesse or want of knowledge, he is bound to render account before God: and therefore he ought to be of notable capacitie, experience, and exemplare in al his actions and enterprises, since it is a generall note that the eyes of all them that be subiectes, be turned towards their principall head and chiefe, in whom as it were in a glasse, they retaine an assured hope to behold most readie rules and perfect examples, whereby they may guide and gouerne themselves.

In this particular charge of a Captaine, the qualitie of his officers, make almost a manifest shew of his valour and experience: Therefore like an old and expert souldier, as one that hath past through all those degrees and offices set downe in my two former booke, he must vse a circumspect care in leuying and making choise of his compaignes, that is, to make election of a polittike and practised Lieutenant, of a couragious Alferus, of a carefull Sergeant, of gallant and valiant Cavalliers of his Squadre, of valiant Corporals, of a diligent Chancellour, Secretary, or cleark of y band, of a faithful surner or Harbinger,

being of god iudgement and consideration, and of a Surgian prouided of all things necessarie to minister according to his Art. But aboue all things let him prouide to retain in his hand a preacher, or such a person which may take care to minister the Communion to the souldiers, and specially to roote obedience in their hearts: who likewise euerie day may celebrate that sacred sacrifice of thanks, which euen from the beginning hath bin vled of the church. And finally must haue for euerie hundred a practised drummer of good vnderstanding.

When he hath gathered and vnitied his companie, the whole band being present, his Minister must deuotely reade certaine prayers, & after ward the Ensigne shalbe publikely placed in the hands, and recommended to the custodie of the Alferus, and as in my former discourse of this point, command him to haue as much care thereof, as of his proper life, honour & credite, which he ought couragiously to aduance and display, to prefer his party in a rightfull quarrel, according to my speech where I set downe his duetie. This done he must priuately make election amongst his chiefeest souldiers of so many Caualliers or Lancia Spezzata, that is to say, Gentlemen of his band, as may amount to the number of two out of euerie Squadre. Some nations vse 50. to a Squadre, as the Suintzers and Germaines, some others lesse, according to their discretion: but in my opinion 25. is a more conuenient number, both for that the Corporall may the more often and with greater diligent care instruct & see to his charge, the if they were 50. Besides 25. souldiers deuided into 5. ranks makes a iust square, so that by the same account 300. may containe 12. Squadres, and euerie one haue a Corporall of the same number: whereof 10. Corporalls haue the leading of mixt weapons, the 11. charge ouer the Halberdiers, & the 12. to consist of Gentlemen, old and expert souldiers, amongst whom the targets of pzoofe ought to be in number. The Captaine at the same time, when he consecrates his Ensigne, must likewise solemnly constitute & confirme a Corporall ouer the Caualliers of his Squadre, which he must dedicate to S. George, and enrol their names by this title, The Corporall and Caualliers of S. George his Squadre. He must inuest & bestow vpon the corporall a scarfe of red & white sarsnet, and a Medall or ieuell of gold or siluer double gilt, wherein the portrature of S. George is liuely wrought, to hang about his

his necke, at his skarfe or otherwise: and mozeouer to him and all the rest of the Squadre, must giue a litle Phane or Penon of filke vpon a wyze, whereof the Crosse must be of red, and the rest of the square white, the other part of the sarsnet of the Captaines coulours, or with what words or deuise therein shal please him best: They must weare this behind, either vpon their burganets, or vpon their hats if they will in a plume of red and white feathers, specially in all enterprizes and warlike attempts: Besides this vpon their Castockes or Mandillions towards their right brest a red Crosse of veluet, satten or scarlet, imbrotthered or comlie stitched, that they may appeare manifestly and be knowne from the rest of the souldiers, like worthie guides and leaders, whose corage and valour may incite others to ascend to their dignitie and degre.

They must solemnly promise, vowe and sweare to their possibilitie, not only to be the first to foze the breach of a battel red towne, trench, or fortresse, to giue the first coragious onset vpon the maine battaile, or the enimies Squadrons, to pearce a passage, and gallantly guid the souldiers to the skirmish, to sudaaine sallies, surprises, escalados, canuasados, and such like, but also to obserue, maintaine, and instruct the ignozant in all Militarie directions, obseruations and martiall lawes of the field.

In respect hereof those that be Caualliers and Gentlemen of this Squadre, must be intertained with a stipend and greater pay then the common souldier, and with other notable signes of manifest difference, by reason they either are or ought to be the best and most practised souldiers in his whole band: for this word Lancia Spezzata amongst the Italians, is of no other signification, then a tried experience in the warres. To which Caualliers he may freely and faithfully with great confidence and trust, commit the charge of any office in his companie that is vacant, or the performance of any other enterprize or accident, and may if hee will tearme them extraordinary Lieutenants, which hee must alwaies haue about him vpon any suddaine to execute his commaundement, and supplie other Offices when time shall serue.

A Captaine ought to haue special and particular knowledge of al those things that appertaine to the office of a Lieutenant, and the office of an Alferus, which if hee thinke god hee may

linke both in one, for amongst diuers nations now a daies, one man commonly supplies both their Offices.

The office and dutie of the Sergeants of the Cauallieres of Saint Georges Squadze, whom he must esteeme as extraordinary Lieutenants of the Corporals, Clerke of the band, Harbinger, Drummes and Fiftes: and finally, the dutie of euery particular and common souldier, that hee may presently redresse any thing a misse, and vpon any new accident to instruct them either in marching, encamping or fighting, so that hee may be able to commaund them, according as time, place, & reason doth require, without contradiction or appointing that to be done of one Officer, which ought to be done of an other: or that hee doth commaund them to do thinges not conuenient, and much lesse that which is not lawfull or not honorable. Which order of proceeding doth verie much displeas & bring men of warre in dislike of such vndirect dealings: Since the principall point and practise whereunto their exercise in Armes doth tend, is to attaine Reputation, Honor & Credite, hee must continually court his Collonel and chieftain, forcing himself to be one of the first that doth salute him in the morning, & of the last to depart from him in the evening, that thereby he may be sufficiently instructed & informed in euery particular act and practise, which is to be put in execution, touching the performance of any enterprise or warlike act, since that in those cases a warie man may best take hold of occasion, wherof hee ought to make triall in time of war, the which hee is likewise to accomplish, aswell for the seruice of his chiefe and Prince, as also for his owne satisfaction, and the honor, benefit, and reputation of his souldiers.

Let him in some sort prouide with as much advantage and commoditie as he can, that his souldiers baggage bee alwaies conducted from place to place, alwaies prohibiting superfluitie, and in long voiage their cozlets and armes of heauie burden: prouided that hee march not in suspected places, and in the enemies countrie, but not otherwise.

Let him take order that his souldiers bee light in apparell, so that it be warme, and haue as litle baggage & otherwise loaden as may bee, to the intent they may vse all their diligence about their weapons, and not to hale back for feare of losing the same, but rather haue respect to the warie keeping of their Armes, and

and that they may rather, more bent and determined to feight, in hope of gaine and honor, then suspected through the doubt of losing that which they already possesse.

Hee must not bee covetous, neither retaine one penie of pay from his souldiers, but rather distribute amongst them, all the advantages, dead paies, and Capifoldi: to the intent they may be well paid and rewarded which merite the same, so shall hee gayne honour and make them assured in perillous seruice.

Let him restraine souldiers from hauing hozses, thereby to avoid confusion, for that commonly euery one must march about the Ensigne, to the intent the rankes bee not broken and disturbed by hozses: And that souldiers bee not occupied in going abroad for forrage for their hozses, as of necessitie they must, which is proper to hozsmen and not to footmen, but onely those which are to be permitted with the Lieutenant, the Alferus, and some of the Cauallieres of Saint Georges Squadze, that are Gentlemen of greatest experience, for that they may serue in steede and place of light hozsmen, to view, discouer, conduct and carie a Message or commaundement with great speede, when and where neede doth require.

It is necessarie for him to haue some knowledge and sight in making bulwarkes, trenches, platformes, skonces, fortresses, and such like, & to know the nature and qualitie of them, aswell that with advantage hee may be able to know how to assault, as also to make them with facilitie, in times and places most necessarie: which vnderstanding and art, is particularly conuenient for him, considering the defence of men of warre in the field, for the most part consistes aswell in trenches, bulwarkes, and perfect platformes, as in a good and well gouerned Squadze and maine battaile.

Hee must haue with him a paire of Lanternes for the campe, some cressets, linkes, or torches that blowe not out with the winde, and such like to vse in the night, and in stormes and tempestes for seruice of the companie, as in Roundes, Alarums &c.

And for his proper commoditie and ornament a Pauillion or Tent of sufficient capacitie, vessels to accommodate his victuals and furniment for the fire and kitchen, of small weight and

and disturbance in carriage, and certain household stufte necessarie for himselfe and his traine, to the intent hee may so nere as is possible commodiously make supplie to the continuation of things requisite for victuals.

Hee ought alwaies to lodge with his band, and remain with the same both in good and euill, and continually shew himselfe louing and courteous, and take such part as the souldiers do: for contrariwise, taking his ease, and suffering them to bee lodged or fed miserably, breedeth him hatred or contempt.

Neither ought hee to shun toile and trauaile, but carefullie take delight and liking to bee alwaies the first, that with prudent prudence doth lay his hand to any worke, or performe any enterprize which is conuenient to bee done: for that for the most part the rude stubbozne multitude of souldiers is not constrained and forced so much, to do his dutie by compulsion, as they be voluntarie moued therunto through shame, and a reuerent respect they haue to the example of their superiour: Neither let the practise of the same bee painfull vnto him, for that to liue at ease and to bee curious of his owne commodious being, and suffer his souldiers tast the toiles of trauaile, is rather the order of a delicate Prince, then of a carefull and coragious Captaine.

Let him not faile every night that hee is of the watch, to send his Sergeant to take the word secretly of the Sergeant maior, (wherewith the watch of that night ought to bee governed) or of some other that shall bee appointed to giue it, which hee must vse wisely and warely, since that negligence in like cases may bee the ruine of him and his companie, and consequently of a whole armie.

Hee must haue tried experience, and full practise in all the points noted of mee in my two first Bookes, and bee perfect in the conduct of Partiall affaires, that with great facilitie hee may bee able to know, and with great aduise to deale in all the particulars belonging to all the degrees of souldiers vnder his estate, and of lesse estimation then a Captaine.

It behoues him to carie a valiant and coragious hart, that vpon all suddaines hee may bee able to execute all enterprizes, and that hauing ouer viewed, ordered and disposed those things that bee necessarie, hee may bee able to execute the same with such prompt and readie dexteritie, as appertaines to the terrible and  
bloodie

bloodie accidents of armes. And although there be verie few who haue such happie successe, as they may bee accounted fortunate and politike both together: Neuerthelesse it is requisite hee be prudent, & discypher and loke befoze hand into such things as are like to fall out, that hee may with discrete modestie vse either good or euill fortune, whether soeuer shall arise: for the life of man is to bee compared to the play at Tables, in the which the plater may desire and deuise which is his best cast, but yet which way soeuer the dyce turne, either good or euill, hee ought with as great discretion and art as hee can, accommodate himselfe and serue his turne withall.

Hee should possesse and be indued with a noble mind, that hee may alwaies haue the same inclined to discrete liberalitie, and not to nigardlie conetousnes, by which vice wee see many incurre and fall into most opprobrious chances; into treasons and pernicious rebellions, which are men woorthie of most shamefull corrections.

I iudge it likewise verie necessarie for him to bee eloquent, since that qualitie hath great efficacie in perswading of mens minds, which oftentimes haue much neede to bee wakened and pricked forward with a spurre, specially in those terrible accidents that fall out in the exercise of armes, which in painfull perillous actions, would otherwise languish, faint, and become fearefull: Therefore let the loue towards God, the care of their Countrie, their present perill, the example of magnanimitie in their forefathers, the quarrel, cause, and benefits to soule and body, bee meanes to make them valiantly accomplish their actes.

Hee ought neuer to make conference, concerning that which hee is to put in execution, neither of any one thought, imagination, or inuention appertaining to the state of these warlike attempts and affaires, but with those persons of whom hee may assuredly reserue faithfull and friendly counsell, for that the importance of such and so great dealings, ought euer to be had in suspition of discoverie. Therefore a wise and carefull man will euer haue a warie & tealous eye ouer such weighty affaires.

Now the order for him to punish his souldiers in cases wher in they are not guiltie of death, I thinke the most important punishment which appertaines to the Captaine to giue them,  
is



is openly amidst the whole companie & band, shamefully to disarm them, to take away their money & chiefest garments, & so to banish them & send them packing: for to put them to death, or furiously to beate them, belongs to the office of the Master of the camp & Marshal of the field, & not to the Captain, for if he should beate his souldiers, he should make himself hated & embale himself, & bring his souldiers either to become mutinous or abjects.

Note, that it is not sufficient only for a Captaine to haue ordained his companie discretely, & therein to haue great numbers of good men, which is to say, in warlike affaires valiant men, but aboue all things it is very necessary when he shall come to blowes & fight, he should aduenture & performe the same to his manifest aduantage, or else constrained therunto by pure necessity, although he ought to lie the last so much as he is able, obseruing this for a generall rule, not to fight either by chance, either for pleasure or for ambition, as many times we see done by rash & ambitious chieffes and Captaines.

Moreouer, he must worke in such sort, that his souldiers haue very good occasion & apt meanes to win the victorie, & that they be fresh & lusty, to the intent that in fighting they may ouercome: for without these and like aduertisements by tempting fortune, men for the most part both lose, and are ouerthrowne.

It is very conuenient he procure the hauing of an ample and autentike Patent of his Collonel, with as large words of fauour as may be, wherein must be declared at the instance & appointment of what Prince the expedition is made, & so with modestie and prudence he shall vse the auctorizy that is given him, but neuertheless there, as it behoues him so to doe.

It is not requisite that in all places he suffer his Ensigne to be displayed: the maner & doing wherof shewes force & auctorizy, the which many times is not to be vsed, neither in each place. When a man is inferior to others, he ought to vse great discretion & modesty, which euer falls out both to be commodious and commendable. And moreouer according to the order of Passa parole, of aduertisements from mouth to mouth, he ought euer to obserue a silent & assured plaine information to his whole band, wherby they may vpon the suddain alter aray, make alca, march slow or fast, close or in wide ranks, or prepare their peece, match and bullet for a suddain Alarm, inuasion, skirmish or defence.

A Captaine that must leaue a band, is to make his election and choise of his officers & souldiers, not only approued & sufficiently, but also vse such speedy march in his expedition & iourney, that he may ioyne his companie to the rest of the armie, at or before the appointed day and place.

When he may march by land with his companie, let him neuer haue desire to go by sea, hoping to spare cost & shorten time, for by becomming subiect to the indiscretion of the wind, either through long aboad, or some accident by shipwracke or tempestes, there hath risen many times great disturbance & ruine without remedie, since by this defect many good occasions and of great importance hath bin lost and made frustrate.

He ought neuer to take iourney in hand without a guide, the which he must procure to be giuen him by the chiefe that doth command him, to the intent he may alwaies remain excused & faultles from those errors, that by such defects may or do commonly arise, which diligence is not only particularly to be vsed, when any iourney of smal length is to be guided: but if any long iourney is to be made (not being able to do better) he must circumspectly haue him alwaies by his side, neither ought to haue him slip away from him or absent, since that euery smal error or going out of the way in a iourney & marching, doth displease souldiers & warlike persons, & yelds lesse reputation to the Captaine, who ought alwaies to march with them, & to provide & procure through his auctorizy all things necessarie, with the greatest fauour & aduantage possible. He ought alwaies to keepe his souldiers exercised, by often taking view & muster of them, marching sometimes along in ranks by 3. 5. 7. & 9. etc. in a rank: sometimes in training them in Kings, eases, dees, battailes, squadrons, turning one rank through an other, in leading them to skirmish, & in such sort as I haue set down in my second booke. practise them daily. And sometimes he must cause his souldiers to shoot volles of shot, sometimes all at once, sometimes by ranks, & sometimes mixed. The which volles vpon a signe or sound of drum or word of mouth by the Captaine must be accomplished with celeritie, & closely together & cunningly, & not out of disorder or by peeces, & great while one after another, but vpon their discharge, jointly together, without rumour, noise or tumult, they must all charge again, & vpon a signe giuen by the Captaine, giue a fresh volle etc.

Hee must likewise delight to see them well armed with all sortes of armes, euery one according to the weapon hee beares; and sometimes likewise exercise them in running, leaping, walking, throwing the barre, and ordinarilie cause them to be wakened in the morning betimes, charging the Drummes to strike the Diana through out all the quarter.

A Captaine may at all times accompanie his band with the sound of Drum & Fife, which must giue order to their continual March and directes all their other enterprizes, vnlesse to accompany prisoner, to entrench, make plain the way, to make & carie sagots, baskets, or gabions from the wood, & such like seruite and peasantly seruice, hardly digested of honozable souldiers.

Hee to the intent hee may be both loued and obeyed of his souldiers, must applie himselfe to be prouident and politique in pacifying discordes, & at such difference as shall arise amongst them, wherein if hee find any obstinate, so soone as hee hath perceiued his indeuor, and that thereby they will not agree and become friends, so soone as their pay is ended, hee ought to discharge them. In times past it hath bin vsed of notable Collonels to permit the combate, and cause them fight it out, therby to extinguish their obstination, to brydle their furie, and giue notable example to the rest: the which order although it hath bin tried to auaille verie much for their good government, yet it is not to be vsed amongst Christians, the generall Counsell hauing forbidden the same: vnlesse to feare the parties hee saie that the same shall be perfozmed of them to the vttermost, and at the ioyning in fight to cause them stay, and take other order of punishment, except they accoꝝd, and to discharge them.

A Captaine ought to vse all art and industrie to inuade, entomage, and ouerthrow the enemy, specially infidels: and aboue all things to be franke of minde, and to feare nothing but dishonnest fame. Likewise that hee purchase auctoritie amongst his souldiers by the meanes of vertue and valour, let him procure by practise and effectuall experience to be accompted a wise and a worthy valiant Captaine, rather then to beare the name of a simple, weake, and vndiscrete Collonel, for the name of a Captaine is a type and title of speciall honour.

Hee must likewise in respect of a certaine inward desire of emulation, not carie a base and abiect mind, but still aspiring with

with great subtiltie, by good inuention and industrie, of a firme and faithfull disposition, and neuer subiect to forgetfulnesse, to the intent he may retaine in memorie those things that be wel done, and all commendable enterprizes, the which do maruelous and incredibly delight and feede mens minds and dispositions.

A Captaine must euer take care that his whole charge be still furnished with men, armour, weapons and munitions, with all things needfull, and distributed at conuenient times.

He must suffer none through idlenesse to neglect his armour, weapons, and other furniture, whereby he shall grow vnready to seruice at neede, but giue his officers commandement circumspectly to looke to the same.

Souldiers should be prohibited from ouermuch libertie, neither to vse whorwhunting, drunkennes, common swearing, quarelling, feighting, cosining, or such like, but that speedie correction is to be vsed.

Prouision of victuals, armour and munition being made, it must discretely be vsed in due time by victuallers appointed, and to be distributed vnto the souldiers, and to see that the victuallers & other artificiers, lending vnto souldiers vpon their credite at neede, vntill their pay day, may be truely satisfied.

If any souldiers be taken prisoners, to be ransomed home in due time that his bands remaine not vnfurnished.

Duties of seruice are committed to the Captaine, wherein great discretion and seruice is to be vsed, as in a Conuoy, Canuado, Ambush, skirmish, approach, assault, retrait, surprize, passage of rivers, freights, sodaine fortifications, discoueries, &c. As in these and such like occurrences, it is necessarie to vse the aduise of expert souldiers, whose opinions are worthy to be obserued, gratifying and rewarding them according to the value of their counsels. Soliwise a Captaine must sometimes proue and circumspectly try by fained pretenses, affirming that he meanes to perfozme certain exploits, and will march to some place nothing pretending the same, to the intent to discouper those that be busie bodies, rash and vnsecreat in counsell, and such as presume without knowledge or experience: afterward revealing the same, may trie the truth and punish the offenders, as to his duetie and office is conuenient.

## The office of a Collonel.

A Valiant and worthy Collonel, after he hath a lawfull dispatch of his Prince, and hath obtained his patent and prest money, to conduct that number of souldiers his charge and expedition shall containe, with all convenient diligence, and according as he is appointed, he must make election of as many captaines as be needfull, distributing to euerie one 300. for a band, which number is of most conuenient quantitie, for by reducing companies to a lesse number, as in our time is vsed, specially amongst the Spaniards and Italions, and well followed by the French and our English, they may rather carrie the name of Lieutenants and centurions, then beare the title of Captaines. Besides a band being made of a small number, the treasurers consume much more money amongst the great stoe of officers, the which ought to be by al meanes possible auoyded of a polittike Generall, and of a prudent Prince, to auoyd extraordinarie expence and confusion, which doth easily arise amongst the multitude of officers.

He must be prouident to entertaine those that be old captaines, practised, and beare a good port, and that be loued and desired of the souldiers, whom he ought to accompanie and preferre with the greatest authoritie he can giue, with ample, sealed, and autentike Patents, thereby more speedily and more easily he may accomplish his affaires.

It is requisite he equally depart to euerie one, the quantitie of that prest money he hath receiued, to the intent the Captaine and the officers arise not to be burdened, taxed, and consumed by ordinarie and extraordinarie meanes, and other manifest wayes in spending about those affaires. And to the intent the souldiers may tast of the beneuolence of their Collonel, for by that meanes credite is sustained, and his traine augmented, a thing most necessarie to personages that supply so great a place. For it is requisite that men in the beginning be not discouraged for want of necessarie prouision, yea rather to lend of his owne (considering he is to be paid againe) then his souldiers should be brought to any extremite.

The distribution of the prest money ought to be preferred with

with great prudence, for afterwards at the bancke, the same otherwise may be retained, and subtraction made of all the whole money, either in the first pay or those that follow, more or lesse as it seemes expedient, principally for the ble and commoditie of the souldiers, considering (that according to the proverbe) A man can hardly at any time serue two masters, and therefore he must stand vpon this speciall point, to be more carefull not to doe any thing preiudiciall to the honorable exercise of Armes, then to please the couetous and insatiable humour of some Captaines, whom in effect it pleasures but little, in respect their greedie desire is neuer satisfied: Neuertheless it falls out to be a marvellous losse and hinderance to the enterpryse, specially to men of valour and souldiers, without whose aid a Collonel is but of smal force and value: and to conclude, money must alwayes be procured, dispersed, and spent with great discretion, order, and consideration, since the same is so necessarie to man, as it is called the sinewes of warres.

It is a thing most requisite that he carrie with him at the least, one Minister, a man of god life, who exemplarily attende about the care of Ecclesiasticall matters, wherein about al other things we ought thorowly to be staide and instructed.

He must likewise haue in his Regiment besides the ordinarie Surgeons, an excellent and tried Physitian, well prouided of all drugs and spiceries, and of other things necessarie to be ministered to those that be sicke.

His Lieutenant for his Regiment must be of a singular quantitie and excellent experience, who not onely must particularly gouerne his owne band and companie, but also with great prudence and pollicie take care and charge ouer all the people which are in the bands vnder his Collouell, wherein the Lieutenant must proceede according to my rules for the Lieutenant of a priuate band, and the notes in my second and third booke. His owne Alferus as Generall and superiour to the rest of the Ensigne bearers vnder his Collouell, must be guided and gouerned by a singular and substantiall souldier, a Gentleman of an ancient house, courteous, wise and endowd with good conditions.

The same order he ought likewise to obserue, in the elections

of his Cavaliers of S. Georges Squadre, of his Sergeants, of his Corporals, of his Drummers, and euerie other officer.

It is a thing most necessary and conuenient, as in my second booke, and the office of a Captaine I haue touched, That a Colonel should retaine in his regiment, and specially in his owne band about him, a number of wise and worthy souldiers, to be the Gentlemen of his Companie, Lance Spezzate, or serue for extraordinary Lieutenants, whom I in the memoire of the ancient valour of our nation, entitle by the name of the Cavaliers of S. Georges Squadre, whom the Collonel must not onely vse and entreat well with an aduantage in their pay, but also feast them, cherish them, and set them oftentimes by course at his owne table, and alwayes shew them a courteous countenance, with which shew of friendly courtisie, souldiers be incredibly fedde, and contrariwise maruellously displeas'd with the hautie lookes of proud disdain. For al those that make profession of this worthy art, are of great curiositie and courage, and therefore men of warre ought neuer (against right) be villanously handled, either in word, dede, or countenance.

He must create a Sergeant Maioz, that is a souldier of great experience, and that particularly is a professour of that office, to the end he know precisely what is to be preferred in euery practise: such a one as can yeelde thereof a perfect account and discourse, and that consequently can much better by dede then by word execute any enterprize. And for that in his office it is necessarie for him to varie and change purpose, with infinite aduertisements and considerations, as the shortnesse of time now and then requires, the discommoditie of the place and seat thereof doth inforce, the order of the enemies doth constrain, or according to his owne proper pollicie, or the prouident prudence of his Collonel: but for that this place doth not permit to speak particularly of euery point, I will passe ouer the same, and onely referre all to the prouidence of his long and approued experience, which of necessitie is required vnto him, which I further referre to my following discourse of the Sergeant Maioz generall.

He ought to make a Marshall of his lodgings, who must be his principall Furrier and Harbinger, that must attend with great diligence, to procure lodging for all, without pleasing any one

one particular person for any priuate commoditie whatsoever, but must equally distribute, and depart the quarters & lodgings according as neede requires: neither is it to be bozne withall, that he do make free any houses or lodgings, neither go about any such like gaine, a most dishonest and vnlawfull robbrie, which oftentimes doth cause great losse and discommoditie to men of warre, small reputation to their conductour, and great vexation and disturbance to the poore people, who for the most part are innocent. The Collonels harbinger hauing allotted out lodgings to euery band, he must prefer the particular distribution to the vnder harbingers.

A general Drummer ought likewise to be created and appointed, who may take charge and care ouer al the rest of the Drummers, whose office & custome amongst them is to conserue and keepe orders, to the intent they may be obeyed, and that euery one performe his duty appertaining to his office, as to strike the batterie in marching in battaile, or disseuered, to make generall bands and cries, to strike the Diana in the morning, and the Salue or Aue maria in the euening at y closing of the night, and in sounding the march, the call, the charge, the battell, the retreat, with such other like obseruations and necessarie things to be done.

He must procure to haue part of euery munition for his regiment, out of the principall and generall munition, as Corlets, Pikes, Halberds, Hargabuses with their furniture, match, lead, powder, of all sort of victual, and ech thing else as occasion and necessitie requires, which he must cause his Sergeant Maioz to distribute amongst his bands, that his souldiers be not exacted on in the prise. The like deuision he must cause him to make by money it selfe, but neuer more then that which rests as due to them, as manie verie maliciously haue accustomed to do, making merchandise thereof to the losse & ruine of their souldiers: towards whom they are bound continually to procure manifest commoditie & profite. The like is to be obserued in all other things necessary & conforable to this befoze said, without selling of furniture to them of excessive prise, for nothing is more dishonorable or more miserable, then to extort vpon souldiers.

It is verie requisite that he examine the election and choise, that

that euerie Capitaine hath made of his officers in euery band, and whether they thoroughly possesse or appoach verie nare to the perfite experience they ought to do, of whom and not otherwise he shall like and allow. Note that these aduertisements, make manifest apparence, and sets forth to the view of the world, the inward valour of the conductour and Collonel: for if he neglect these obseruations, the contrarie doth easily ensue.

I iudge it a thing not out of square but rather most expedient that the one halfe of the Caualliers of S. Georges Squadze should be Hargabushers on horseback, specially when warres be made in large and open countries, or else howsoeuer it be situate, for being men of valour, they may both on horsebacke and foote doe great seruice, as often hath bene tried by manifest experience in our time, specially in the late warres of Flanders, vnder my Collonel the Baron of Sheuerau, in seruice of Don Iohn of Austria, and the Prince of Parma, where I being of the number of the Gentlemen of his owne band, haue seene dayly excellent god seruice done by them, as well by discovering the enemies ambuscades, as to draw them into the danger of our footemen. And likewise in the speedie taking and keeping a passage of importance, in winning aduertisements and the watch word from the enemy, in taking prisoners, in breaking the way for free passage, in clearing and beating the hye wayes, and scowring them free from the enemy and fleaboters, in making roades, courses and incursions, in discovering the countrie and taking view thereof like to light horsemen, specially in the absence of the Cavallerie of the Campe. And therfore I conclude that they shall be found to be a knot and kind of necessarie souldiers, provided that they be practised, and aboue al full of valour and aspiring minds, & not to be common souldiers, taken at vnawares out of ordinarie bands of footemen, neither such as carrie a dull, base and abject mind or disposition.

If the Collonell had the authoritie to be able to keepe together a band with a Standard or Guidon, and a trumpet to them, would do singular god seruice, which neuerthelesse when seruice on foote did call them forth, might deliuer by their horses, Lances, & Hargabushes with firelocks vnto their seruants, kept and maintained for that purpose, & enter into ranke or battaile amongst the rest of the Caualliers Squadze, and so should the ordinarie

binarie and common custome of hauing horses amongst private souldiers be auoided, save such as are permitted and granted to some officers, as in my former discourses I haue alredie declared. The which obseruation shall bring to passe that the souldiers in marching and in other enterprizes shall go together, and be vnited about the Ensigne, which is a thing most conuenient and necessarie, and ought greatly to be shunned, for that horses by ouerthwart traueling are accustomed to deface the squares, and break the rankes of the footemens battailes, which truly is verie odious and of great disturbance and discommoditie: but that which I speake of this extraordinary band is to be vnderstood and taken, when there is no ordinarie bands of horsemen ioyned to a Collonels Regiment.

He ought to take vigilant care that the Gentlemen of his band and Caualliers of his Squadze, being continually about his person do diligently performe, that which they are appointed of him to do by commission or otherwise, and that they make faithfull and true relation to him of euerie particular thing, that he may be euer fully informed of all things, and chiefly of that which doth passe in the watch worthy & necessarie to be noted, as well by day as by night, since that by going the Round, which doth appertaine principally to these Caualliers, many things of moment & importance may verie well be obserued, being able to execute any of the inferiour offices, & both quickly conceiue and sensibly see any new accident.

The Collonell must most carefully with humble courtise court his capitaine generall, vse great respect towards him, obey him, & giue him faithfull counsell: and to the end he may performe this thoroughly well, he must neuer refuse toile or trauell, since that to take pain about matters of like importance, is agreeable and conuenient to honorable personages his equals, whereas easie delicacie & curiositie appertaines to women, or other effeminate persons, who esteeme more of belly cheere, gallant attire and riches, then of the precious prize of valour & vertue, and that prefer a fraile bodie before an immortal soule.

Some hold opinion that a Collonell hauing to allot out what number of pikes, short weapons, and shot is to be in euery band, that it is farre better to haue but one sort of weapons, so shall the Capitaine euer accompanie his owne souldiers, whereas

otherwise they being disseuered in a stand battaile, he must either lose the companie of his shot or pykes, the one of them being committed to a second, and the short weapons to a third, which doth nothing so much encourage the souldier, as to see his Captaine companion of his perils, and the contrarie no lesse dismaieeth him: but for that foughen fields chance seldome in our time, I cease to wade further therein, only aduertising that amongst the rest of his souldiers, the armed pikes must be gently vsed, shewing them a cherefull and good countenance, who must be chosen men, verie hardie and balliant.

He must procure that his officers diligently perfoyme his commissions, and that faithfully they make relation of euerie particular thing, that he may be enformed of all, & in specially that which happens in wards, as well in the day as in the night, for they going in circuit as appertaines vnto them, may well perceiue what chanceth of any great importance. So that by obseruing these aduertisements, the industrie of the Leader doth appeare, wheras not being wel looked vnto great ruine doth arise.

To conclude, when his Regiment is discharged, either at the end of the warres or otherwise, he ought to take care that he in any wise procure, that they may be conducted wholly togither, and after wards disband them in such a place, as from thence euerie souldier may easily and without feare transport himselfe into his owne countrie, and if it be possible, hauing his health, his armes, and his apparell entyre: for otherwise if souldiers be disseuered in far countries, they suffer great inconuenience, in hard & difficile passages, in victuals and lodgings, the which doth cause their destruction, the discredit and dishonour of their conductour, and is a great blot in the fame of our nation, as those that haue seene Holland & the Lowcountries can witnes: wherefore it is a thing to be reformed for the increase of our credite and old naturall valour.

The election, office and duetic of the foure Corporals of the field.

Great regard would be had to the choosing of these, as wel for their calling, yeares, and balliantnes, as otherwise for their experience, lenitie and wisdom.

Whereby these warlike affaires may be the readier & sooner executed, otherwise it may be prejudiciall to the whole armie.

These

These 4. be vnder the Sergeant Maior generall, to appoint, set order, and make battaile and battailes, and to guide euerie particular person therein, according to their degree and office, and as the necessitie of the same shall require, to instruct and reforme, whose commaundements all Captaines and souldiers with their officers must obey, but in march, approach, Canuado, skirmish, retraite, watch, ward, or what other seruice by them shall be commaunded, whose authoritie likewise is such, as if any resist, they shall by the Prouost Marshall be punished as Rebels, of what calling or degree soeuer they be.

Two of these are appointed to the placing and ordering of shot, and the other two for the embattelling of the Pikes and Halberdes, who according to their worthines if death happeneth, are to succede the Sergeant Maior.

The Office appertaining to the Sergeant Maior generall.

DEW order and politike proportion, by how much they be necessarie in all humane affaires, by so much more the weightie office of the Sergeant Maior generall is to be had in estimation, for vpon his charge & authoritie doth depend only the good ordering of all causes, but also the forme, fashion, and execution of the most principall matters, for the readie and expedient seruice of the armie. And likewise of ech other assemble that is made, through occasion of defence or offence, of what number of souldiers soeuer, the which if this worthy Officer should want, can neuer be brought to passe and perfoymed, in such requisite sort as is conuenient: Since that he is that person neutrall, who doth keepe together in accord the Captaines, other Officers and souldiers, manie times abused by their particular companie, charge, and offices, more then is honest or conuenient. And in effect it is he that holdes a iust and equal ballance amongst the souldiers of euerie in the Armie. Prouided alwaies that it be in those warlike affaires that are subiect to order, how to keepe and obserue the same, and such like matters, and not in those things that appertaine to iustice, and the rest of the office of the Marshal generall of the field, as I meane to touch in the discourse of his Office.

¶ 3

Therefore

Therefore this great Officer ought to haue certain sufficient and old trained souldiers about him to be his continuall aide, that is, sower Corporals which may be his consorts and coadiutors, and in absence succede him both in office and authority: So that the Sergeant Major by meanes of the authority given him by his Prince, and through that which of custome he doth carie by his office: It is necessarie he obserue diligent, artificiall, and readie meanes, not only to maintaine in the said authority, but requisitely to augment the same, in the minds & hartes of the Captaines, of the officers & souldiers contained vnder his charge and expedition, to the end that in those orders & fashions of squadrons & battailes, which he hath determined with himselfe to vse, or in those he is to execute by the commandement of his Captain general, he may haue such entire & ready obedience as is requisite, wout the which what great diligence he can vse, is not sufficient to make any affaires or enterprises come to good issue in this important office, the which might be proued by many examples passed, if we would examine them.

It is most necessarie for him in his office, to presuppose with himself, consider of, & foresee all chances & causes befoze the euent therof succede, & befoze hand to foresee & take order with others what is requisite to be executed, considering the time wherin he is to work, is for y<sup>e</sup> most part very short, since ordinarily it both fall in suddain rumors of Alarums, so that in this hastie occasion of breuitie it is conuenient he proceede expediently, orderly, and readily, not being dismayed of the enemies presence, for the most part of all his actions, are to be performed even in the face of the enimie: Therefore if he did not gouerne himselfe warily, politkely, & prouided with good consideration, and if he had not ordained befoze hand what is to be done, neuer any thing amongst so many things, which he ought to performe with perfection, would succede with happie felicitie, for particularly in that time that Alarum is given to the souldiers, vniuersally entire attention is not given vnto that which is commanded: for the eares of all are occupied, part with the rumor & noise, & part through the clashing and clattering of the armour & weapons they weare, & with other confusions that arise, but being of a quicke inuention he may suddainly perceiue and conceiue, the nature, situation, & order of the enemies aray, altering and disposing accordingly by his owne.

Besides, this it is very conuenient for him to know distinctly how many Collonels & private Captains there be in the army, & of what qualitic & kind their conduct & guiding is, and what grosse number of armed pikes & halberds he hath to command, how many light armed or disarmed, both of the one sort and the other: the number of the Musket & bargabuziers on foote, & the quantity of horsemen, how many lances, how many light horsemen, & how many Argoloteares, & what number of other souldiers, & of what valour or moment they are able to preuaile: to the end that he may afterwards order them about any exploit, these to make the front, these to be the backe, others for the wings, flanks & floues, others to empale the squadrons, others to environ the enimy, & others for the fit conuenient places to execute a slaughter, & such like, others to defend the bagage, artillarie, & munition, others to entertaine & skirmish with the enimie, & for the souldiers hope, others to guide and ascolt or conuoy, & others to performe such other like seruice. And for his better instruction must likewise accordingly haue a ROLL of all the bands, from the Lord high Marshal, with their difference of weapon, which hauing allwaies about him may reprehend the want, and informe the muster Master & Treasorer. He shall likewise take order with euery Collonel, Captain, & chieftain, that in the day vpon any Alarum, they conduct their bands into y<sup>e</sup> market or place appointed for y<sup>e</sup> main battail, nere wher the artillary or munition is kept, that they come not in a sond sort stragling or dispersed, or vpon heapes, as in disorder they are sometimes accustomed, but orderly & warily about y<sup>e</sup> ensigne, that they may make a forceable front & gallant resistance where occasion offers, & giue a valiant onset wher neede requires: for it hath bin oftentimes seene that this place of armes hath bin assaulted & possessed of the enimy, it being a comon custome, that the munition of the Artillary is shortly assaulted by the enimies, the more to disseuer, to break, to deceiue, & disperse the army with more assurance & ease, y<sup>e</sup> therby they may force the sort, or break in where y<sup>e</sup> munition is garded. When they be entred into the place of armes, euery band w<sup>th</sup> the ensigne must attend to follow the sergeant Major, & the Corporals in obedience & silence, & after euery particular company is placed together in y<sup>e</sup> order, appointed by y<sup>e</sup> Corporals & sergeant Major general: the main & real square battail of earth must be made,

made, and not of number of men, or of a few combatants and pikemen: to the intent the head and the backe may be of sufficient strength to overthrowe the enimie, by presenting a greater number of souldiers in one threde of a ranke, both to fight and giue the enimie the shocke: The which thing doth not fall out in many other battailes, that likewise doth embrace and occupie in euery respect lesse compasse of ground, both the one and the other aduertisement is very subanciall, & for the most part of greatest aduantage, for euery man of experence doth know how much it doth profit, so nere as is possible, to be planted & placed in one vnited order, and to take on hand to defend a small circuite of ground, as by this forme doth verie well ensue and succede.

He must set both in the one and the other of these places, that is to say, at the head and backe of the battaile, the onely choise souldiers and best armed men, which order he ought likewise to obserue in those which must impale the rest, the face, the backe and flankes of the battaile consisting of well armed Pikes, specially if the situation of the ground and cariages do want, as by reason is requisite and conuenient, and place the Ensignes being accompanied with good Halberds, & men of valour in their accustomed standing of the footmens rankes. He must make to his battaile two wings of Hargabuziers, the one lesse, and the other greater, as the situation of the ground wil beare or suffer, the which wings are to defend and flanke the maine square, even in the same sort, as curtaines or bulwarkes with their casamates, do flanke a fortresse.

It is verie necessarie for him to haue certaine souldiers, besides the battaile and wings in the front, vnder the name of the forlozue hope, and an other part that readily and couragiously being kept behind the battaile, may be imploied in diuers needefull enterprizes, without discovering or disseuering the wings, or any other bodie of battaile ordained to other effect, & flanking himselfe with these wings, hee may sometimes fight with great aduantage on all sides, although the flankes of the said battaile be weaker, & containe a lesse quantitie of souldiers then the head or the backe: and therfore with great iudgements these flankes ought to be placed towards the strongest part of the situation, & aided with the wings of Hargabuziers, and the Reregard;

Reregard, for that sometimes one of the flankes being forced to become the front, the said hargabuziers by good reason and very aduisedly, may retire & thrust themselues into the threde of the rankes of the Pikemen, from whence they may shoot and wound the enimie, and defend their owne partie. The forlozue hope in the front of the battaile, must be succoured with new supplies from behind, and if neede require from the wings, that the front of the armed men be neuer left naked and vncouered, till the battailes be so nere that they be ready to crosse their pikes, then must the other retire into the wings, or behind the battaile to the cariages.

To forme and set in order this battaile with facilitie, which in my opinion is the best founded, firme, profitable, and most expedient, and if necessitie did require, more apt to iourney then many other forme of battailes be: I therfore say it is conuenient for the Sergeant to haue a long practise in Militarie profession, or else very good Theoricke, or that which is better, both the one and the other together, for if a man do but only possesse practised experence, hee doth not alwaies direct and bring his enterprizes to perfection, but doth worke with more speede and facilitie, which is a thing verie necessarie and altogether requisite by Theorick only, matters be wrought with perfection, but much more coldly, slow, and with longer time: The which defects and imperfections ought to be fled of men that be of valour: As an accustomed saying, that practise, for that it is a thing more material, is said to be the bodie, and Theoricke the mind, for that the same looking into y<sup>e</sup> matter doth first dispose & set in order, and the other execute, whereby it folloves that the one & the other ioined together, doth make vs aptly to conceiue and readily to execute this office, and euery other enterprize, so that wee cannot desire any further direction.

And for that euery man ought to apply himselfe in all his actions to attaine to full perfection for the absolute performance therof, hee ought to isine practise with Theoricke, which is reading, specially in Algorithmie, Algebra, & the platfozmes of battailes, the which in forming the order of this square battaile doth instruct, that you must deuide the whole number, placing the souldiers which are to be bestowed in this battaile by 21. taking from the quotient y<sup>e</sup> roote of the quadrant number, placing it



it in some part a fide, then multiplying the said quadzant rote by 7. you shall have the number of souldiers, which doth enter by rankes, then multiplying the same rote by 3. you may find the number of the rankes, which being done, if you multiplie the number of that which amounteth by 21. & the product shall shew the number of those souldiers which are not to be placed in main battail, which may serue in many profitable vles, and thus this quadzant battaile may be formed.

Tartaglie Bresciano in his booke of Partiaall inuentions, giues rule to forme the same perfectly in other sort. In the which it is necessarie to make quadzate the number 49. that is to multiply it in it selfe, which will make 2401. & this 2401. he shall multiply by the number of souldiers he would put in battaile, & shall diuide the product by the number of 100. and of the product he shall after take the square rote, the which rote will be the number of souldiers which shall enter into rankes, & shall diuide with the said rote the quotient already mentioned, which ought to be put in battail, & that which shall arise is the number of the rankes and the surpluse which doth arise in this last quotient, are the souldiers which remaine out of the square, the which are otherwise to be employed. But to frame the square of men, there is nothing to be done, but to take the square rote from the number of souldiers, and the same rote will be the number of souldiers which must enter into rank, and the selfe same rote will be the number of the rankes, this being done he must force himselfe to maintaine and keepe them in due order and iust square.

To obserue good order, hauing made proclamation that euery one shall keepe his place, being assisted by the 4. Corporals and the Sergeant Maiors of the Regiments in their quarters: He must diligently ryde here and there about the Squadzons, vsing certain manifest & knowne signes, wherein order must be taken openly & not priuely, to the intent they may be credited & obeyed of these that know the manner of this obseruation: for by declaring the same secretly & priuately, it is vneastlie & very hardly executed of certain ambitious and ignozant persons, which are accustomed to make profession that they are not to be commanded more of this man then of that, and do replie in contraries, wheras they ought to employ themselues to nothing more then obedience, without hauing respect to any other particular profit

or commoditie.

He must take order and command expressly al Collonels, Captaines and Officers, that continually they remain firme, & keepe their appointed places, the which places ought to be such as be feared to be of greatest danger & importance, as the front, the backe, the flank, & the fléues, & wings of the Hargabuziers, the like wherof may be obserued in the other battailes, when it is necessary to forme more then one, as oftentimes it falls out.

Let him obserue diligently to procéde in all these respects, with a modest & low voice, not with rough words to souldiers, but with sweet & smooth speech, & if it be possible with signes and tokens rather then with words, for by that maner of procéding souldiers remain more attentiu, & better instructed, then with crying & calling, which for the most part procures disobedience, & cauleth contempt of auctorizy, & moreover in matters of importance procures smal effect. And so euery Captain hauing his place, some in the front, some in the rereward, some to lead shot in the winges, others to guide the forlorne hope, ech one must carefully, as I haue said, execute & obey the Sergeant Maiors commandement, whether it be by signe or by voice, by Drum or trumpet, or by any other manifest token & aduertisement.

These obseruations be of great force, wherewithall amongst other his god qualities, in nature & custome requisite for this person to possesse, it is most necessarie that he be well giuen to Religion, that he be charitable, courteous & louing towards the souldiers, & the exquisite example for their better instruction, which aboue all things must not be villanously entreated, neither otherwise despised, but as much as may be corrected with a gentle hand, and alwaies with lenitie fauored.

If in the night by reason of Alarums he be to set the armie in order, hee must before hand haue appointed the Captaines, that their lanternes, quarteres, torches or cressets be in a readines, vpon any suddaine to be light vp, the which they must doe: provided alwaies that it be necessarie and expedient, and that particularly it hath bin of purpose ordained and commanded, that then they guide behind them, euery band by themselues into the place of Armes, but the Hargabuziers of euery company disseuered from the Bikes and other weapons, which Pikemen shall gather within them, their Ensignes in

safetie, and the Hargabuziers shall march iust after them and before them, as shall be appointed or seeme most expedient. And to the intent the same may be more speedely performed, the sower Corporals, and Sergeant Maiors of the regiments, shall verie aduisedly go to the assigned places & quarters of the lodgings, for this respect if it be possible, that all the people may arise, may arme themselves, may ioine in one, & arriue at the same instant at the place of armes, where they are of this worthy Officer to be receiued, and put in squadre in the forme of a halfe Moone or cresstant, & within the compasse of the hornes of the said Moone, euery Alferus as he arriue, must compasse & plant himselfe in the forme of a crowne, one by one with their Enignes in their hands, & amongst them those that be armed with rondels & targets if there be any, as for a small competent number it is requisite ther should be (vnlesse those of p'ose which must lead & shot,) then behind them the armed with halberds, & after these that be light armed pikes, and about the vtmost compasse of the said circle, & in both the tippes & hornes of the moone the armed pikes are to be planted, and the Sergeants & Lieutenants must attend to apply themselves for the conseruation & keeping of the order of these last Kinges without: Now the rest of the Colonnels & Captaines, with the person of the Captain general, & the Caualliers of his owne squadre, and a great part of the lightes & Drums, must stand in the void place betwixt both the hornes before the Enignes, where reseruing the messages & ambassages of aduertisements that go and come in such cases, they may consult and determin vpon such things as are to be done. The entrance of this void place ought to be turned towards & strongest situation of the said ground, & if it be conuenient, and the ground wil permit, let it be garded with certain field peeces and shot. The hargabuziers in the self same time are to be disposed & placed by the Sergeant Maior, so far distant from the foresaid squadre, & in so many places & so many proportions, as the situation of the ground, parts and qualities doth require, being conformable to that present seruice, therby the better to flank, fortifie & assure the foresaid principal battail. And to euery troupe of hargabuziers hee shall appoint the other halfe and moity of the Officers, Drums & lightes, if it be conuenient, to the intent that in fight or otherwise in all causes they may readily worke and

performe

performe exploits, neither do I thinke it good that in these affaires of the night, Geometricall measures be necessarie, and much lesse Arithmetical numbers: but the carefull diligence of valiant and discrete officers, is most expedient and necessarie, who must euer frame themselves conformable, and be in these actions altogether obedient to the Sergeant Maior, particularly putting in execution his order and pleasure: The proportion of this foresaid Cresstant was vsed of Alexander Vitellus in the night vpon the toppe of a mountaine, against the mightie Lutheran League.

In the day time the armie rising and setting forward to march and standing in doubt of the enimie, the Sergeant Maior must forme the ordnance and battaile of the armed and disarmed Pikes, of the Halberds and other weapons, in such sort, that hauing to double the rankes to make them greater, the battaile may fall out in due proportion, that is to say, that the front and the backe way deuide equally the armed Corslets and Pikes, alwayes provided that the flankes be not left disarmed and void of Pikes, so shall he bring to passe that the short weapons that enclose the Enignes iust in the midst amongst them, keeping defended betwixt them and the armed Corslets and Pikes, as well on the front as on the backe, the disarmed Pikes, & which to make number and to fill by roome, ought not to be refused amongst a great number of s'otemen in the field, since it is verie hard for all men to arme themselves, they being armed onely with a breast plate and burganet, or with a coate of plate or iack & a scull, are good to turne on amongst shot. And as the quantitie & number of Pikes, principally together with other short weapons, is the verie strength & force of the armed s'otemen: So the musketeeres & hargabuziers, serue to no other end but to flank, to raise ruine & deface all defences, to make imbuscades, to skirmish diligently to execute such like enterprises: and finally to pursue & enimie, defending or expugning some strong place, fortresse, passage, or breach, or what other condition soeuer. When he hath put the ordnance and march in this foresaid forme and manner, & that he doth carry in mind the Theorick & Rules which before are mentioned, he may so ingrowe and double the rankes, specially when he aspects and stays for the enimie, that he may frame the square battaile of ground or of number a 10 of men,

3

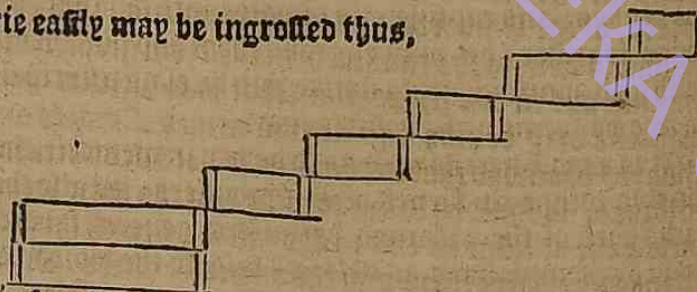
both

both the one and the other, without any difficultie.

He may likewise cause euerie particular Sergeant place all the Pikes armed and disarmed, with the other weapons they haue in charge, and also the Ensigne, in so many lines & rankes as the people of the other bands likewise armed by their Sergeant are formed and fashioned. Besides it would be very good for the Sergeant Maioz, first of all, aduisedly to consider with the Sergeants, how many lines or rankes they are to be by companie: provided alwayes that one band be like vnto another in quantitie of lines & rankes, that their proportion may answer and be correspondent. These bodies so ordained, are of many called maniples or scales, as thus.



which verie easily may be ingrossed thus,



And in this sort shal he cause one band to march behind another, being annexed and ioyned nere together, and that euery one of the be guided by an officer into a place & ground able to receiue them, causing the first company and maniple to march somewhat disseuered from the other, & to make space & stay, he may ordaine that the second coming forward it may be placed vpon his flanke: so in like sort shal the third to the second, the 4. to the 3. & the 5. to the 4. and so consequently continuing this order, he shal by & by forme a grosse square and gallant battell, that with aduantage may be able to contend with the enimie. And it is true & some haue affirmed, that the fewer number of maniples there be, the case is so much better, but in this case it is very hard to obserue the iust order of so many men by rank, & of such number of rankes as the perfect rules of Theorick doth assigne, by reason that many times all the companies and bands are not of equal number, neither are they all armed alike one to another.

Marching in this order he may cause all the Alferes of euery Regiment to march in ranke vnited together, without mixing them

themselues with others that pertain to other Collonels, or with other priuate captains, and when the maniple be doubled & the battel is complet & engrossed, euery Alferus may go to his owne band, and remain with the same, for the more satisfaction of his company and his greater fastie. And returning with the said order of maniples to march in long ordinance as befoze, euery Alferus shal turne amongst the other Alferus or Ensigne bearers where he remained first. The Hargabusters must march disseuered from the battaile, the one halfe in Wantgard, and the other half in reargard, or somewhat distant of, vpon the right hand, & vpon the left hand, as the way shal serue with most commoditie, or as shall be thought most necessarie, if suspect be had of the enimie, so that according as neede doth require, redoubling the rankes, and causing one to enter into another, or knit and ioyne together, he may engrosse them and put them in order with good aduisement, to flanke this foresaid principall battaile in as good forme as he possible may.

It is a most necessarie note to be had in memorie, that as well the two wings or floues of Hargabusters, as also the front or backe part of the ordained battaile or generall square, are alwayes recommended, as befoze I said, to the worthy Collonels and Captaines, and honorable officers and souldiers, to the intent they may alwayes giue remedie, by discourse consider, and by courage determine of all matters, making choise of the chiefest part in those affaires of importance, without attending or aspeeting for counsell, if in case such counsell be not present and ready at hand.

Neither is it to be misliked or out of course, but as I iudge a thing verie necessarie to send for Wantgard and Reargard, and on both sides somewhat farre off from the battaile, squadrons, tropes or hornes of Hargabusters out of the folowne hope: the which without moving the souldiers of the battaile, the ordained square and flankes may verie sufficiently performe all enterprises, discoveries, and do great seruice of marvellous importance and profite, and in effect may assure the way and passage to the squadrons that come behind or go befoze from surprises, to the Hargabusters that march out of danger or suspicion of the enimie, the Sergeant Maioz deuiding euery armes by themselves, must forme the accustomed ordinance, and marching with this, he may accept

accept the companies which arive, as they come, and send the Vargabusters of the front of this companie to the Wantgard of the Vargabusters of the foresaid formed ranks, and those of the backe to the reargard: the Ensignes to the place of the Ensignes and the forepart of the Pikes and Halberds to the front, and the hindermost part to the backe of this square battaile and ordinance: in the midst of the day when the Armie makes *Alas* to rest, in the morning when they dislodge, and at night when they encampe, let the Sergeant Maioz accompanied with the Marshall of the felde, range the armie into sundrie formes of battailes and squares, that ech one may be well acquainted with euerie sort of battaile, the which although part of them be not to march withall, and not in vse, yet for exercise sake, and for that sometimes they are found to be profitable, when they are diligently ordained and disposed, being conformable to the situation of the ground, and correspondent to that present enterprize, specially when they be contained and framed of a great number of people, I haue thought good in my figures hereunto annexed, to set downe some of old and some of newe inventions, hoping that some of them may satisfie our curious conceited Captaines. But to delate further of these foresaid particulars, the Sergeant Maioz must euerie day repaire to the Lord high marshal, or the Lieutenant generall, to receiue direction in what sort that day the armie is to march, whose pleasures knowne, he must, as said before, sort euerie kind of weapon by it selfe, and then dral them forth in maniples or files, in 3, 5, or 7, in a ranke, or more as occasion serues, and so to place euerie band that their Captaines may be with them to direct and animate them, which in these our dayes is almost impossible to be done, euerie smal band being deuided into severall weapons, so that he cannot in time of such generall seruice accompanie his owne band, which surely is repugnant to antique Discipline.

Some hold opinion, vnlesse the souldiers bee rawe and vntained men, that it is not good to aduenture the bzunt, in one maine square battaile, but rather in diuers squadrons and sundrie battillions, specially if by the continuance of many yeares seruice they be trained in such sort, as in the furie of the fight they can both march forward if they pzeuaile, or retyze vpon disadvantage, and yet maintaine perfectly their arapes: then

by

by no meanes the battaile is to be committed to one hazard of fortune, but imitating the Romaines ancient warlike discipline, to place themselues in thre or foure severall fronts, with conuenient spaces for the first to retire and vnite himselve with the second, & both these (if occasion neede) to serue with the 3. the shot having conuenient issues and lanes, continually during the fight, to discharge their peeces, which will make an incredible spoile of the enimie, so that vpon the charge of horsemen retyring within the squadrons, who toyning together may bend and crosse their pikes to receiue the shocke, and repulse them, vpon whose retyze, vnclousing their thowwfares, lanes, and galleries againe, the shot and musketeares may issue out vpon their backes, and either follow with the heat thore of their bullets, or be imployed vpon some other enterprizes: but these things cannot be accomplished without long abode in warres & 7. yeares seruice at the least of an armie in sundrie hazards of fights and battailes.

Therefore it is necessarie for the Sergeant Maioz, in time of rest when the enimie is absent, to cause the bands to assemble, and to put them in sundrie sorts of standing and marching battailes, to reduce them sometimes into small squadrons of 400. 500. 600. 700. 800. 900. 1000. in a battaile, more or lesse at his pleasure, and to cause these battailes to march forward swiftly or slowly, to sarrie, open, shut, close and disclose their squadrons, sometimes in sundrie battillions, reduce themselues vpon a soldaine into one maine square, and from that againe to haue passages & galleries for the shot through diuers places of the same, marching forward and backward according to the stroke of the drumme, to stay and retyze in perfite measure, with no lesse facility then Gentlemen dance their Measures by a noyse of vtolens, as hereafter enlath. When the army can perfite do this, then cause them sodainly to make any flacke or front, or turne entirely together, as if it were one bodie without breaking a ray, for it is a cunning point to make a squadre to march vpon one corner, maintaining his square forme. This and such like varietie in marching, brings the souldier to be verie readie, so that although he neuer saw the enimie in the face, yet he may be rather accounted a trained souldier, then he which hath bene 20. yeares in seruice, and in 20. battailes, if his skill be wanting

Z

in

in him, and writes the name of a raw souldier and Bisognia.

Note that there is no battaile apt to march but only the square battaile or the compend of squares, all others as the Lunule, the Triangle, the Pentagonall and the Hexagonall, the circular and ouall battailes, and others which easily may be inuented, neuer serue to any vse, but onely in fixed and immouable battailes, for presently and by and by in marching they disorder. Therefore great consideration is to be had betwixt a marching and standing battaile, which kinde of immouable battailes, though of themselues they are smally seruiciable, considering that in all encounters continuall motion is required, it being vnpossible to train men to that perfection, but that in marching they shall breake their aray, yet for exercise sake, and for some speciall seruice, it is most conuenient for the Sergeant Maior, oftentimes to plant his souldiers into those fashions of imbattelling, that appeare hereafter by figures: sodainely changing them from a triangle to a square, and from one shape to another, and thereby bying them into such perfection in these lesse necessarie and hard cunning toyes, that the other plaine seruiciable formes may seeme most plaine and easie.

He must befoze hand pmeditate, as partly I haue touched, and cast in his minde in what sort with most facilitie he may bying his men to order of battaile, committing to the peculiar Sergeant of euery band, the charge to draw the forth in sleeves and maniples, and so cause one to march close by by another till all the battailes be furnished, placing alwaies the Ensignes and drums in the middle ranks of the battaile.

There neede no such curious order to be vsed in placing the shot in any forme of battaile, but only to put them into certaine wings and flankes for the battailes, and if he thinke good, euery wing to be deuided into sundrie pettye tropes, of 25. 50. or 100. men a peere, and euery of these tropes to haue a leader, which is either Corporall, Sergeant, or Cauallier of Saint Georges squadre: so that to maintaine a skirmish, first one Corporall or leader marcheth forth and bringeth to the face of the enimie his trope, who presently discharging retyze themselues, and in his place another leader with his companie presents himselfe, continuing this order of supply, succouring, seconding, shadowing and encreasing the skirmish, continually maintaining the same

same without any intermission, either inuading, retyzing, or in any charge or enterpryse, a requisite obseruation for the forlorne hope. But the place being large, it shall be requisite to present oftentimes many of these tropes at once to the face of the enimie, who hauing deliuered their volée of shot, may if it be thought good, march about and giue place to those that shall supply their place, & so relieue & succour one another by turnes. And this kind of discharging and supplying, may in the open field be verie well maintained in the ring march, as the rufflers do, so that in wheeling about, the head shall be sure alwayes to haue charged befoze the taile haue discharged: and thus in a circular march the skirmish all day shall continue.

In plaine ground he shall neuer turne out any shot to the skirmish, without certaine sleeves of pikes to gard them vpon the retraite from the charge of hozles, and also tropes of short weapons, as swords and targets, Halberds or such like to backe them, if at any time they should come to the sword, or toyne pell mell with the enimie, and such were called of the Romaines *vindices*, but if euery shot had likewise at his backe a light leather or Venecian target, to vse with his sword when he saw occasion, they would doe great god seruice. Our English bowes for want of shot and for necessitie, to gall and disorder a trope of hozsmen, drawing nere to them, may serue to verie good purpose, but they must be garded with Pikes or shadowed with shot &c.

The Sergeant Maior must likewise haue knowledge in Arithmetike, Algebra, & of those proportions which are set out by M. Digges in his *Stratioticos*, whereby he may sodainely for all forme of battailes, resolue how many ranks, and how many in a ranke, to frame battailes, what number of Pikes, of Halberds, of Musket and Hargabuse shot is requisite, how manie maniples or sleeves euery battaile may be resolued into, how many ranks of pikes in the front, backe and flankes, how many ranks of Halberds to gard the Ensigne, vpon sight of the ground to iudge whether it be capable of such a multitude, and what forme of imbattelling may best agree vnto it, &c.

When he doth cause any squadron or battaile to turne his face or front, he must take order that the souldiers turne onely their bodie and face, but not their armes and weapons, whose points they

they ought to keepe in their hands, thereby to shunne the noyse that by linking and striking together they will make, and to avoid confusion, which oftentimes in such cases doth follow, since that in this sort more readily and with greater silence this act is executed, all the weapons remaine readie and fast in the souldiers hands: the which order makes a verie stately shew, and after brings great commoditie, when they must of new accommodate themselves, and make large in the flankes to march at large. Let al that which he determines and appoints to be done, be commanded and ordained from the backe of the rankes and Squadron, and not from the front or from any other place: for in marching more attentively, and with lesse occasion of tumult and turning, those things be better understood and are more capable which are spoken and proceede from behind the backe, then from the front and flankes, and with greater facilitie doth runne all along the rankes, and as they say, according to the word Passa Parola, advance the word.

The Sergeant Major, when his Squadrons arrive at any strait passage or bridge, or other narrow or difficile place that might disorder him, must cause them passe ranke by ranke one after another, so that the ranke being a little dissevered or broken, let him frame y<sup>e</sup> ranke a new, & so taking like order in every ranke, he shall immediatly forme behind the strait and bridge in the fashion of the first appointed Squadron: and in this sort may he proceed with good consideration, with as manie Squadrons & battalies as there be.

When he gives a volée of shot, or makes a Salva of Musket & Murgabusters, it is much better for him to begin at the head, then in any other place, that he may in due order ranke by ranke cause one to follow another, even to the backe and last ranke, so that how much more it yelds a gallant & readie grace, so much more makes it shew that those souldiers be practised, and argues the sufficiencie of him that guides them.

When nothing else of importance remains behind to be done, and that the forward and maine battaile hath stood in Squadrons to attend and receive the reregard, let him, the same being arrived, disband the battaile, having beforehand taken order with the Herbingers of the bands, that everie one guide the Alferus of his owne companie to his proper quarter.

An.

In disbanding the battaile let him guide the Ensignes into such a place of advantage in height, as from thence all the Squadron, consisting of the vanguard, battaile, and Rereward, may with commoditie behold and see them, to the intent that every souldier following his proper Ensigne, may go therewith to his lodging and appointed quarter.

The order which is accustomed to be observed in assaulting the enemy, as well in the day as in the night, I suppose it cannot expressly and particularly from point to point be declared, considering it must be conformable to the stratagemes of the Prince or Captain generall that governes: But I have oftentimes seen them put in practise, and resolutely wrought with Incamifados, with assured and secret routes, and with imbustades placed in a convenient and apt covert, such as groves to be of advantage to them that lies in ambush, who ought to attend the time, to assault silently and secretly, having his Sentinels, vedettes, countersignes and voices, such as be plaine, manifest & able to be understood, & not double, doubtfull and obscure: The which sometimes with great error and infinite losse, hath caused one thing to be taken for another. And this is to be done, to the end that with good order & in perfect sort each thing that is hurtfull to the enemy may be performed and put in practise.

Likewise the Sergeant Major by his office must take care to provide for the munition, principally all sortes of armes and armour, victuals, and other munition necessarie for his people: Likewise to distribute the same, to performe his office alwaies in the companie of the Master of the campe, or Marshall of the field, in planting the gard round about the campe, and ever to procure the watchword, with the which the said gards are to be governed, and after discharged, if such like causes still proceede in government in one selfe order: but because they varie according to the custome of him that governes principally, and sometimes as occasion doth best require, therefore I passe over the same with silence, and it is sufficient that at this time I have inferred, that such like actions and operations appertain to his office, to the intent he may alwaies remaine in a readines, to accomplish them gallantly, and according to the rules and observations, that shall be appointed him by his Prince.

He must take order that the bodies of the watch or Corpsde gard

Z.

gard

gard, be full boated with souldiers, according to the proportion of their capacitie, and that at the least there be as many for euery Corps de gard, as may commodiously supplie and maintain all the Sentinels, necessary to be made during the night, allotting at the least one hower of the clocke to euery Sentinel, and chiefly in the vnseasonable time of winter, an hower & a halfe, at such time as the season is mean betwixt two, & two howers at the most at any other time that is serene and hoat time of the Summer: for seeing alwaies the Corps de gard consist of so manie souldiers, that they may be able, together with the commodious situation of the ground, by the perfect proportion and placing of the Corps de gard, or by meanes of the trenches or other defences already made, they may in such sort sustaine the furie of any surprize at vnwares that the enimie is able to come or assault him withall.

Those Commissions of any importance that depend vpon his charge, and are of other Officers to be performed, ought to be committed to writing, whereof they must haue a copie, to the intent that they be made void of vsing contradictions, if in case they do not obey. If there should arise any error of moment, by this meanes he shall not be charged to faile in his dutie, or be occasion of such casualties.

He must take order with the Sergeants, with ech Alferus, with the Lieutenants, with all leaders, Captaines and Collonels, to the intent that al that which is to be done of them may be willingly executed, thereby with facilitie to shun the strife and emulation which oftentimes doth arise amongst them, and that euery one of them may enioy that which iustly appertains vnto him.

But when for any occasion he cannot in like causes orderly gouerne them, and that it shall not be good absolutely to command them, let him then permit that there may be lots cast amongst them, and this manner is to be vsed in case of verie extraordinary seruice: which sorte of proceeding doth not diminish or plucke away any of his authoritie, since he commits to chance, that which was in his choyle expressly to commaunde. Finally, it is requisite for a Sergeant Maio, to be so studious in theoric reading, practise and inuention, that through his industrie he may inuent new Artificiall formes of Battels, Squa-

drons

drons marching, & such thinges as appertayne to this important office. For no man without inuention, can be accounted excellent in his arte and profession.

Necessarie practises set out in proportions and figures, for Captaines, Collonels, and Sergeant Maiors to vse in Squadrons, battailes, and maine exploits in marching, skirmishing, retyring, rescewing and such like.

The curious conceits of sundrie ouerweening warriors and superficiall Captaines is such at these dayes, as nothing can please their fantasie but such as doth best agree to their own humours and inuentions, specially in ordering and imbattelling souldiers: wherein euen as the sundrie vse of diuers nations at this day do differ, so do the minds of many new leaders alter, change, embrace, despise, inuent and set downe manifold wayes to plant an armie in ranged battell in the felde, which I well considering, haue thought good in part to make collection out of diuers Authozs, Italian, Spanish, French, Latine and English, and part such as of my owne experience I haue scene put in practise of the Spaniards, and other warlike nations, vnder Don Iohn D'austria and the Prince of Parma, out of both which Callenders I haue chosen the greatest number that seeme any thing to the purpose, that thereby at leastwise the dainty tasted mouthes of our age may light vpon some apt for their digestion. But before I wade into great numbers, M. Stewards formes shall serue my turne to satisfie the priuate Captaines, Lieutenants of Regiments, and Collonels, as fit for their peculiar offices, and will first begin with a table of discouerie of all marches within the compasse of 1500. men.

A Table

A Table to discover numbers by hundreds, placed by 3. 5. 7. 9.  
 &c. in ranke and aray, assembled from one hundreth vnto a  
 1500. As thus, marching 3. in ranke, 34. ranke containe  
 102. men by which example you may plainly  
 perceiue the methode following, and  
 discover like numbers.

	Ranke.	Men.		Ranke.	Men.			
3. in Ranke.	34 } 67 } 100 }	is } 102 } 201 } 300 }	13. in ranke	8 } 16 } 25 } 31 } 39 } 45 } 54 } 62 } 69 } 78 } 85 } 92 } 100 }	104 } 208 } 299 } 404 } 507 } 702 } 806 } 997 } 1014 } 1105 } 1196 } 1230 } 1300 }			
						5. in ranke	20 } 40 } 60 } 80 } 100 }	is } 100 } 200 } 300 } 400 } 500 }
9. in ranke.	11 } 22 } 33 } 45 } 56 } 67 } 78 } 89 } 100 }	is } 99 } 198 } 296 } 405 } 504 } 603 } 702 } 801 } 900 }						
			11. in ranke.	9 } 18 } 27 } 37 } 46 } 56 } 64 } 74 } 81 } 91 } 100 }	is } 99 } 198 } 297 } 406 } 506 } 616 } 715 } 820 } 897 } 1017 } 1100 }			

## The art of Warre. 177

An order to imbattell 600. men at the sodaine  
 against horsemen and footemen.

It is appointed vnto the Lieutenant of a Regiment, or vnto  
 two or three Captaines to bring 600. men to conuey, charge, or  
 doe exploits, as the commandement of the higher officers shall  
 appoint them. The Leader or Captaines aduertised of straites,  
 passages, and situations of the countries: also on what part the  
 enemies be most like to assault them, must giue order vnto your  
 officers to place 13. in front, as here is set downe by propoztion  
 of figure, your Ensigne in the midst with the halberds, your shot  
 placed in the wings as appeareth. At such times as the enemies  
 shall assault you, ioyne both your bands & become one strength  
 as the ground doth serue. This order is herie necessarrie to doe  
 many exploits.



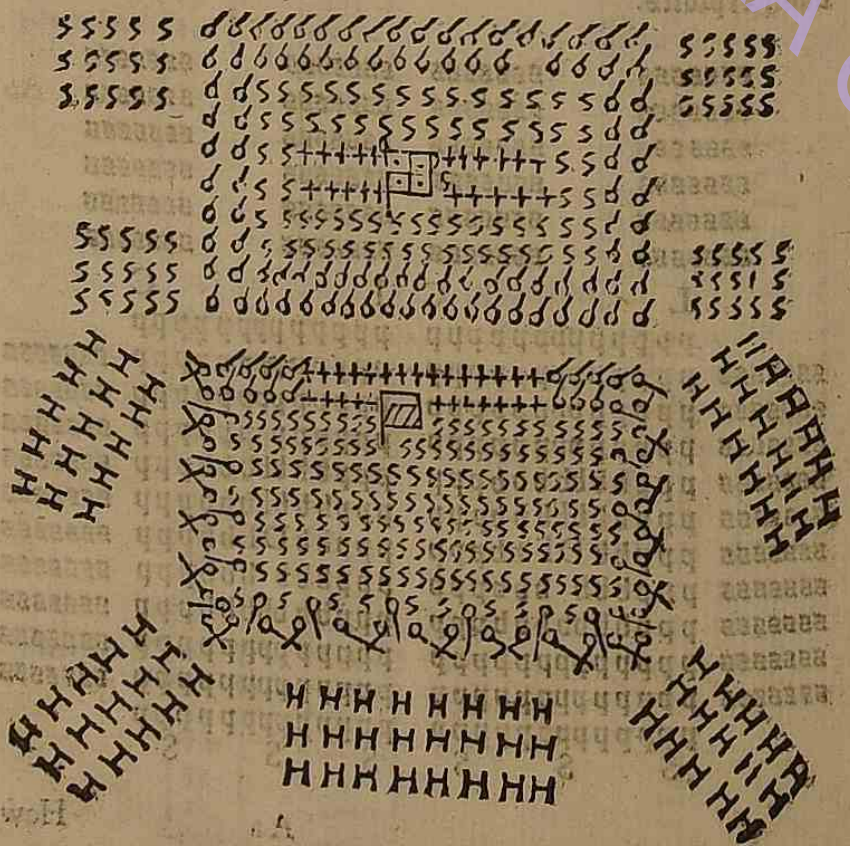
As

How



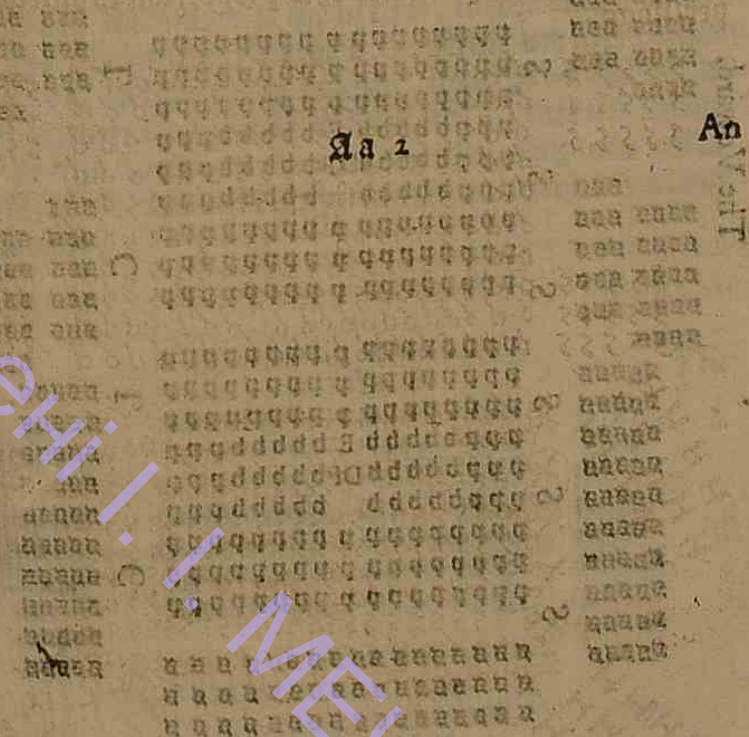
How the like number may be brought into the manner

Sometimes marching by 10. in rank, upon the sight of the enemies, divide into two parts and ioyne their broad sides divided together, & become in one strength, which being thus placed, is in length 24. & in breadth 10. Against horsemen they must pitch their pikes on the ground, and cross them, against footemen beare above hand. They must stand close together, and not differ to follow or tie, lest their disorders make place for the enemies to enter, as by this proportion doth appere. Sometimes for the safety of your shot you must receive them within the gard of your pikes. This H signifieth horsemen galloping the felde to break upon you, where they may best enter & most easily, as by the void space appeareth, the overplus of your shot to be placed in 4. wings without y battel. This proportion to disceur is verie perillous.



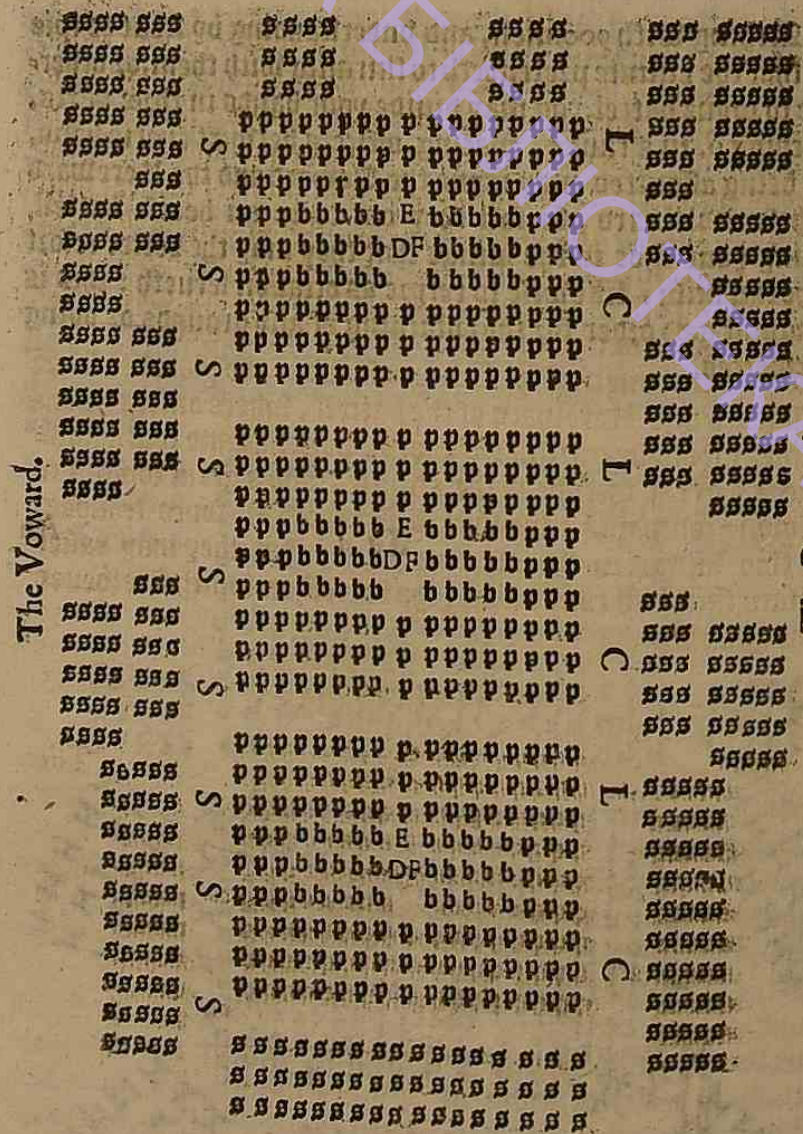
How to imbattell 900. souldiers at the sodaine.

Marching with 900. men, and understanding by scout or spie that the enimie pretendeth to skirmish with them, or otherwise to ioyne battel, you may divide your bands in three parts, marching 9. in a ranke, placing officers betwixt euerie band, that being assaulted may ioyne the Toward and the Hereward to the middleward, so fall they out to be an hearse battell, placing your shot in the wings that they may the better resort to the skirmish, like wise to retyre as occasion serueth: this is a singular good order for the obtaining of any grounds or doing of exploitcs.



113  
101

An order how to imbattell 900. men  
at the sodaine.



An.

An order to imbattell the like number in  
Quadrant proportion.

**W**hen battels are to be made, if the Sergeant Major should chance to be absent, give commandement unto the Sergeants of the bands to bring their companies severall, and then ioine your bands and sort weapons the brode sides together, as your number serves, your Captaines, drums and fifes, with your Ensigne placed in the midst of the execution, as well for the sattie of the same, as for the comfosting of the souldiers: neuerthelesse, such order is taken, that Lieutenants and Setgeants of bands with other serviceable Gentlemen of S. Georges Squadre, be placed to leade the Voward and Rereward of the battell, where onsets be uncertaine, whose beautifull Armour, pollitike and couragious charge is a great terrour to the enimie, and a great comfost to their owne companie: the Hot to be placed in foure troupes, with two wings in the Rereward, for that they may easie maintain skirmish round about the battell, on which side soever they be assaulted.

A a 3

The

113  
BOP



НАУКОВА БІБЛІОТЕКА

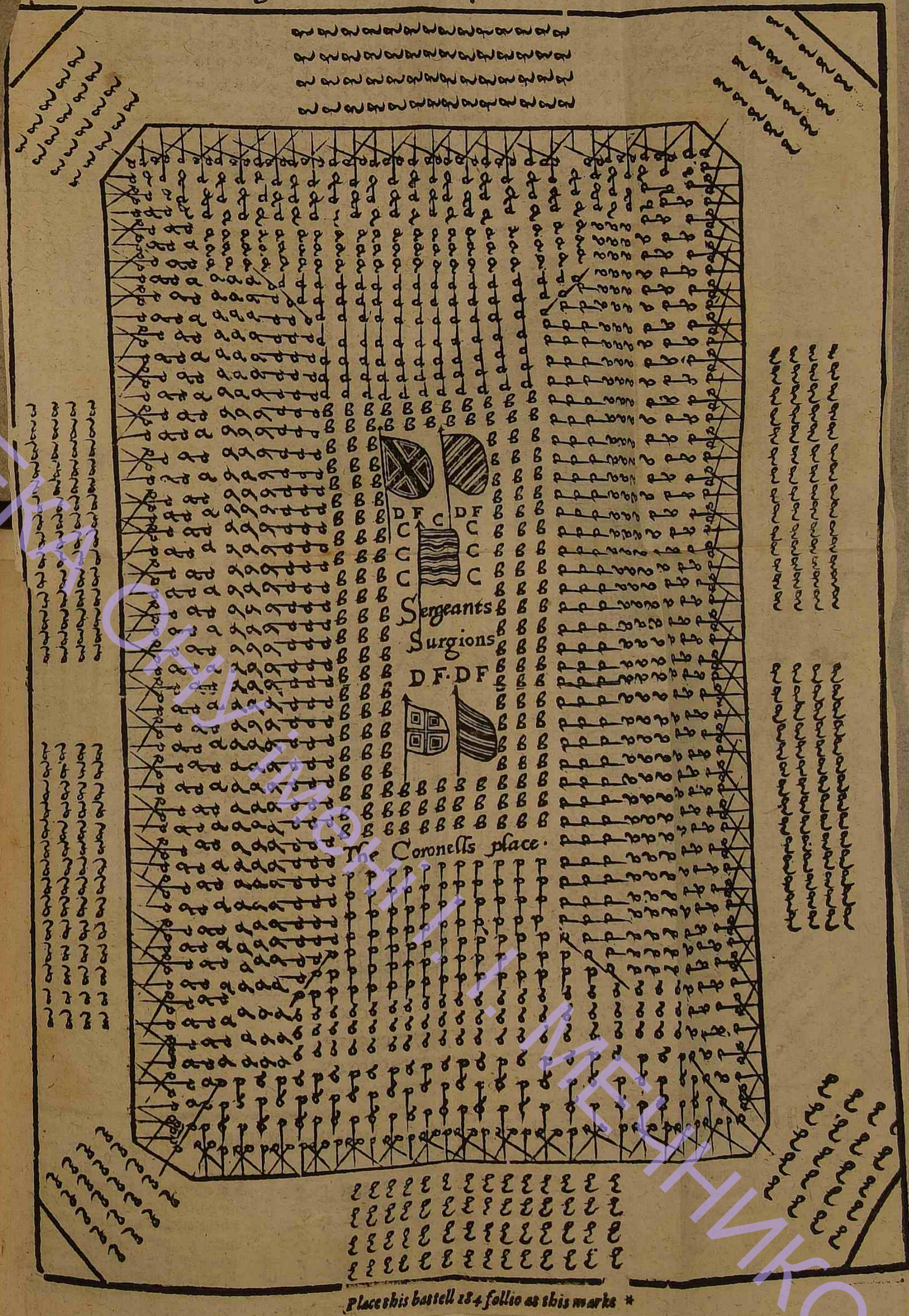
184 The art of Warre.

This wayes they may march wholly together, or retyze any wayes to service needful, ready with their shot to encounter the enimie any wayes in skirmish, either wing rescuing other, as made shall require. And although the Sergeants maior appointeth order for the same, yet the Sergeants of every band having experience, onely ruleth and giveth order to their owne charge, and appoint and place such in the fronts, Kereward and wings, as to them seeme most convenient.

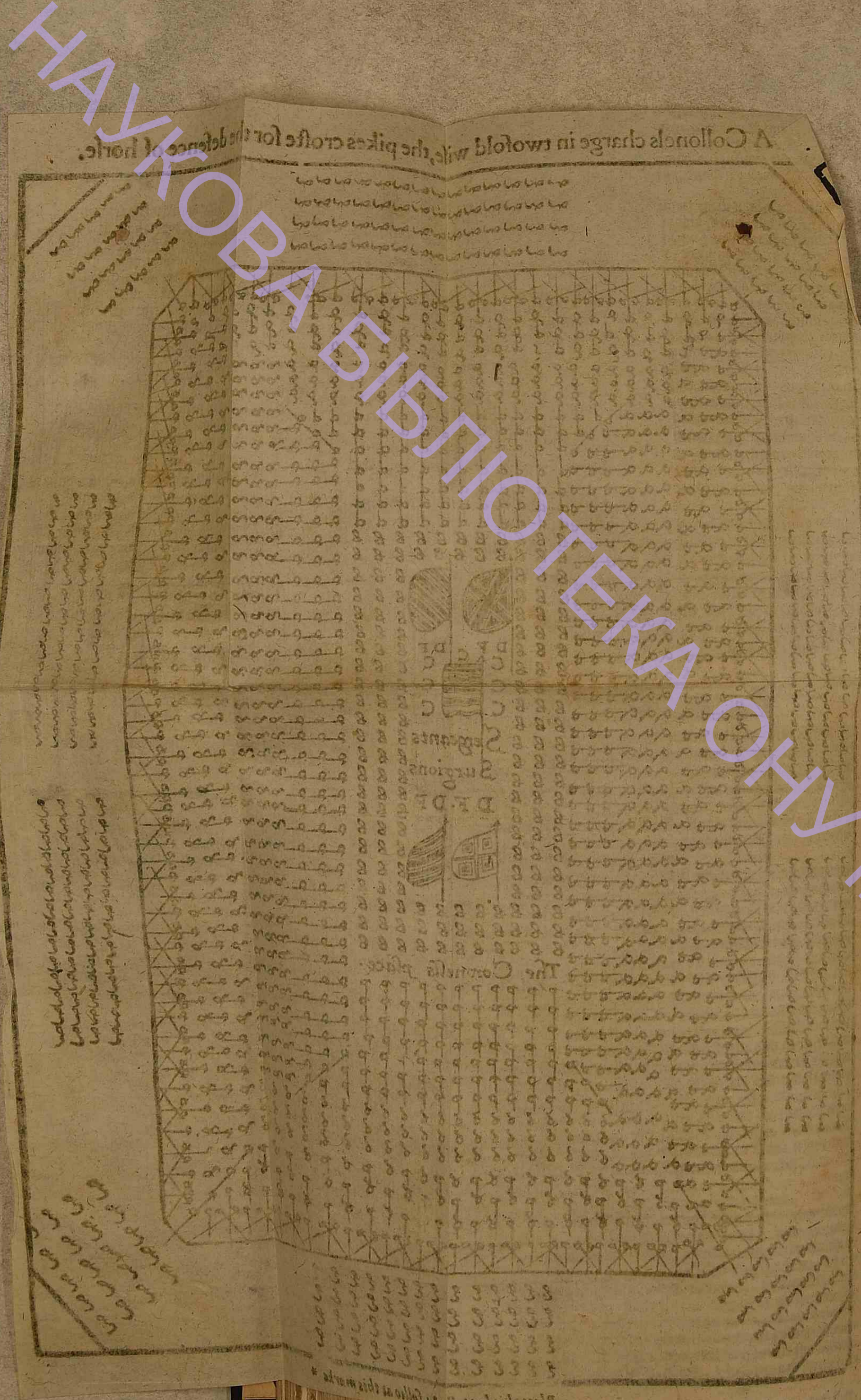
This proportion is after the Aomaine manner of imbattelling, much like unto the order of the Romaines: who divided their Legions into divers Cohorts, to this intent, that when the fronts were wearied, the Painward and Kereward succeeded, which the late experience of the Frenchmen hath tried, that the deviding of the battell into many bands, so that they have pikes sufficient to impale the Halberds or Bills, and to surerie Band their number of shot and Hoyle, is moze availeable then any battell being made of a whole bodie, or as the Greeks tearme it, a Phalange: for they are to be drawne out in length or breadth as the ground or occasion serveth, to charge and encounter the enimie placed in one battell, vpon every quarter to their detrimment, and overthrowing of any so placed, being of sufficient strength for defence of hoyle: and though the first or second, or third should be overthrowne, yet he rest keeping their order are to succede. Whereas the battell being one, after the fronts be overthrowne, the Kereward is readie to run, the which being disordered, can hardly recover to place them in order againe.

An order to imbattell a Collonels charge. Collonels and Chieftaines, who oftentimes according to their experience and worthinesse of service, have the charge and leading of 1500. men moze or lesse, to whom is committed divers sundrie exploits and points of service in the fields, whereas of they discric any multitude of hoylemen, pretending for to charge them, and to environ your battell, having no waggon, boough, or pale of carriages, water, hedge, ditch, or other succoure, but only y strength of their manual weapons, & pollicy of defence vpon the sight of the enimies, must cast in this sort the Painward & Kereward to become one strength, & to serue and laste close together,

A Collonels charge in twofold wise, the pikes croste for the defence of hoyle.



Place this battell 184 folio as this marks \*



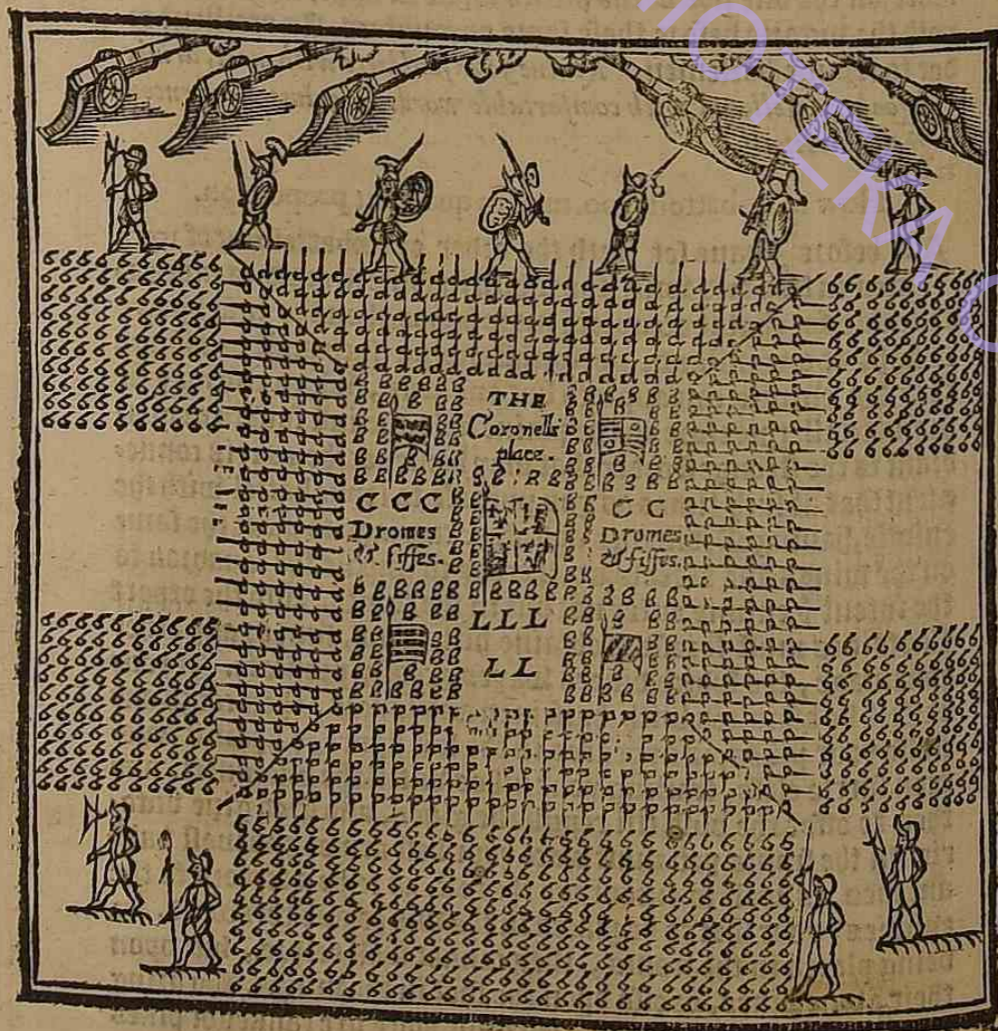
The art of Warre.

together, to couch, to crosse and defend, as by this order may appere. The three utmost rankes must consist of faire armed and skilfull Gentlemen, and Caualliers and others, pitching their pikes on the ground, couching & crossing them, the two rankes next giving the push at the length of the pikes, the shot placed within the pikes for safegard, stand readie to shote & charge fill in their places. This order to encounter with footemen, if it be possible, will recouer the aduantage of wind, hil, and sun, in good order, on the one side of the hill, to ioyne in fight, where God giueth the victorie before these same encounters. An excellent order to repulse horsemen. *Reuiue your souldiers with meat, drinke, and good counsell, and with comfortable words, to animate and encourage them withall.*

How to imbattell 1500. men in quadrant proportion.

As before I haue set forth the order of imbattelling of 1500. men in two fold wise, the which in some ground is much attainable, for that it occupieth more hands then the iust square in fight at one instant, notwithstanding such must be assured that the enimie can approach but one way, which else may be preiudiciall, therefore in the plaine field, the iust square or quadrant is the strongest order that may be: neuertheles it is conuenient that at such times as you purpose to ioyne battel with the enimie, hauing Ordnance and other carriage, to place the same on the wings and hereward, thereby to impale the squadron to the intent the enimie enter not but in the fronts. Also the expert Captaines must soreserue to obtaine hill, wind, sun, or any other aduantage, the which diuers wayes greatly profiteth. If your battell be assaulted with horsemen and lances, then couch and crosse your pikes, as appears in the last figure, & against footemen sarrie close, trailing your pikes until the encounter, and then to offer the push till repulse be giuen, and God giue victorie. In the fronts you must place your best armed and most balliant men, as well to encourage the rest, as to be a terrour to the enimies, your shot to be placed in the wings and hereward, for being placed in the fronts, they cannot well retyre, but vpon their owne pikes, or else vpon the shot in the wings. To bring 1500. men to this proportion, you must place sixe rankes of pikes 29. in ranke eueris wayes, which comes to 500, and 12. the shot to be

be placed in 4. troupes in the wings 10. in ranke, which is 400. And 300. ten in ranke, and 29. in bredth in the Rearward, the which are to succeed y<sup>e</sup> other troupes after they haue discharged, the 50. shot and 48. pikes are to be placed about the Artillarie, or otherwise at the discretion of the Collonell, the Captaines and Lieutenants with the Sergeants to be placed about the battell, to giue order as may best p<sup>r</sup>euail: The Chieftaine & Collonell to be placed within the battell, as appeareth in this figure.



The

The Characters to be vsed in proportions of greater Squadrons.

But to touch more at large greater numbers, both how they are ranged and battelled, wherein the Sergeant Maio<sup>r</sup> generall of an armie is called to vse his office, I do here according to my promise set downe sundrie proportions of diuers kinds, for the better vnderstanding whereof, it is requisite to carrie in minde the signification of these Characters.

These Characters	} Signific	S	Shot.
		o or this P	Pikes.
		+ or this H	Halberds.
		E	Ensignes.
		□	Launces.
		△	Light horsemen.
*	Argoletteares.		

A Quadrant or twofold battell of 2000. men.

The form of this battell following which represents a quadrat, hath bene oft vsed as very profitable of many Italians, well experienced & of great authoritie in the field: it is as it doth app<sup>r</sup>eare, flanked & enuironed with two great bodies or skues of Bargabusters, the which containe in number for ech flank 380. men, & in the Toward 100. and in the Rearward 140. which shot are to be carried about the battell very commodiously for seruice, and as they shall seme otherwise to be imployed by y<sup>e</sup> Sergeant Maio<sup>r</sup>. In the bodie of the battell are 800. pikes, 200. Halberds or Bils, and ten Ensignes, hauing to euery Ensigne 200. men, y<sup>e</sup> which to be brought to this forme, you must place 45. in rank for the bredth, and 22. in ranke for the length. The Captaines, Lieutenants and Sergeants, as appeareth by this figure in the heart of y<sup>e</sup> battell, & although this manner or forme giueth scope to moue which way they list, yet I hold it best not to suffer the to stir much: and y<sup>e</sup> litle mouing which is to be granted to them, must not be ouer hastie but in pace, soe, sober & well measured, vnlesse he hath to set againe the like battell of the enimie, for then the last rankes must be somewhat quicker in stirring. And to bring tenne thousand or twentie thousand to this order readily, they must in setting forward, march with maniples, well

НАУКОВА БИБЛІОТЕКА

The art of Warre.

well seuered and deuided, hauing a Sergeant, Lieutenant or Cavallier at the head and backe, the better to discerne them one from another. This manner, as I haue alreadye touched, is verie easie: So that placing them in length doubling their ranks, it brings them likewise to a verie fozmall order of battell, as I haue sufficiently touched befozehand.

A Battell in forme of a crosse, verie necessarie to be vsed, as well in the night as by day, because all the weapons are deuided by themselues.

This battell following in fozme of a full Crosse, consisteth of 10. Ensignes, euerie Ensigne hauing vnder it two hundzeth souldiers, so that the whole number cotaineth 2000. me. It hath 4. fronts or faces, whereof euerie one is accompanied with hargabusters, which may in time of necessitie be covered & defended by the armed pikes, so y the fozmest rankes be moued fozwards all alongst the flankes & sides of the Hot. This fozme hath bene vbled of Spaniards and Italians. It is a gallant battell, and of fozce sufficient to resist the enimie in open fields, although they should set vpon you at vnwares, & besides superioz both against horsemen and footemen, the hargabusters are 1000. the which are the halfe of the number. These hargabusters being deuided into 4. parts, must be in euerie flanke 200. placing 14. in ranke euery way, the halberds and Ensignes placed in the midst of y crosse, are 200. and the whole number of pikes are 800. the which are to be placed on euerie quarter of the halberds 200. placing 14. euery way, which make a iust quadzant of people, so that there remaine to be placed by the Sergeant maioz 16. pikes, 4. halberds and 200. Hot. This rule may serue in propoztion foz any number being verie excellent foz the night, because ech weapon being deuided by themselues, may be readie at the sodaine foz any service, either to giue battell, or foz defence of the Campe, the horsemen and the field peeces to be placed as shall seme best by the Chieftaines or the Sergeant Maioz.

\*  
\*\*

The bodie of a battell to be made in the night.

The propoztion of this Cressant or Dvone, is very conuenient and fit to be executed in the night, there being a round ring drawn

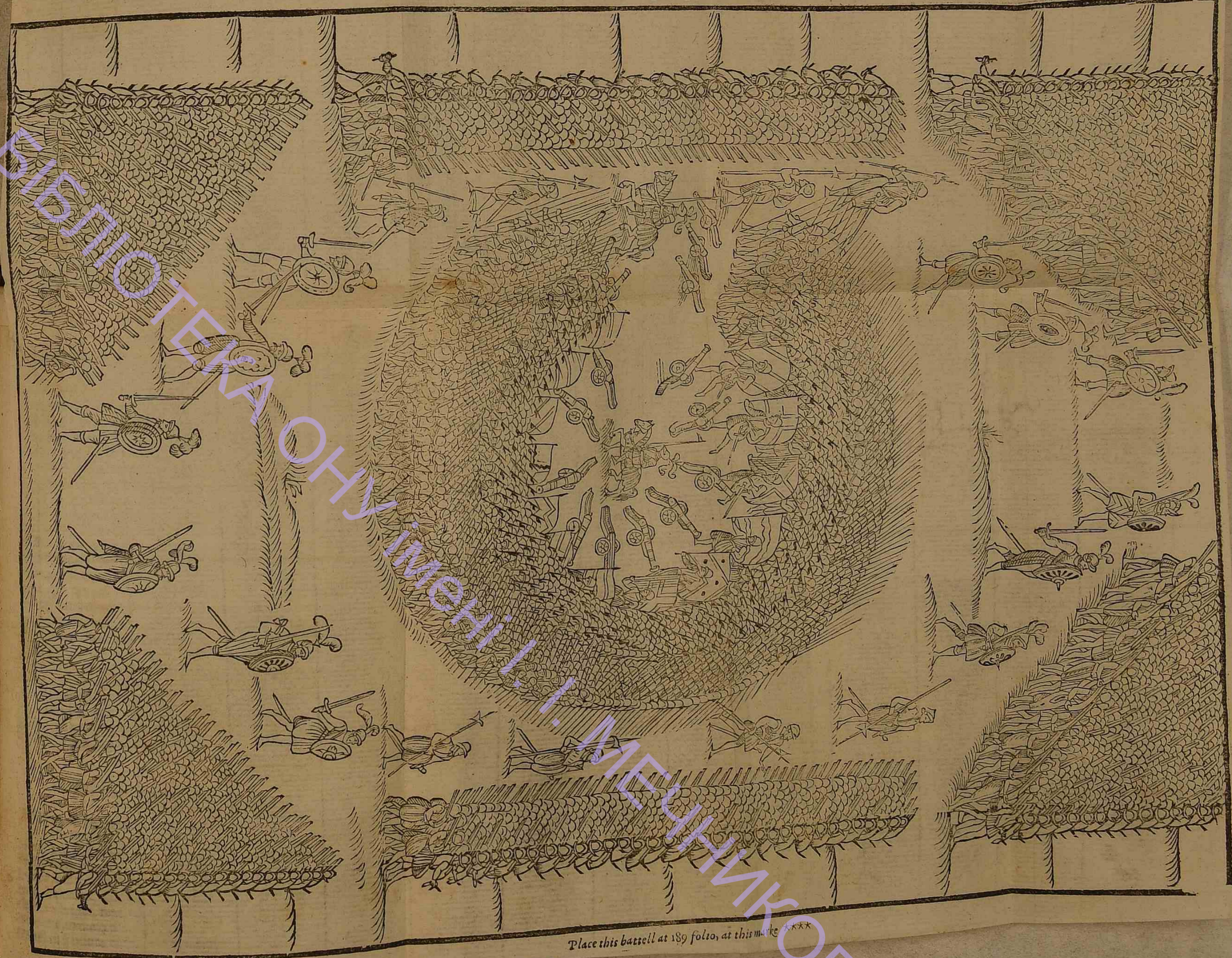
The Battell called a Crosse, verie excellent both for night and daie.



Place this battell at 188 folio at this marke \*\*\*

HAYKOBA

The Battell in forme of a Moone, being of great force for the night.



188

well se  
Cavalli  
from at  
rie east  
if bying  
haue su

A Bat  
w

This  
10. C  
souldier  
4. fronts  
gabasser  
by the ar  
all along  
bled of S  
foyce sust  
shoulde  
hoysmen  
the halfe  
4. parts, n  
way, the  
are 200, at  
be placed  
way, wh  
maine to b  
and 200, s  
ber being  
ing deude  
seruice, ei  
hoysmen  
the Chiefta

Th  
The prop  
and fit to

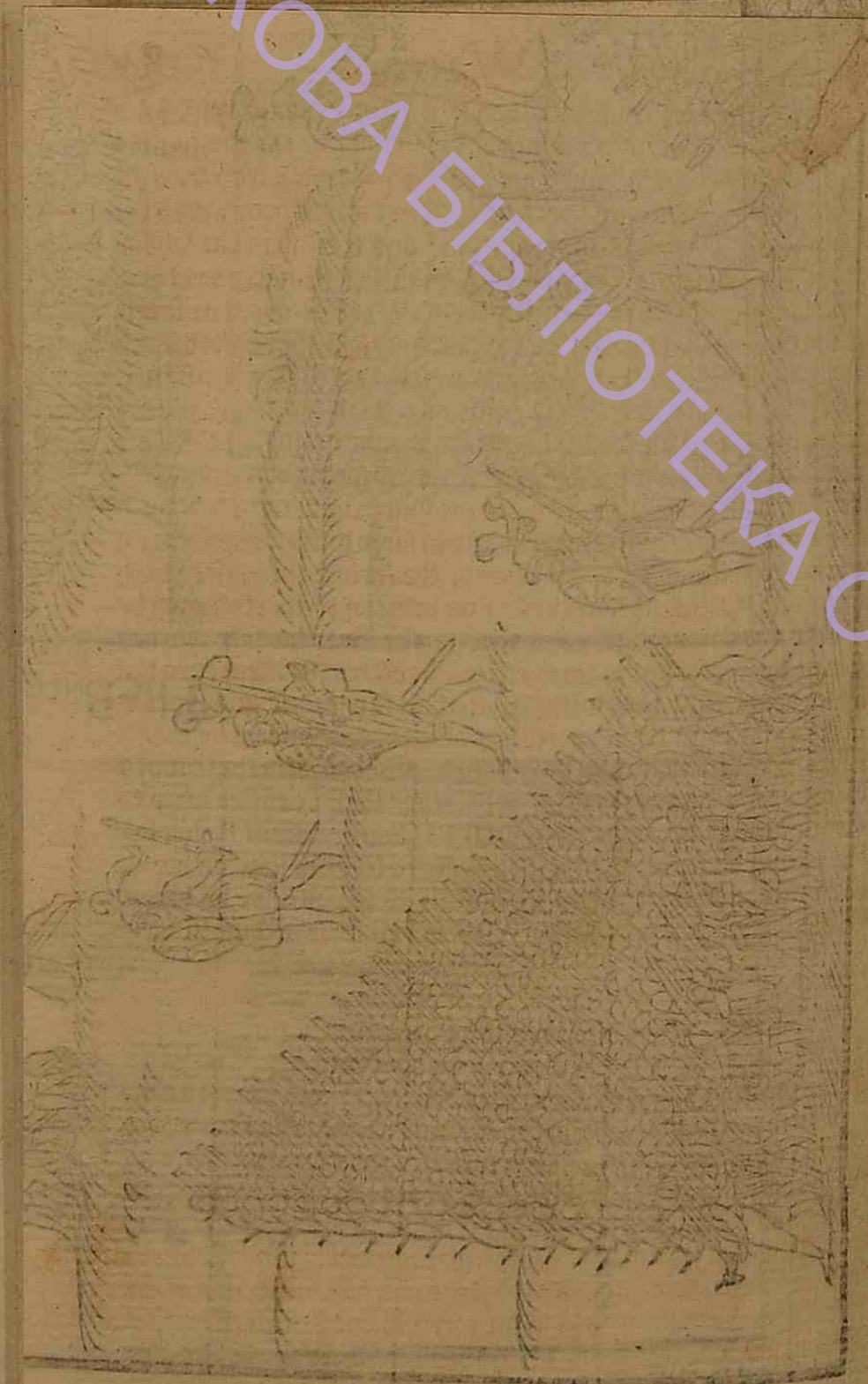
Place this battell at 189 folio, at this m<sup>o</sup> the \*\*\*\*

231 in Holland side 2007

MECHNIKROBA



НАУКОВА БІБЛІОТЕКА ОНУ



ИЗ  
ВОР

## The art of Warre.

drawne with a cord and a stake, so that the Sergeant Maioz according to my description in his office, may place the companies that come to him, and from hand to hand part them into severall companies, according to this proportion: for this forme doth require that it be done with expedition, and it is no great labour to deuide y<sup>e</sup> weapons without confusion, either to march or otherwise to vse themselves severally from the rest, in great or small companies as shal be needful: for that euerie weapon doth stand at his owne defence by it selfe, the general artillerie, Ensignes & short weapons being safely enuironed with the armed pikes, which may vpon the sodain by the Sergeant maioz, or the Corporals of the fielde, be brought to any other forme of battell. Also the Sergeant generall may place the Hargabusters in so manie companies, and so many formes, and so farre distant one from another, as the situation of the place or the seruice the present doth require, to the intent that the maine bodie of the battell may be flanked and defended. But for that I haue more largely touched this in the Sergeant maioz's office, I referre the Reader to the same: aduertising him withall, that all Squadrons and battels in the night, must haue euerie sort of weapons seueral by themselves, whereby confusion may both be auoided, and the troupes of souldiers remaine readie, when they shall be called forth to execute any seruice, what necessitie or sodaine assault soeuer befall. Provided alwayes that good watch & scout be kept on horse backe and on foote, as neere the enimie as is possible, by whose aduertisements you may know what is best to be accomplished.

\*\*\*

### The order of imbattelling before the fight.

The Oracion being made by the Generall, and prayers kni- shed to the immortal God, it is requisite that thou haue care to bring forth thy army to y<sup>e</sup> field with bright & shining armour, which easily may be done, by giuing charge in time to the Captaines, and so to the officers, that their burgonets, corlets, calceuers, halberds, swords, & euerie other piece of armour be made cleane & bright, sozasmuch as the cleannes and brightnes of the weapons, maketh the armie seeme terrible, and putteth feare & frauel in y<sup>e</sup> minds of the enimies. Then cal forth thy bands, the

B b 3

which

Which being set in araic, the Generall being expert, having scene the preparation of the enemies, giveth in charge to the Sergeant maior and the principall Corporalles to accommodate and ordaine his Souldiers in battaile according to the armie, the men, and the manners of them. And if the enimie bee more puissant of Horsmen: thou having the commoditie, chole the straight and difficult places, or at the foote of mountaines and where the horse cannot easilie serue. If in footemen he exceedeth, then it is requisite to get the hilles and places of advantage, as the Sunne and winde, &c. and that with diligence to chole such fit places, which either be neare Rokes or Riues: and about all things, where thou maist put in araic thy battailes, and by the qualitie of thy place be able to let the enemies, that they neither compasse thee about nor inclose thee, the which requires not onely the counsaile and prudence of a wise Captaine, but the counsaile of the most expert in the Campe: because oftentimes an Armie hapneth vpon such places. And notwithstanding the Captaine is ignozant how to chole such situation of ground as is best for him, but of those that are present it is good to chole the best, and to foresee which may be most profitable, is surely a signe of a wise Captaine: Caius Sulpitius, to feare his enemies got a great manie of Oxes and other beasts vnprofitable for the warres, causing a great number of sackes to be gotten, which were so ordered vpon the backes of the beasts as they seemed men at armes, giuing in charge whiles hee was a fighting they should appeare vpon a hill, whereby grew his victorie against the Frenchmen. The Spaniards to ouercome Amilcar, set in the fronts of their battels, Cartes full of Towe, drawne with Dren, that being ready for the encounter, they set it on fire, causing the Dren vehemently to thrust forwards into the armie of the enimie, deuiding the same. Thy number small, and the fields large and open, it is good to make ditches, the which being filled with boughes, and slightly couered with earth, leauing voide spaces for thy horse and shot to procure skirmish, the which being of the enimie encountered may faue a running awaie, and being prosecuted by the enimie, shall bee ouerthrowne in the ditches, where they are easilie slaine, manie such notable deuises by wise Captaines hath bene practised, the which vpon the suddaine put

put in vse, will greatly profit. Thy Battels being made and set in order, it is requisite that thou leaue the warde within the trenches of the Campe for the defence of thy lodgings, munition, and carriages, least the enimie vnderstanding the place to be left voide, sende his Souldiers to take the Campe, and so to spoile all: vpon occasion some Captaines will destroie their owne lodgings, or els passe riues, or leaue behinde them hils and deepe places, to the ende that the Souldiers standing constantly, may ouercome the aduersarie and obtaine the victorie, or otherwise altogether to perish, for that if they should thinke to saue themselues by running away, they shall see by all manner of meanes taken from the possibilitie to escape.

Nowe being come to ioyne battaile with thy enimie, cause thy Souldiers somewhat before, to flourish off their naked Swordes and Halberds against the Sunne, for that the glistering of the weapons, and their shining pointes, through the brightnesse nowe of the one and nowe of the other, against the resplendant Beames of the Sunne, dooth shew a certaine horrible terrour of warre, the which will strike a dread and feare into the mindes of the enemies. Likewise it is sometimes requisite that thy battailes goe forwards with rumours and showtings, sometimes running with violence, soasmuch as the semblance of such thinges with the noise of Trumpets, Drummes, and great Ordinance, wonderfully troubleth and feareth the heartes of the aduersaries: also it is great wisdom in a Captaine, not with desire to be drawne to be the first to giue the onset, but to staie thee neere thy trench till thou hast viewed thy selfe and the Wendies of the enemies: that is, howe manie battailes, howe they are placed, of what condition, and where they are disposed to fight, for after this manner thou maist more commodiously see to thine affaires: considering which of thine thou hast to set against those of thy enemies, and in what manner thy men are to be ordeined and placed, doing in like sort to a good Physitian, the which considering first the infirmitie, and knowing the cause, commeth afterwards to giue remedie, therefore ordeine thy men so as may turne most vtilitie to thy businesse.

The art of Warre.

The manner of ordering of battels lately used, I cannot greatly commend, for the armie being 20, 30 or 40 thousand, they are divided but into 3. battels, whereby ensueth many perils and discomforts, because the Pike being but five yards three quarters long, euerie man occuppying a yard and halfe a quarter of pike, can occupie but foure or five rankes at the most, so that the rest are superfluous and lost: besides, they are easily to be compassed and to be charged on euerie side: wherefoze I haue set downe an order of one of the battels in figure, according to my opinion, the which if it may turne profite to my countrie I would be most glad. The occasion of the prosperous successe of the Romaines, was onely thzough their good orders, by diuiding their Legions into cohorts, the which were bands of 400. and 50. the 50. were shot, the 400. were armed, their weapons, pikes, swords and targets, the which were placed in quadzant manner, 20. euerie wayes, being 10. battels in front, leauing a certaine space betwene euerie battell for their retrait vpon occasi- on vnto the next order, which were but six battels, and the rereward foure battels, all in like number, keeping one breadth, the bowward were called Hastatic, their battels thicke and close, the Maineward were called Principie, who had such space be- twene their rankes as they might receiue the Hastatic: the rereward were called Triarij, whose spaces betwene their rankes were such, as they might receiue the Principie and Ha- static, on the wings were placed seauen rankes of Pikes of strangers, which did distend in length from the bowward to the rereward: thzough these good orders they became conquerours of many countries. Now because of the diuersitie of the wea- pons, hauing 20000. footemen, I would deuide them into tenne battels, to euerie one of the battels shall be according to my propozition set downe 1000. shot, 300. pikes, and 200. Billes, the which placed in twofold wise, according to my propozition set downe in figure, will be in breadth 45, and in length 22. and ten ouerplus, the which are to be placed at the discretion of the Ser- geant Maioz, the shot placed in the wings and rereward in ma- niples for the readier seruiue, who must be placed a good distance from thy battel, thy men at armes vpon y wings of the shot, the Lances as two hoznes in the front of the battell, the light horse in the fronts of thy Lances, the hargulaters in the fronts of the light

The Battell in Figure, showing how euerie Weapon shoulde be placed to fight.



Place this battale at 192 folio, at this marke \*\*\*\*

НАУКОВА БІБЛІОТЕКА ОНУ ІМ. ПЕТРА КИЛКОВА



ИЗ  
ВОЕ

## The art of Warre.

193

light horse, who with the piffoleters are the first that begins the battel : thy great ordnance to be placed in the fronts of the battels, or in such convenient place as may most terrifie the enimie : there would be appointed certaine troupes of Lances, whose guidons would be contrary to the rest, the which the Germane calls their fozlozne hope, the french Infants perdus, who must at such time and instant as shall be thought good by the General, give the charge vpon the enimies battels, whatsoeuer shall happen : who are for the same to receiue double pay. The second battell not to be placed in the front with the first battell, as the Romaines did, but in the rereward of the first so far wide and with such distance, as the horsemen and shot a fote giuing the first charge may retire themselues without disturbance to the battels, hauing thy shot placed as in the bowward with the lances and shot on horsebacke : the third battell to be placed in the rereward of the second, with like distance with shot and horse: and so to the fourth, fift, and the tenth, in the rereward of the which, if occasion require, thou maist as in the rereward of the battell, place for the defence certaine of thy carriages. Thy battels being thus ordered, thou shalt be sure no wayes to be compassed by the enimies, whereas thou maist easily compass in him, not ordered in the like manner, and thy battels being but little, yet as strong as the greater, being strongly fortified euery way with pikes, and when a signe is giuen, your hargolacares, pistolateares and lances, may at the sodaine be with the foremost, or readie for any other place of seruice. Also your second battell may toyne with the first, and the third with the second, and so to strengthen your battels at pleasure, as otherwise two or thre of thy battels to giue the charge to one of his battels, and if it should so happen that thy first and second battels should be ouerthrowne, thy battel placed in this order, thou maist retire thy selfe and leaue of the field, managze the head of thy enimie, who in prosecuting thee, disorder themselues, as many times happens, may be easily conquered, vsing thy battels in this order, I hold to be of greatest force and most auailable.

\*\*\*\*\*

C

These

НАУКОВА БІБЛІОТЕКА ОНУ ІМ. ПЕТРА КИЛКОВА



The second front is diuided into five great battaillons, euerie one of them being of 2000. men, 40. in ranke, and 50. rankes: euerie battaillon armed in the front with 6. rankes of pikes. These battaillons ought to be one from another at the least 25. paces, & the one front of battell from the other at least 60. paces: in or nigh the middle battaillon of this second front shall be the Generall himselfe, when he seeth time.

These battaillons are impaled on either side with 100. rankes of pikes 7. in a ranke, and on the backe with 6. rankes of pikes: without these hath he placed the shot in 24. troups, euerie troupe containing 100. There is also the forlozue hope before the face of the battell: likewise 18. troupes of shot 100. a peece, who after they come to the face of the enimie, disband and maintaine skirmish.

Last of al the wings of horsemen which M. Digges hath placed in a preposterous order, by placing the Argolateares last, but I both altering their course & names, say that two of the first are Argolateares 50. in a ranke, 25. rankes: the second light horsemen, 30. in a ranke, 33. rankes, and the last Demie lances 30. in a ranke 25. rankes. Thus there is in the first front of pikes 1680 In the second front 1200. In the impalement 3800. These in all amount to 6680. so is there left 320. pikes to be employed in wole fleues to accompanie such shot & short weapon, as shall remaine for the gard of the Ordinance.

Likewise in the first front there are of short weapons 6240. in the second front 8800. so there do remaine 960. short weapons to be employed together with the remnant of the pikes for gard of the Artillerie or carriages, or else to mingle with the shot in the forlozue hope, the which when they shall grow to pell mell with the enimie, will do great seruice.

Also after the battels approach, they may retire with the forlozue hope to assist their horsemen. The shot you may behold sorted in troupes 1800. in the front and in either wing 2400. so doe there remaine 400. shot moze to ioyne with the pikes and short weapons extraordinary in any seruice. Thus after the great Ordinance on either side haue discharged, the forlozue hope is continually to be supplied with new troupes of shot from the flanks and wings, and these troupes of the forlozue hope that haue discharged, should retire betwene the battaile and the troupes

troupes of horse to the backe of the wings, so maintaining the flanks alwaies furnished: and thus skirmish may continually be maintained with fresh men, & the battell alwaies impaled. But after the battell begins to approach, the forlozue hope must withdrawe themselues: then is your first battell strongly fronted, and impaled with pikes to abide any charge of horsemen, and after their pikes are broken, are together with the rest of the short weapon, to deale with the enimie, and during the continuance of the fight, betwene these battaillons the shot may continually discharge in the face of the enimie. Likewise there may be certaine small carriages, some laden with muskets, some with Calabashes, others with murdering fire balles: and these carriages may during the battell continually spoile the enimies front, being safely garded betwene the battaillons: but if fortune should abandon them in the first encounter, and that they be broken by the enimies, yet haue they those ample spaces betwene the battaillons of the second front to retire vnto, there to make head, and giue the enimie battell againe. And these spaces or lanes betwene the battaillons, serue not onely to receiue the skirmishers or other that shall retyze, but also for the messengers, which among the Romans were called Mandatores, to passe to and fro, and to signifie vnto all parts from time to time the Generals pleasure.

The Argolateares are to gallop the field and scale the side of a squadron, the light horsemen to charge vpon the skirmishers, and the lances to breake vpon the scaled battell, and one to helpe an others course, as need doth require.

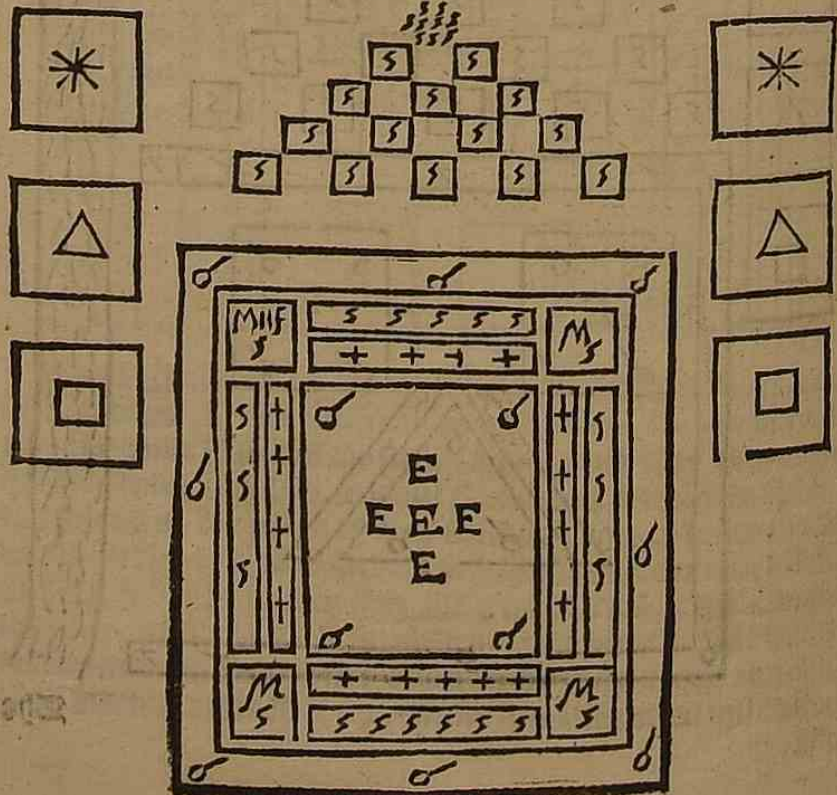
Thus farre M. Digges prefers this battell, which he would haue vsed when no aduantage is gained by the nature of the place, but that the Generall must trust to the strength of his god order, wherein hee doth wish such perfection in our souldiourie, as was in the Romans, that they might be able to fight and retire in order, and so make many sundry heads vpon the enimie, if fortune did abandon them in the first or second encounter: the which is farre better, in respect of our common brute maine battell, or 3 battailes in one front, committing the whole field to one brunt of seruice, which is a barbarous order, therefore it were good the souldiours of our time did applye, practise, and reforme diuers errors.



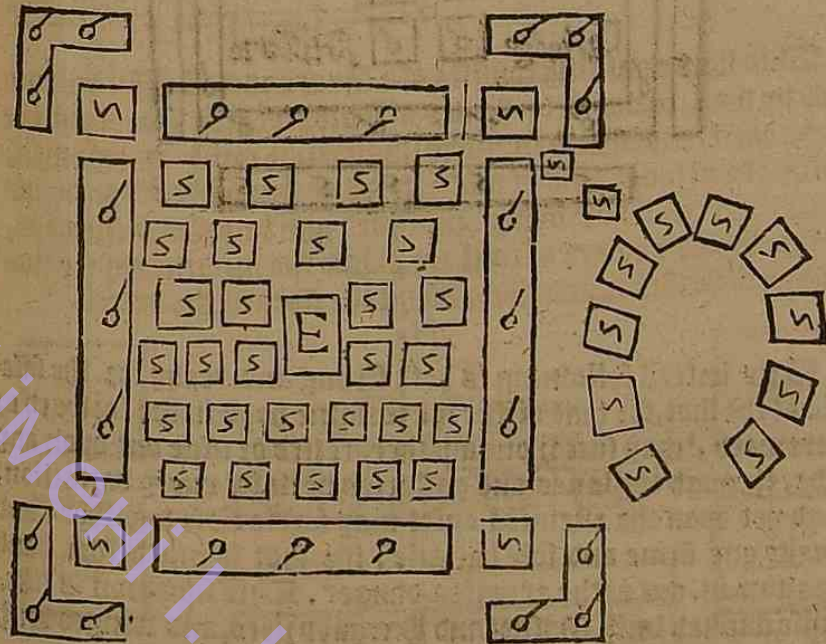
The proportion of this battell was caried by the Almans into Italy against the Zwinzers, being enuironed round about with a raille, fastned with iron hooks, to be taken in sunder & carried with them, planted with musket and base shot, to resist hozsmen, and the squares of footmen.



This figure ensuing consists of a square battell of pikes flanked by shot, seconded by files of Halberdears, for execution and release, or defence in skirmish when it comes to pell well, with 4 smal squadrons of musketes at the corners of the maine battell, all the whole being enuironed and impaled with pikes, before whose backward & front are placed the fozlozne hope, & two wings of hozsmen, marching along the sides of the battell.



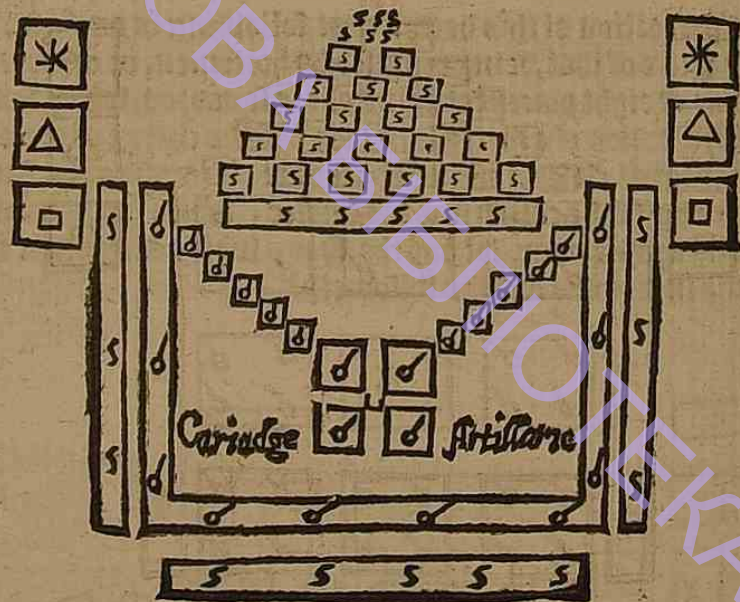
The proportion of this battell next following is onely for the safe retire of shot, being repulled by hozsmen, or otherwise, who may at eight places retire into this Squadron, which stands in the proportion of a foztresse, which vpo the charge of the enemy may ioyne close in one maine square, by causing the flanks to march vp to the corners of the square, which vpon occasion disclosing againe may let out the shot, which may enter into skirmish in circular wise as followeth.



The manner of this battell next adoyning which is to be vfed of a great armie, doth somewhat resemble a cressant, consist- ing of battaillons, the Generall in the midst of the 4 chiefe squa- dzons, the whole impaled with pikes, flanked with shot, fronted with the fozlozne hope, and winged with hozsmen.

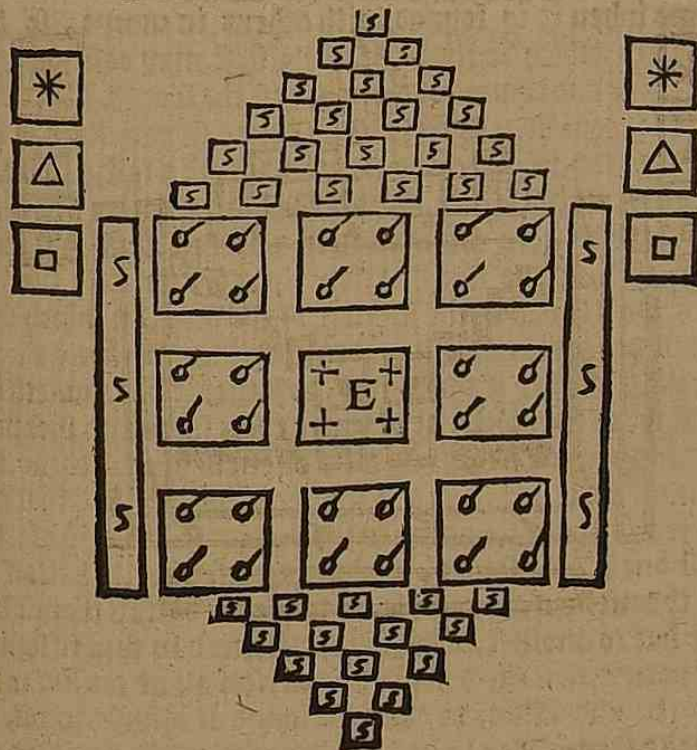
This





This battell following is both strong and ready for the safety of the shot, for that either the forwarde hope in the forward or rereward, may succor one another, retire or issue out upon any side, through the lanes and galleries betwixt euery battaillon, and yet upon the enemies onset may sarrie close together, and make one firme and sole battaile, the shot being before hand drawne in, out of the enemies danger. This squadzon is likewise flanked with Muskets and Hargabuziers, and winged with horsemen.

A notable



A notable discourse of sundrie obseruations to be had in memorie, of Captaines, Collonels, and Sergeant Maiors, in directing, training, exercising, imbattelling and instructing of soldiors, for the better planting of any of the foresaid Battels or proportions.

Each Captaine, Collonell, and Sergeant Maior, must in his degree, take care of his charge. The Captaines must see that his officers do acquaint & teach his souldiours all the particulars in my first booke, and that his other officers be able to execute so much as I haue set downe in my second Booke of Militarie directions, whereby together with some notes written presently, they may learne such particular knowledge, as when they come to put generall matters in execution, the same seeme not strange vnto them, for in the exercise of armes we ought to indeuour our selues to be perfect in such things as belong to a band when it is by it selfe, and that which a band is to

to performe when it is ioynd with others in campe, so that those souldiers which be cunning in the first, may easily obserue all occurrences and commandements in the second. Therefore a hand is to learne by it selfe, to keepe ranke in each kind of motion, that is to say, in marching slowlie, softlie & fast, & to learne all the sounds, all the signes, and all the blasts, voices and cries, wherewith the officers command in a battell: and that every one know perfectly the signification thereof, no lesse then the Mariners the whistle of the maister of the Ship, in which souldiers must be readie and diligent to obey incontinently & aptly at the stroke & battery of the drums, whether it be to march forward, to stay, or to recoile, or to turne their faces and weapons towards any place. To this end all Collonels must ordaine, that all the drums haue one kind and maner of battery, and that they do vse al one forme of sounding to the field, of sounding an alarme, and to vse one proper sound, to plant themselves in battell, to aduance themselves, to recoyle, to turne in battell themselves from one side to another, to make retraite, and in sum to signifie all other points, that the voice of one person alone cannot make so easily to be vnderstood, as doth the sound of many drums, the which make themselves to be hard in the greatest tumults and throngs. The souldiers also ought to be so attentiu, to hearken and giue eare to that which is spoken and commanded, that they need neuer to be deceiued: the drums likewise ought to be ready to batter their caisses according to the sound of the collonels trumpets, by the which they must altogether direct and gouerne their batteries. The Collonels trumpet ought to be expert in all these sounds, & that he be able to vtter them so plainly, that the drums take not one thing for another, but that he know how to expresse the same according to his Collonels commandement, nere vnto whose person he ought to be euer, & not to abandon him: & to yeeld a reason what moues me to appoint trumpets for footmen, it is in respect y they may be more clearly vnderstood then drums can be if any great tumult should arise: & that the drums should alter & change their sound: for they are to be directed by trumpets, the sound wherof is hter the battery of drums, the which y Switzers who first inuented drums haue very wel tried: therefore let collonels prouide y they haue trumpets before their battailons that y Chieftains may signifie & admonish the what they haue to do.

All

All these things together with ech seuerall sound, must be taught & shewed from point to point to ech particular band apart, before they be ranged together in battell, to the intent they may haue the full art to maintaine their order & ranks, without that any place how difficile soeuer, be able to disband or disseuer them. And also that the sound of the trumpet be so familiar vnto them, that they cannot erre, neither take one thing for another, but that the Collonels bands be ech one priuatly & fully instructed in all that which the battailons ought to do, being assembled with the armie. And for that armes are brought to seuerall kinds of battels, either in respect of the enemies in sight, or for feare of some sodaine assault, ech band ought to be exercised in such sort and so instructed, that they may with great assurance march through the enemies countrie & fight if need require, the officers instructing & shewing the souldiers, that which they haue to do, if they were assaulted on one side or other at vnawares.

And that they be taught the order to resist the enemy in a day of battell, or when the enemy doth approach in sight, they ought to learne how a battell must begin, and how one battailon doth aboyd another battailon of the enemies: and to shew them the place where they ought to retire if they be repulsed: and who must enter into and supply their places: and to what signes, to what sounds, to what voyces they ought to obey: and that which they must do when they heare those voyces and sounds, and see those tokens & signes: and to accustom them with the sundrie sorts of battels and fained assaults, in such sort, that afterwards they may not onely dare to abide, but also desire the fight in good earnest: the which assurance shall so much the rather encrease, by how much they see themselves wel instructed, ordered, & ranged, rather then by their proper hardines, chiefly if these battailons be ranged in such sort that they may easily succour one another, which is of no small importance to encourage & assure the souldiers: For admit that I should be of the first combatants, & that I know into what part I ought to retire my selfe, being overmatched, and likewise who he is that must come in my place, I shall alwayes fight with a better heart, beholding my succours nere at hand, rather then if I neither knew them nor saw them. Likewise if I be in the second place (although the first be repulsed, & that I behold them to recoile) yet the same shall not astonish

D D 3

no 2

nor appale me, for that I alredie know what this recolle doth signifie: a thing which befozehand I shal desire to come to passe, so the intent that I may be he that shall gaine the victorie, and that the first do not carrie away the honour of the felde alone to themselues.

These exercises therfore be most necessarie both for young and olde souldiers, for it appeares, that although the Romaines knew perfetely what were to be accomplished in a particular band, and so consequently in a whole armie, and that they did learne all these things in their youth in *Campo Martio*, yet neuerthelesse they were afterwards continually exercised, as wel in the time of peace, as when their enemies did front them. Ioseph in his hystorie saith, that the continuall exercise of the Romaine armie, did make the common multitude of those that followed the campe, serue in a day of battell as well as the souldiers: for both the one and the other knew how to keepe their ranks, and in keeping them how to fight in them. But an armie of new souldiers, whether they be leuied to serue presently, or that an order be taken to haue them in readines to be employed in time to come, they will arise to proue vnprofitable without these practises and exercises. Therfore order being so necessarie, all Captaines, Collonels, and Sergeant Maiozs, must with double industrie and trauell instruct or cause to be instructed, those which be ignozant, and to continue and maintaine the same in those which are perfect, imitating the steps of those excellent Captaines which haue travelled to maintaine this discipline.

The souldiers therfore in pziuate bands being instructed to keepe their ranks by 3. and 3. five and 5. or 8. and 8. without hauing respect to the number, euen or odde, for that it is a thing of no importance, but an obseruation brought by without foundation, & specially Vegetius can yeld no reason therfore, but only vse. They must then in marching softly or in halt, learne to multiplie, as two ranks of five to make 10. & two of 10. to make 20. and by and by at one instant to bring them from the same ranks and to place them in their first and simple order of aray.

And to the end they may assure and accustome themselues the

the better, it is necessarie they make *Lymassons* when they are in simple and single aray, and to aduertise them that the second person in ranke, doe keepe alwayes iust behind the first without losing him, and the 3. right behind the second, and so of the rest.

This done together with the directions of my second booke, ech band must apart be set in order, and in the estate that is required and requisite to range them, when a whole battell is planted togither. To performe which the Pikes of the flanks and the Hargabusters shall come out of aray, and shall place themselues on the one side and the Corporals of the Pikes shall make head, one of the Corporals and his people first, and another of the Corporals and his people next, the Corporall of the Halberbeares shall follow, haning the Alferus with his Ensigne in the middell of the Halberds. Then the other Corporals with their Pikes, shall make the reregard with their people.

It must be shewed to euerie Corporall the place which he ought to keepe at all times, who likewise must declare the same plainely and particularly to euerie pziuate souldier of his Squadze.

The Captaine must be at the head of the aray, and the Lieutenant at the backe, the Sergeant hath no staying place, vntill the Captaine do appoint him one, but must alwayes trot here and there all alongst the ranks, to see good order kept, and to commaunde the performance of his Captaines pleasure.

Let continuall vse accustome the souldiers, to know of themselues, how to range themselues in battell: for the better learning whereof, they must be made to march forward and backward, and to passe difficile places without troubling and breaking their aray, the which if they be not able to doe, they are not to be esteemed old souldiers, although they haue serued twentie yeares.

The difficultie likewise is great, to cause them place themselues vpon a sodaine in their first aray being broken or dispersed, by reason of vneasie passages, or that the enemies haue disseuered them, for in this it is requisite to haue had good and great exercise of a long continuance. Therfore that

that the same may be accomplished, it is necessarie to haue two things obserued & maintained, the one that the Ensignes may be easily knowne by colours and figures of number, and that the chiefe members and officers haue certaine cognifances or markes vpon their armes and apparell: and the other is, that one selfe band be ranged alwayes in one certaine and knowne place of the battaillon, without causing the same to alter rowes: and that the Corporals know the places that they must enter into, without shifting at any time, but if that one Corporall be accustomed to be in the foremost ranke, that he remaine there alwayes, and the souldiers in the places which hath ben ordained them from the beginning. And if that any one band hath bene taught to be in the right corner of the battell, that the same doe not stirre from thence, and so consequently that which is used to the left shall go to the left. By this meanes if the souldiers be accustomed to know their places (put case they should be out of order) yet should they be able to place themselues againe easily. For the Ensignes do know alredie the place where they are accustomed to be planted in the battell: and the Corporals knowing likewise their place, may iudge also by ranke of eye vpon what part it is that they should place themselues: so that those of the front shall steppe forwards to the front, and those of the backe shall in like sort retire to their places.

Wherefore the Corporals knowing in how many and what rankes they haue to arrange themselues, it will follow that the souldiers, not hauing any thing else to do, but to imitate their Leaders and heads, will readily range themselues euerie one in his owne place, without hauing neede of any sergeant of a band, nor any other to place them, prouided that vse and practise hath made them perfect masters. These things are instructed & learned speedily, so that diligence be used, & that men accustome themselues by little & little and often, the which after they haue once well learned, they shall hardly forget. It is mozeouer necessarie to teach them to turne al at one time, for it is sometimes requisite to make of the rereward the front, or of one of the flankes the rereward, according to the enemies face, and according to the place of assault. Now to answer towards the place needful, you haue no moze to do, but to turne your person towards the place appointed, and so shall that part towards which the souldiers haue

haue turned their faces be the front. But he that would haue a whole battaillon turne all in one pace, & as if it were a massie body, in this it were necessarie to haue great practise & discretio, for to turne it vpon the left hand, it is requisite to haue the left corner stay, & that those which be nere adioyning vnto the same, do aduance themselues so slowly, that those vpon the right corner, be not constrained to run: otherwise all wil be confounded, but this may better be made apparant by experience then words.

The foremost hope, & the light armed & armed pikes, are to be ranged in the front, flankes & rereward, according to the proportion of the battell, or as the seruice requires, for these are to execute particular functions, in couoyes, forrages, inuasions & such like, when it is not requisite to send great numbers of people. The foremost hope, the pikemen & hargabusters, are to begin the battell, to fight amongst the horsemen without keeping any order: and therefore being lightly armed, their office is to fight without standing still or firme, & in running & trauersing here & there, whether they pursue the enemies, or be followed of them, in which the pikemen wil do good seruice in backing & sustaining the hargabusters, and may be able to make front to these that charge vpon them, whether they be on horseback or foote, or to follow those that be in flight, & to make entrance & to thrust in amongst the enemies, when they begin to stagger or sway. Therefore all souldiers, whether they be in maine battell in flankes, foremost hope, in the vanguard or rereward, haue neede to be well exercised, that being disbanded they may immediatly finde againe their places & range themselues in the same aray they kept before, wherein it is necessarie that all officers become moze vigilant in execution then heretofore, and the souldiers moze obedient and expert in performing, then at this day they be. Our age brings forth Captaines moze curious of gaine then of conseruing good order, and troupes of officers rather to supplie number then sufficient to instruct: The Ensignes themselues are moze in vse for a gallant shew, then for any Militarie direction, whereas the ancient Romaines did vse them for a guide: whereby they knew how to put themselues in order, for euerie one after the Ensigne did stay, knew incontinently the place where they were to plant themselues, they knew if the same did remoue or stand still, if they likewise ought to march or stay. Therefore it is necessary that a camp haue diuers bands, & euerie band his Ensigne, whether in figures of num-  
ber

ber are to be portrayed, to shew what rowe and place the same is of in euery regiment or armie, and so consequently where the same is accustomed to be ranged. And also necessarie Leaders and officers, that the campe may haue diuers soules, and so likewise diuers liues: all souldiers then ought to gouerne themselves according to their Ensignes & according to the sounds the which being ordained & set down according as they ought, do command & gouerne a whole regiment and armie. The which, so that it march in such sort as answers to the batterie of the Drums: they shall easily keepe their order and aray. And to this end were the flutes and fifes sound out, and sounds of perfect accord: for euen as men that dance by the measures of Musicke do not erre, so likewise a whole battaillon, which in march obeys the sound of the drum cannot breake aray, and therefore the Romaines, when they would change their pace, when they would inflame, appeale, or assure the souldiers they did change sounds, & as the sounds did varie, so likewise used they variety of names to them, for they had the Dorike, and the Phrigien sound: the one did inflame the hearts of the souldiers, the other did make merriment & appeale them. They had likewise other kinds of sounds as the *Aeolien*, *Iasien*, *Lydien* & others, the which did all serue to incite or coole the courage of men, which diuersitie of batteries, the Spaniards do presently verie well imitate, a thing to be obserued of all good souldiers. An armie that consists of diuers battaillons & two or three fronts, when they are constrained to break and are repulsed, must retire one within another into the ranks of the next squadrons, which of purpose are planted more thin, & so the first retiring enters into the 2. and the second into the 3. Note that in the first front of a square upon the fall of any wounded or slaine souldier, he who is next behind him in rank, & is his follower must enter and step into his rowe, and fill vp the void place, that the front of the battel may still be maintained, and so obseruing the retire of the battaillons, and the renewing of their ranks, we may accomplish both the Romain & Greeke discipline. Those battaillons which are most necessarie to be had in vse, ought to consist of pikes marching before the Ensigne, behind it and on the flanks, carrying light Venecian rundels and targets on their backs: and in the midst about the Ensigne the halberdeares must stand, provided alwayes that the notable personages & good souldiers for seruice be dispersed as well in the flanks & behind as before,

and

and not to put them all to one bzunt in the front, as though they were immortall and not able to be overcome. By this order a battell shall be able to sustaine a charge of horsemen or footmen to repulse them, & after enter into the enemies throng: for experience declares that the pikes are made voide of seruice when the ranks be closed pell mell together, for then the souldiers are almost one upon the bodie & backe of another. Wherefore if the pikemen should haue no other weapons but their pikes and swords, they should remaine naked, which doth moue me to commend the rondell to receiue the blowes: and to fight withall in any presse or throng whatsoever. The halberdeares may verie well fight in a presse likewise with their halberds, rather then the pikemen with their pikes: The which halberdeares are expressly appointed for execution: and so consequently to follow the said rondels at the heeles, to free them from the charge of those that be armed, through the great & heauie blowes which they shall giue with their halberds. But touching the rondels, I would haue them alwayes to thrust with the point of their swords, although it were but at the face, the legges and side, if the enimie be not disarmed in other parts.

The ground that euery souldier doth occupie at large in marching in simple and single aray, is three pace, and being in battell two, and when they fight one. The distance of one ranke from another, in simple and single ordinance and aray, is foure, and being ranged in battell two, and in fight one.

The first sound of the Collouels trumpet is to enter into the ranke and march, the second to alter the single aray into forme of battell, and the thirde is to advance and plant the battell. The Collonel being in such a place as from thence he may see his whole Regiment, hauing the Caualliers of his squadre of S. George about him, being such expert souldiers as I haue set downe in my second booke of directions, together with the Sergeant Major and such as can execute any commission of importance, his drum and trumpet major about him to sound and cause his pleasure to be sodainly and speedily vnderstood. The Collonel must commande the sound to be made of his trumpet, which is appointed for the ordinarie march, and some after to sounde that which is to trot, and then at the selfe time that which commands and appoints the fight and combat.

When a battell doth consist of diuers battaillons, he must not forget to exercise y<sup>e</sup> first to retire within y<sup>e</sup> battaillons of the second, & the second to retire within the battaillons of the third. And to accomplish the same without breaking or disordering the Squadrons. The pikes in the flanks must retire as the battaillons retire, the first into the second, the 3. within the 4. the fourth within the 5. the fift into the 6. of the ranks, and so consequently to the end. The forlorne hope and horsemen shall likewise do their dutie. These things done, the retreat must sound, and euery Ensigne must recoile his people apart, to put them again in a new and single ordinance of aray for the march.

The enimie aduancing to fight in triangular battel with the point forward, frame the battell of cheares to receive, enuiron and fight with the said pointed battaillon. If the enimie march with a front stretched out in length, make a triangle or pointed battel to pearce the same. The baggage of an armie ought either to be in a place strong by nature, or well defended by art and industrie, together with the followers of the campe, pages and m<sup>o</sup>chachos, who must be chosen able to fight in a day of seruice, for the defence of themselves and their masters baggage.

The spaces, interualles, galleries and passages, which are amongst the ranks, amongst the bands, and amongst the battaillons, do serue not onely to receive one another, either in retire, or when the first ranke doth retire through the midst of the second, and the 2. 3. 4. and 5. &c. following him like a Laborinthus maze, going forward to the last ranks and turning backe again, or that his next follower steps a side and lets him passe and enter into ranke againe, but also those spaces betwixt the battaillons serue the Caualliers & such like that come & go, which carrie & bring directions of y<sup>e</sup> Chieftaines, Collonels or Generals.

The forlorne hope and extraordinary pikes must invade the enimie with continuall & great cries, the battaillons or maine battell likewise at the first must giue a chearefull shout, when encounter is giuen in the beginning and ioyning of the battels, but afterward maintain a solemn silence, y<sup>e</sup> they may y<sup>e</sup> better vnderstand what commandements and directions proceeds from their chieftain, either for y<sup>e</sup> altering of order or otherwise, which cannot be heard or vnderstood, if they continue a barbarous cry. Squadrons & battaillons must sometimes assault in great haile, chiefly if the enimies artillery doe endomage them verie much, and

and sometimes must abide the charge without remouing, when the place is vneasie, & that they shall be in danger to dismember, specially if they be such as be not accustomed to the march & manner of battels. Therefore in conclusion, these 4 things ought to be obserued of all armies: first that all soldiors & priuate bands be exercised a part in all things belonging to the wars; secondly, that they know how to range themselves in battell, how to varie, exercise, and march in the same, softly, apace, and in full course, keeping their araic. Thirdly to learne that which appertaines to the exercise which they must accomplish in a day of battell, and how to draw forward and retire the artillarie, to giue way and cause the Hargabuziers to issue out of the flanks, hauing shot sixe or 7 Hargabuzades a pece in running here and there, and without keeping order, so that they know how to ioyne and agree with the pikemen and horsemen, to whom the care ouer their safety belongs. They shall retire by the flanks and by the interualls and passages, each one into his place: that is to say, the hargabuziers of the flanks into the flanks, the forlorne hope to the reregard, there to range themselves according to the Collonels appointment, & as the day of seruice requires, for if they should remaine and continue before the Squadrons or battel, they shall hinder the maine battaillons in their fight, and bring confusion. The light armed pikes & horsemen must likewise retire to their places vpon the ioyning of the battels. The fourth exercise is, as partly I haue touched before, that euery one apply himselfe to vnderstand the commandement of the Chieftaines, the signification of the sounds and trumpets, and the batterie of the drums: by which be signified all that which is generally to be vnderstood: that is to say, when it shall be time to plant themselves in battell, when they ought to march, when to stay or go forward, when to turne visage to one part or other, to crosse the ground, sarrie close, & fight. In like sort the sound of the said trumpets shall signify, when it is time for the artillarie to discharge, when to retire, when the Musket & Hargabuziers, the forlorne hope, and others, are to set forward, and when they are to retire, and also when the first battels ought to retire to the second fronts and battaillons, and when both together they are to arrange themselves with those of the third, & finally at what time they must all retire from the battel, the which things must be in a plaine & knowne vulgar sort, be al set downe by the collonel.

and Chieftaine, and suddenlye be signified by his trumpet, the noise whereof shall give sufficient intelligence to the other trumpets, which are nextt him, that it may so go from hand to hand, to the furthest trumpet of the armie. It should be good to vse a Cornet or a hunts mans hoine, for the retraite, &c. and a trumpet to begin the battell, or contrariwise: for it is a most difficult thing, that the trumpet should signifie so many diuers things with one instrument, considering that the sound of a retraite, doth appoach very nere vnto the sounding to the Standard, in such sort that then when as all men be troubled, and as it were besides themselues, they shall very hardly be able to discern whether of these two things the trumpet sounds.

What the Sergeant Maior is to obserue touching the length of Pikes.

A Pike ought neuer to want in length any thing of fiftene foot, for this respect, when the footemen are streightned and settled in order of battell, they may for the aduantage and profite of the said armie, in respect that the assaults of the enemy is to giue to the said battell, couching & bending their pikes against them, worke so that the greatest number of rankes that is possible for the defence of the battell, may endamage and offend the said enemies, and therefore their pikes being shorter then fiftene foote, it proues that no more of the ranks can fight, but the first, second and third, standing all in order in their places, and yet can the third ranke fight but discommodiously, & not aduance forward his pike to succor and defend the first ranke, for so much as the distance of the ground, from one ranke to another, in any battell, how straight and close soeuer it be, would be neuertheless so much, that men may manage and handle their weapons and sturre themselues, without being a hinderance or trouble one to another. Therefore it is to be considered, that the distance of the ground, which is betwixt one ranke and another, doth take away a good portion of length, in such sort that by reason we may see, that a pike ought to be in length fiftene foot, and no lesse, for being so long, footemen standing in order of battell in their places, the third and fourth ranke may commodiously abasing themselues, come in aright to succour with their pikes, the first and foremost rankes, & this is as much as I can imagine to

to be necessarie, touching the length of pikes, by reason of the succour, the third and fourth ranke may giue to them before.

How pikes are to be raised vp and abased, in closing and opening of a battell.

I will not omit to put those in memorie, that know not of the particular of those things that is required in making a battell of footmen. Therefore those which would make a battell of footmen, must be aduertised, that in shutting vp of the said battell, the rankes of the pikes, as well armed as vnarmed, must not raise them vp confusedly, but with order, that is, when the Sergeant, Captaine, or Sergeant Maior shall say, raise or right vp your pikes, then it is requisite that the first and foremost ranke must begin to raise vp it selfe, and that the second do not moue to raise vp it selfe, vntill the first be all raised vp, & so the third, and fourth. And finally the same order is to be obserued in all other rankes, not to raise vp their pikes vntill such time that the rankes that are before them haue raised them vp: and so front one to another, all the rankes of the footmen must obserue this order, as well in battell as in arays. The like order is to be obserued in battell and arays, in laying downe their pikes vpon their shoulders, for so much as ranke by ranke, in order and without confusion, they ought to let fall their pikes, letting the first fall after the second, the third and fourth, following from one to another, in the selfe same maner as hath bene declared in the raising vp of their pikes, for by obseruing this order they cannot commit, but rather make a gallant shoue, and prevent vaine confusions.

How the Sergeant Maior, Captaine, or simple Sergeant are to gouerne the footmen, when their battell shall chauce to be assaulted, on foote and on horsebacke.

In sundry and diuers manners, and in diuers places and grounds battells are fought, according to the occasions, and the accidents that in Military occurrences doe chauce at vnawares, in time of warrefare, as in Campania, in Townes and in Fortresses: for which causes it

is necessarie, that the wit of those that haue  $\hat{y}$  managing thereof, be prompt & ready, as well in this, as mozeouer in finding out a good partie for himselfe, all for the honoz & safetie of the prince whom he serues, ioining to his couragious hart, wit, experience, policie, & each aduantage that is possible to be vled against his enimie, therfore in two sortz do arise the means to fight: one is when he doth seeke to fight with his enimie, & the other when he is sought of the enimie, in such sort that it is needfull he defend himselfe, and therfore I say, when the first occasion doth rise, & that he seeke the enimie, speaking here of striking battell in Campania: it is requisite first he consider how the enemies army is furnished with horsemen and footmen, and if he loke to fight with horsemen that are to come to bryeake his battell, in this case he is to be aduertised, that he suffer himselfe not to be found (if it be possible) in Campania Rasa, in  $\hat{y}$  open fields, or in plains, but rather must accomodate his battell in some place of hill or a mountaine, or vpon some seat of ground which hath vpon one side either riuer or ditch, or some other impediment, against the enemies horsemen, which on some side may be a difference, as in some places be, trees, vines, and diuers other such like, as nature brings forth in diuers places, which are of great impediment vnto the enemies horsemen, & vnto sorte battels are verie profitable, and although the number of the souldiours are very small, yet oftentimes by much aduantage remaine vidozious: but aduertisement is to be had, that in such cases it is requisite, that there be accomodated many hargabuziers in the battell, & many pikes, for they be good against the enemies horsemen: hauing to fight with footmen, the open fields is the best, with a square battell, and many pikes, placing hargabuziers according to his discretion. Since I haue spoken of the first maner of fight, I will speake of the second, which is, when the enimie doth assault at vnawares, it is necessarie then couragiously not to loose any point of courage, to place his people in square battell, for that it is the most ready and most sure way, that is, making himselfe good flanks with the Hargabuziers of the band, afterwards expecting the assault, cause his battell to shut and close it selfe wel, causing them to couche and abase, 4 or 5 or sometimes 6 ranks of pikes in that case, round about all the sides of the battell, and the others to stand byright vntill time of neede: and the Hargabuziers are to hold their pikes vpon their thighes, with their mat-

ches in their rockes, a moze in their pan, and all vigilant in a readinesse. And the captaine before the battell, valiantly giuing courage to his souldiours, to perfozme the dutie of a leader: aduertising, that when the assault is giuen by horsemen, that the pikemen couching and abasing themselues, do hold the great end of their pikes fastned hard in strong earth, to the end the pike may haue greater force.

What distance is vled in Battell betwixt man and man, ranke and ranke.

I  $\hat{y}$  this present chapter, you shall perceiue the order and maner that is to be obserued in the distance and space of ground betwixt ranke and ranke of souldiours in battell, and how much space the souldiours do occupie, from shoulder to shoulder, as well armed with Cozlet as vnarmed. Note that it is to be vnderstood of a pikeman, I will first aduertise all Sergeant Maiors, and all good Captaines and Sergeants, and others, that delight in profession of battels, that there be two reasons, wherefore the vnderstanding of these distances, be of importance: the one is to know how much ground is necessary to manage a battell, & how much space the circumference of the battell will take round about it, according to the quantitie of the souldiours, that are to be in the said battell. And the other is, that it is needful to know, how much space is limited to a souldior from shoulder to shoulder, and from one ranke to another. And this propoztion hath bin found out and limited, of great practised and cunning men, to the intent that the said distance from one ranke to another, may in a certaine space of time be accomodated, that the souldiours may comodiously manage their pikes, may fight, and in such sort that one ranke of souldiours may succour an other that stand before them, and deale in such sort that all the battell may woake good effect, sozasmuch as when they do accomodate themselues ouerstrait and narrowe, they can neither fight nor yet hardlye moue themselues. And the same inconuenience would chance, if souldiours were placed in battell one ouer farre from another, or one ranke too much distant from another. Therefore it is a most conuenient thing, to vse in this case those limited rules, that the auncient and moderne souldiours haue set downe, and such as our Captaines haue obserued. The space therefore of

If ground,



grounde, that one Souldiour with his necessaries dooth holde from shoulder to shoulder shall be of three foote, and nothing lesse, in such sort, that when any battell is to be made, let vs put this example, that if there be a ranke of 25 souldiours in a battell, it is needfull to imagine, that the length of the said 25 foemen shall containe the space of 75. foote, which is fiftene pace.

Speaking of the Venetian pace, which is five foote for the pace, whereof I meane alwaies to speake. The space moreover of the ground that is to be obserued for the ouerthwart of a battell, that is, from one ranke to another, that they may be able to manage themselves with their pikes aswell in marching as in fighting in maine battell, no lesse then seauen foote is obserued from one ranke to another. Moreover to the intent he may more commodiously march with his pike on his shoulder, the ground would be no lesse then of ten foote, which is two pace, but after when they are to close and ioyne more strait, as I haue said before, of 7. foote: in such sort, that a man in ranke with his space before him, will amount to held vnto the other ranke, ten foote, which is two pace, accounting three foote of ground which he holds with his person, and the other 7 foote, the space vnto the other ranke, make 10 foote. Let vs then presuppose this figure or example: That he is to make a battell that is a perfect square of twentie every way, we must count how much ground the said battell will take in circuite, and see if the same be capable of the number of Souldiours, which are appointed to be put and set in battell.

Our rule therefore shall holde vpon two sides, that is, vpon the fronte and the backe, and taile of the battell, where the Souldiours stand shoulder to shoulder, in 60. foote, which is 12. pace, for both sides and both the foresaid sides be 24. pace. The other two sides which be the flankes of the said battell, where the space is left betwixt one ranke and another of seauen foote, and therefore the person of the souldier which is seene one with another, in such sorte that the battell which is to be made of 20 Souldiours for every side, a perfect square of people, but not a perfect square of ground: forasmuch as two sides will be 12. pace on a side, which in both comes to 24. pace: the other two will be for every side 40. pace, which is 80 pace, and so hauing

ioyned vnto the same 24. pace, it will bee round about the said battell of 20 Souldiours on a side 104. pace, which is 520. foote of circumference of ground, and so alwaies this order is to be obserued, not that you are to take a corde or a rod, or pace, to measure the distance of the said battell, but by rache of eye by your witte and discretion consider this measure, for whether it be more or lesse, it little imports. It dooth suffice that you obserue a certaine discretion, that may come to the marke I haue written, if it doe not light iust at leastwise nere the bounds and measure I haue set downe. Now since we haue put this figure and example of a perfect square battell of people, but not of ground for 20. souldiers, we wil speake of an other forme or figure, somewhat differing or disagreeing from such like battells, and yet for all that of the same number of twentie Souldiours, for every side in perfect square, the which is square of people & of ground, as some doe vse to make, as may appeare in a battell of 400. Souldiours, square in ground and people: the which being in this forme, hath for space of ground about in circumference 800. foote, which is 160. pace. This is sufficient to remember you of the manner that is obserued in the distance and measure in the circumference of the battell.

And now returning to my discourse of one ranke from another, when the Souldiours are ioined & closed in battell with their pikes, & when they stand in terme to fight, to me it seemes, that then in that accident, the battell is to close and ioyne as straight together as is possible, in such sorte as they may manage and bestir themselves with their weapons, without being an impediment one to another, to the intent that the rankes being strait in fighting, or that the souldiours be inuaded by their enemies, or that they recoil by force of an onset, they need not so fall to the ground, but rather that they may by those rankes that be behinde their backes receiue helpe, that vndersetting them with their breasts, they may hold them straight by vpon their feete. And this is not onely my opinion, but of diuers other most excellent wits.

The other rule of the distance of seauen foote from ranke to ranke, which we haue spoken of, is meant of marching and the managing and exercising of a battell, to the intent

the soldiors may receive exercise & discipline in the said battell, in the which alwaies the foresaid order of measure & distance is to be obserued, to the intent that the Sergeant & the other heads which do governe them, may the moze comodiously manage and enter in and out thzough the space of the said ranks.

How battels of euery number of footmen are compounded and placed together in order.

Many & sundry be the waies which be obserued in compounding together the battels of footme, but I verely thinke that the most expedient & short way amongst practised soldiors is in these two sorts: that is the one to ioyne together the battell with diuided maniples, and the other to double the ranks of the aray. The sergeant Maioz, Captaine, or other Sergeant, having first determined in his minde of how many men in a ranke he will make his battell, knowing first the number of the pikes that are to be had: so making of one company, as he may do of many one onely battell: & proceeding to make the battell in which of the 2 waies he list, either by parting it into maniples, or by doubling the ranks. It is therefore first requisite, to set the footmen in aray that are to be found there present, numbring all the pikes, and accomodating the araye in such sort that the battell may afterwards be made with all speed, and that it may serue the turne, for either of those two waies, as I have said. It is necessarie therefore to know the place where the battell is to be set, and to take care that there be so much space as may be capable thereof, knowing the rules of distance, which is used in warfare that is, how much ground the Souldiours hold from shoulder to shoulder, and how much distance is left betwixt ranke and ranke of pikes. But touching the measure I need to speake no moze, for that the officer may measure the ground by paces: yet I would commend a Souldiour that is of such discretion, that of himselfe can accomodate those things by racke of eye, without such precise trouble in measuring the ground. And if a battell require 300. paces in circumference, hee by racke of his eye maye see whether the place be capable or no, noting that the rules to put the distance of ranckes, is made for this other respect, which is of much moze importance, that the ranks

ranckes of the battell may fight without any impediment of the Souldiers, foreséeing that euerie third ranke may succour the first with their pikes: and speaking of battels you must euer thinke that I speake of pikes, for battels are neuer made of hargabusters: it is verie true that hauing made the battels of pikes, you may accomodate them afterwards as you list about the battels, by the flankes in y corners & hoznes, or betwixt one pike and another of the foremost ranckes of the battell, or in such other sundry waies as may best aid and helpe the battell: let it suffice that of Hargabusters there is neuer any certaine rule set downe, but euer is to be vnderstood of the order of pikes in battell: of the which two waies, where I speake how a battell must be made wel and speedily, I will endeouour my selfe to let you vnderstand the way the best I can. Desiring therefore to worke by the first way I haue spoken of: that is, to make any battell by maniples, if it be to be made of any one company alone, let it be of what number soeuer of footmen, it is first requisite to set the aray with intent to diuide it into thre parts, that is to say, into 3. maniples, which may be iust of as many ranckes one as another, in the which maniples, you ought by numbring the ranckes of the pikes, cause the Ensignes of the said aray to be one ranke like vnto the pikes, and this is obserued when the thre maniples be vneuen: that is to say, that two of them should chance to be of 20. ranckes, and the 3. of 19. or 18. ranckes, and then the Ensignes shalbe numbred for one ranke: but alwayes the other two maniples are to be of iust number, as for example. There is a company of 300. pikes, the which if you desire to put in aray before you make your battell, consider how many ranckes they will be 5. in a ranke, and you shal finde them to be 60. ranckes: diuide the aray into 3. parts, cutting them off at euery 20. ranckes, and after draw vp to the first ranke the second part, that is, the maniple of the middlest, and ioyne in order the first ranke to the head of the first maniple, the which being on the right hand of the maniple with the Ensignes, you shal draw then the 3. maniple to the left side, ioyning the first ranckes to the head of the other two maniples: so that the aray hauing bene of five for a ranke, the battell shalbe one way 15. and the other way of 20. pikes. Now desiring to haue the battell to be moze large in the front, then in the flankes, the which I commend, of what number soeuer the

pikes are of, he shall cause y<sup>e</sup> Sergeant to go to y<sup>e</sup> flank where he  
 would make the front, and standing still a little distance forth of  
 the battell, he shall crie aloud, Turne your faces this way, the which  
 being heard of the souldiers, sodainly they shall turne them  
 selues towards that side which he shall giue them notice of. Ob-  
 serue then this order at all times. When you haue made a bat-  
 tell, let the pikes be of what number soeuer, let it suffice y<sup>e</sup> I ad-  
 uertise you, y<sup>e</sup> at all times when you list to make the front where  
 the flanke is, so that the place where you would make it be cap-  
 able and commodious, that you may frame and make the battell  
 accordyng to your determination, you must cause them to turne  
 their faces towards that side where you would haue the front of  
 the battell to be. I iudge it good likewise to aduertise you, that  
 desiring to make any battell with maniples, for that it often-  
 times falls out, that some rankes in the aray do remaine vaper-  
 site, which are called broken rankes: these are taken out & are  
 accommodated about at the sides of the Ensignes, so diuided ac-  
 uerthelesse that they may remaine in good order. The which  
 Ensignes, alwayes when you make any battell, you must haue  
 respect that they may haue a large roome and space, that they  
 may accommodate themselues with the souldiers, which make  
 the broken number, as for example in aray of five and five in a  
 ranke, in the last rankes there remaines 3. or 4. souldiers, which  
 do not furnish out the full ranke. And the like is to be obserued  
 when you are to part your aray into 3. maniples, and that they  
 haue some rankes moze then the entire and full aray. As would  
 fall out hauing to make an aray of 500. pikes, and put the case  
 that you would place them 7. and 7. in a ranke, they would fall  
 out to be 71. rankes, and 3. pikes moze: and diuiding into thre  
 parts these 71. pikes and 3. pikes, they amount to 23. rankes, dou-  
 bling the 3. maniples, as I haue said, so that 3. times 23. makes  
 69. rankes, and there is ouer and besides two rankes of the aray  
 and 3. pikes, which is in all the broke number 17. pikes, which in  
 making of y<sup>e</sup> battell, must be set aside by themselues, vntill the 3.  
 maniples be ioyned in battell, the which on one side will be 23.  
 pikes, & on the other 21. The 17. pikes then that are taken out,  
 shall be accommodated, diuided here & there where the Ensignes  
 stand. And when it falls out that there doth arise to be pikes or  
 broken rankes, that are so many as were able to make a whole  
 ranke

ranke in the battell, then it is to be made, ioyning it either before  
 or behind the Ensignes, or at the flankes of the battell, or where  
 it shall fall out to be best, for it imports not much: and so you work  
 by this rule of maniples, in one companie alone as well as with  
 many. And hauing to make a battell of sundrie companies, the  
 true rule is to work by these maniples, and you must proceed in  
 this sort. First take order with all the heads of the companies,  
 that they frame all their order of aray in one manner and sort, &  
 if any of the said heads haue any greater number of pikes then  
 his commission doth allow, let him take them forth & giue them  
 in supplie to those Captaines that are found to haue lesse then  
 he hath appointed for their aray. Let vs then vse this example  
 in this sort, that is, that if there be found in companie or in any  
 other place, vnder the governmet of ten Captaines, to the num-  
 ber of 3. thousand souldiers in aray, that is to say, only pikes, af-  
 ter the rate of thre hundred vnder euerie Captaine, being iust  
 3000. of which the Sergeant Maior hauing to make a battillon  
 must do in this sort. He must giue order to all the Sergeants of  
 the bands, that they make all their araires after one sort, & after  
 one number, and the one head or front being distant from the  
 other a little, he shall cause their araires to march, and let vs put  
 the case that the Sergeant Maior haue giuen them order, that  
 they place themselues sixe and sixe, there will be in euerie com-  
 panie 50. rankes, and so it is needfull that euerie one haue put  
 their aray 6. and 6. in 50. rankes, and desiring to ioyne and close  
 these battells, he shall cause these companies to march one after an-  
 other, & shall close them together, ioyning the first rankes to the  
 head of the aray one of another, knitting the maniples to their  
 portion: and this battell will fall out to be on one side 50. pikes,  
 which will be flankes, and the other which will be the front, will be  
 of 60. pikes, for so much as being 10. maniples, 6. in a rank, it will  
 fall out to be iust, as I haue said before: to make it a right square,  
 it will be of 54. on every side remaining out of y<sup>e</sup> battell 84. which  
 at pleasure may be put in ranke, & so taking 54. out of 84. there  
 remaines 30. pikes, which being not able to make a ranke, are  
 to be placed about the Ensignes, as I haue said before.

There be other some, that hold this other manner in making  
 of battells, to double the ranks, that is, hauing set his araire, and  
 marching with them, they begin at the head of the aray, where  
 the

the Sergeant Maying, doth cause them to march forward, and the first beginning to passe, doth appoint the second that it toyne it selfe with the first, and so the third with the fourth. And finally the ray going forward, doth cause the rankes to double two by two: so that if first the ranke were 9. and 9. they arise to be 18. in a ranke. And desiring to make them moze large, he may put 3. rankes in one, which will be 27. in a ranke, and so he may double them to what number he wil, and of as many rankes as he will, but it is requisite befoze he make his aray, to consider well how many pikes he hath, and afterward accomodating his aray to his appointed number, that by doubling it by two or thzee rankes, it may become as square as is possible, neither is he to do it without this consideration, for other wise working by haphazard, it falls out to be euill fauoured, to be by halfe moze long then large, and sometimes double: But it is first necessarie for him to number the rankes of the aray, and consider if doubling two rankes at a time, it will fall out to be well, or better to double it thzee at a time. And this must be well considered, for otherwise he shall make and unmake to his great disgrace. Therefore now I conclude, that the first way is ever best & most readie without tolle or trouble in doubling and redoubling: So that helping your memoize with certain *Tablei* or *Tariffas* made of purpose to know the numbers of the souldiers that are to enter into ranke, and what number of rankes will performe the iust square, you can neuer erre, but vpon any sobaine, set in battell any number of souldiers whatsoeuer.

THE



THE FOURTH BOOK OF  
MILITARIE DIRECTIONS,  
ENTREATING OF THE OFFICES AP-  
pertaining to the Generall of Horsmen, the Scout  
master, and the office of the Marshall  
of the Field.

*And first of the office of the Lieutenant or Generall of the Horsmen.*

**T**he Main squares of all sorts of battels receiue great safetie & accomplish worthy seruice by the companies of the couragious Cavallarie, chieflie when their bands be guided by those that be of perfite experience and of approued practise in armes, whereas the contrarie effect doth follow, being directed by light heads, and such as onely make profession, but of cleane and gallant riding, or to run in comly order with a Lance vpon the euen grauell & sand. And therefore this officer, that hath vnder his charge all the horsmen of the fielde, as the Hargalancers, Lighthorsmen, Lances, and men at Armes, or barded horsmen, for seruing to bzeake into a battallion of Pikes, or to backe other horsmen being repulsed, must be a personage of singular courage, industry and experience, that he may be able worthily to performe his Lieutenant and Generalship.

And albeit I meane not in this place particularly to entreat of the severall charges of euerie Captaines duetie, yet thus much I thought good to note that a Captain of a hundred men at armes, may be compared with a Collonel of footemen, & other Captaines of lighthorsmen, with the Captaines of footemen, subiect to the Collonel: and as it is the part of the Collonell, to haue a special regard to the arming, lodging and training of his footemen, so is it the duetie of the Captaine of men at Armes to foze see, that neither they be disarmed of their horse and armour, with other necessarie, nor yet vntaught in all such Militarie exercises, as to their profession is agreeable.

Gg This

ИЗ  
ВОР

This Lieutenant must discypher the election of the appointed captaines, whether they be made for such a charge, or vsurpe the same by fauour, and to aduertise the Generall of the armie thereof, that he may remove the one and place others of sufficient experience. He must likewise ouersee y<sup>e</sup> actions of these captaines, and giue them great charge for the training of their bands, and set down an order in what sort, in what place and time they shall practise and exercise their companies, amongst whom if he finde any default of furniture or otherwise, let him make certificate thereof to the Generall or high marshall, that the same may be redressed. For the better performance whereof, immediatly after he enters into his charge, let him keepe a booke and roll of all the bands committed to his gouernement, with the names of their Captaines & officers, and to examine and peruse whether they containe their full number of men, and be sufficiently furnished with horse, armour, castocks, paces, lances, with their Pennons of their Captaines colours, guidons, trumpets, & such like necessaries as appertaines to their warlike profession, otherwise to procure supply. Let him dispose his seueral sorts of weapons & horsemen into seueral troups by themselves, y<sup>e</sup> barbed horses in one part, the lances in another, the light horsemen in another: the hargabussiers likewise seueral from the rest, & here in he doth resemble the Sergeant maior, for y<sup>e</sup> he is to be directed from y<sup>e</sup> General or high marshall, en<sup>e</sup> as he, to dispose these bands according to their order & resolution. The Lieutenant must appoint which bands of horse shall go to y<sup>e</sup> watch, to be vancouriers, and to scoure the passages, & must accordingly prouide that they which watch y<sup>e</sup> night may rest the next day & night, & others that haue rested supply their places, in such sort, that fresh men may alwaies be supplied in their places, & the wearied to take their rest, for neither man nor horse, without their conuenient rest can continue any long time. So sone as y<sup>e</sup> trumpet shall sound in the morning, so make ready to horse, he shall forthwith repaire to the Generals tent to know his pleasure, & then immediatly to set forth his Generals Standard, & cause all the horsemen forthwith to repaire to y<sup>e</sup> place, & as euery captaine shall come, he shall cause them to put their bands euery one after his standard or guidon into a certain number of rankes, that the said Lieutenant may redily at any sodain draw forth any number of any sort of horsemen that he shall be required by the General or high marshall.

In

In the morning he must giue notice & warning to such horsemen as he entendeth shall watch y<sup>e</sup> night ensuing, to y<sup>e</sup> intent they may feed & spare their horses y<sup>e</sup> day, & likewise rest themselves, that they may the better be able to do such seruice, as they shall the night following be enioyned. When the high marshall goeth to view the ground to encampe vpon, it is this Lieutenants dutie to select a conuenient band to attend vpon his person, and to appoint such a company as may after ward take their rest, and feede their horses til such time as he shall deliuer them to the scout master at night, who then shall enioyne them what to do all the night after, & shall also deliuer them the watch word. This Lieutenant, as a coadiutor to the lord Marshall and Sergeant maior, ought all the day whiles the battels march, diligently to note the orders of euery band, & if he see any disorder, forthwith to send for the Captaine, & cause him immediatly to see it redressed. At night when the army entreteth into the campe, the Lieutenant shall will cause the horsemen to keepe the field, until all the footmen be encamped, then may he enter with his bands of horse orderly, causing first one band to enter & all the rest to keepe the field, & when they haue their conuenient place, then another band to enter, and so orderly to place themselves, wherein the Lieutenant is to foresee y<sup>e</sup> last bands be not worst lodged, but such conuenient place left, as they haue no iust cause to complaine: and this is to be obserued in places of halp, otherwise they may lodge abroad amongst y<sup>e</sup> Villages for their greater ease. Let him giue order that y<sup>e</sup> Couriers & scourers come not out of the field, till y<sup>e</sup> trumpet sound to y<sup>e</sup> watch at night, nor the neither, until such time as they shall perceiue the scout & Sentinel, to be come from the camp, & to haue taken their places in the field: then may they returne into the Campe. It is his part likewise to assigne a sufficient number of horse to attend on the forrage master, to guard & defend the forragiers, which horsemen must not come out of the field until all y<sup>e</sup> forragers be returned to the camp with the forrage water. When shall these horsemen rest & not watch, neither that night, nor go forth for vancourier all the next day. He must appoint a reasonable conuoy of horse, for the suttie of such as bring victuals to the campe, to see that no violence or iniurie be offered them, & so order the change of his horse in these seuerall seruices, that some be not ouerburthened, and others spared ouermuch, but the matter so indifferently bled, that men haue no cause to murmure or repine.

G 2

In

In making of Squadrons with horsemen onely, or in a day of battell, he must send out the Vargolateares, light horsemen & such like to discover, or to begin the service first, then to divide the Lances and men at armes into diuers troupes & squadrons, and with such distance following one another, as one may rescue another. The sides of these mainie squadrons should haue one rank of Argolateares, a pretie distance off. In this sort if one Squadron happen to be broken, yet shall another make head vpon the enimie, while they may retyre & troupe againe, which is the onely safetie as wel of Horsemen as footmen: And albeit in the day of service it is the part of the high marshall him selfe, to giue order in what sort, and with what troupes the charges shall be giuen or receiued: it is also the Lieutenants part as well to giue his aduise, as also to be a leader in all these actions.

He ought therefore to take great regard to the ground where he meaneth to giue the charge, for if he charge in troupe, the falling of a few horse in the foremost rankes may disorder and sole the whole troupe. Before the front of his owne footmen let him neuer giue charge, for it hath bin seene that horsemen being repulsed, haue bene forced in vpon their owne footmen, & disordered them. Let the horse therefore charge vpon the flanke of the enimie, and diligently attend if by any accident they can perceiue any breaking or opening in the side of his enimies battell, and then sodainly to charge that breach: for as horsemen are inferiours to wel ordered footmen, so vpon any smal disorder, they carrie with them victoery. And for that in our age there hath arisen diuers & sodaine effects not looked for, wrought by the god and well guiding of horsemen, I thinke it good somewhat more ample to delate vpon this point: specially, as I said befoze, in appointing out a place, apart from the battell & ranks, wher in the Cavallarie may be ranged: to the intent they may with good scope freely and fitly turne and run with their squadrons and ranks in charging the enemy, in taking charge likewise of them, and in all other enterprizes, considering that the troupes of horsemen in retyring or turning round, do often disorder and break their owne infanterie, either through the discommoditie of the place, or through the want of the good and warie guiding of them.

Contrariwise at other times, by their aduised and speedie service, a small number of horsemen, well bent and better guided, haue

haue bene seene to enter very couragiously into a great battaille of the enimies footmen, and either for that they were slenderly flanked with Vargabuziers, or by the disaduantage of the ground, or being disordered by meanes of some error, or through some other sinister chance, or by meanes the said battaille was guided by vnequall or vncertaine pale, or through the naughtie indeuor and diligence of rawe and vnpractised souldiers, or in going through a streight place or passage of water or otherwise, horsemen haue easilie disordered and broken their battailles, and all the rest of a whole armie. But yet are they not able to encounter with a well ordered & square battell of pikes, if their couragious and well ranged rankes keepe their arraie, and when the horsemen charge doe clinge and sarrie verie nere together in the fore rancke, and set shoulder to shoulder with their pikes well couched and crossed, bending them in both their handes straight befoze them, and their followers at their backes, laying theyr pikes ouer their foregoers shouldiers, and so stand at the push, besides the shouldering of the fore ranks together, hauing pitched their pikes vnder one of their feete in the ground, they stoop and bow downe so lowe with their bodies, that their followers may easilie come to service behinde their backes, where some doe vse to place the light armed pikes, who amongst some nations for want of best plates of Iron, vse sand leather, paper, platcoates, iackets, &c. For a gorget, thicke folded kercheles about their neck, a scull of Iron for a head pece, and a Venetian or leather Shield and Target at their backes, to vse with their short Swords at the close of a battaille, and in a throng. The Squadron of pikemen, hauing couched and crossed their pikes best high, closely sarrd together, are as hard to be pearst with horsemen, as an angrie Boeapine or Hedgehog with the end of a bare finger. Wherefore to counterpowe a maine square battaille planted in that order, it is good to vse the aide of Vargolateares, who must first scale the fronts and ranks of the battels, and then being seconded by the lances & men at armes, breake their arraie and whole battaille. In the execution whereof it is good to vse the Ruffes order, which somewhat differs from the Frenchmans fight, for he encountering the enimie cannot indure any troupe to be nere his long stretched rankes, because of breaking his course: but the retire fighteth in this sort.

When the rectie is approached néere enough vnto the enemye, the first ranke doth aduance vpon them, and when he hath discharged his Pistolet, he doth run still in forward (as dooth the French, who doth still pursue his point) but moze thort on the right hand or on the left, according vnto the place where he is, and so is also speedely followed by the second ranke which dooth the same. When the third followeth the second, to giue the charge as soone as euer he seeth him departed that stood before him: all the rankes following one another in such maner, euen vnto the last, the hindermost runneth, (they fighting with Pistoles onely) so to come vnto their foeriders, they warding all along one at anothers backe. And so much as it is impossible, but that when they do present themselues, some of them or else their horses be slaine: Therefore so soone as euer one of the foremost ranke is seene to fall downe, he that is in the second ranke, directly behinde him that is departed, or else disabled, must take his place, and the next behind him in the third ranke, must furnish the same voide ranke wherein he was in the second, and so the rest in like order, so that they alwayes make their foremost rankes of the most assured: for in all things, namely in leates of armes) the beginning is of greatest moment: some to bzeak the front of armed pikes do vse to cause the men at armes dismount, and in their complet armoz, to charge them with their launces.

Some others hold an opinton, that the maner of the Germans is best, who keepe alwayes their maine tropes standing, & cause only one ranke from the front to charge, & the same being repulsed, to retire to the taile and backe of the standing trope, & then an other to charge and retire to the taile & backe, as the former, whereby they maintaine the whole trope in full strength, vntill they see the footmen sway or bzeake, & that their hozsemen enter. When presently they back them with an other ranke, & those againe with an other, vntill they see cause either to follow with the whole trope, or to slaine: & this is thought to be the surest and most orderly forme of charging of all others: notwithstanding the accustomed wheeling about of the ruffers, which they vse with their whole tropes, euerly one after an other, giuing the enemye a volée of their Pistoles.

For execution of iustice on such as are offenders in any bands of hozsmen: albeit in some countrie it be vsed, that euerly Cap-  
taine

taine of an hundzed men at armes, may call vnto him certaine of the chiefe of his band, and heare and determine all causes and offences by any of his bande committed, yet surely I holde it moze conuenient, that all matters concerning life be harde by the Lord high marshall, who may cause to sit with him the said Captaine, whose souldior is to be adiudged, and such other of the said band as to him shall seeme méete, and the souldiour condemned to death, to be executed by the said band, euen as the footmen are: and by the same kind of weapons that the offenders vse. In conclusion it is therefore requisite, that the Cavallerie be well payde, punished, and kept in good order: that they haue sufficient hozses, armoz, weapons, péce, and launce: that they be ready in all exploits, both in Sentinels, Couriers, forrages, marching vpon theyr gard in time of suspect, and without suspect, in skirmish and in fight. But so that my onely meaning was to set downe a discourse for footmen, I therefore say that the infantry be the veines for warres, and the Cavallerie the flesh. Hozsmen be likewise good to make couriers or roades to discover, to charge with speed vpon the enemies back or flanke: to make an imbucade in a roade or otherwise, (which are rather to consist of geldings, the of stoned hozses, for doubt of naying.) To make waye for a passage thzough the midst of the enemies with money or munition behind them, for the succour of a forresse besieged, for the passage of waters, in bzeaking the course of the water, for the more easie wading thzough of the footmen, to pursue the enemye that is put to flight, to carry and conuey secretly behinde them footmen, both with péces and pikes, who ought to carrie their pikes lowe, & their matches close, vntill in this sort vndercouered, they be come vnto the place appointed: For these and such like exploits hozsmen be necessarie in a Campe, being a great cominoditie and reputation to a Prince, and sharpe spots to a well ordered armie.

The office of the Scoute maister, or Maister  
of the watch.

This Officer must take a solemne oath to be true and iust in his office, & nightly to attend vpon the General, to receiue the watchword, the which at the setting of the watch he shall secretly deliuer

deliuer vnto the Captaines, conferring first with the Sergeant Major General, and shall diuers times proue the same watch, as well to see if they do pe not, as if he finde them in such fault to accuse the to the higher officers, who ought to appoint theyr punishment according to the tenor of the articles of martial lawes.

He ought diligently to view & note round about the Campe, all the places of suspect, where the enemies in the night time might approach, that he may accordingly afterwards dispose of his Scoates, and therefore he should attend vpon the high Marshall, at such time as he goeth to make choyse of a meete plat to incampe on, and then to speake his fancie touching the conuenience or inconuenience of the seat, in respect of one place for the scouts. So soone as the Trumpet soundeth to the watch at night, he must immediatly repaire to the Lieutenant of the horsemen, requesting him to assigne a competent number of horsemen to attend vpon the scout that night, and then must hee giue them charge vpon paine of death, that none of them abandon theyr places, vntill the discoverers be come into the field, and haue taken their places.

For the setting of the watch and order how to plant the same, peruse my two first booke of directions, specially in the Corporals, Sergeants, Lieutenants, and Caualliers of S. Georges squadrons orders: neuertheles if it shall be thought good of those that gouerne, this maner ensuing may now and then be vsed.

First he shall set the ring watch round about the impalement of the Campe, viz. a Halberd or Bill, a Bowe, Hargabuse or Musket, and a Pike, and euerie one a pike length from another: then without them, certaine little tropes, five or six in a trope, of footmen of different weapons, viz. shot, pikemen, and short weapons, and these tropes alwaies to send forth a couple, whereof a Hargabuzier alwaies to be one, and these to prie and harken what they can discern. Again without this sote scout, other small tropes of horsemen, five or six in a company, & these likewise to disperse theselues abroade, to discover what they can. And if they happen to see or heare any thing, presently to report the same to the sote scout, and one or two of the sote scouts to repaire to the Scoutmaster, who must (if it be matter of importance) open the same presently to the high Marshall. Besides all this in time of suspect it were requisite that a stand watch be main-

maintained within & about the ordinance, but because that appertaineth not to the scoutmaster, I let it passe. It is requisite in the long cold winter nights to change and relieue the watch at euerie houres end, in autumn & the spring, at y end of an houre and a halfe: and in the hoate season of summer at two houres end, but these things must be ordered more or lesse as the scoutmaster and other principall officers shall thinke meete, for the better preservation of the people, and the accomplishment of the seruice, sending forth rounds euerie houre. In the morning so soone as the trumpet soundeth to the reliefe of the watch, he must repaire to the sayd Lieutenant's tent, there to receiue by his assignment, a conuenient number of horsemen to scoure that day, and then shall he giue order vnto some, to ride to the highest hills to view round about what they can espie, and others to the valleys and other obscure passages, woods, or such like, and to ride one from another a good distance: so as if one chance to be surprised by the enemy, yet the rest may escape, and bring intelligence therof: & so soone as the scoutmaster shall receiue any aduertisement by the Courriers, he shall forthwith repaire to the high Marshall, and informe him of euery particularitie.

In the placing of his night watches & sentinels, he must vse great consideration, first in setting his little tropes or bodies of the watch, in some places of strength, so as they may be able, when the enemy shall approach, to make resistance, and defend themselves, vntill such time as the campe may put themselves in armes: and besides these tropes, he shall giue order that two or three shall walke forth one waie, and as many another way, and if they happen to see any matches light, or heare any noyse, forthwith one to repaire to the body of the watch, and so to the scoutmaster, and the other to stay till they can more plainly perceiue what y matter is. And it shall be alwaies good to match some Hargabuse or Musketee, together with pikemen, as well that they may be the better able to defend themselves, as also by the discharge of their hargabuse, to giue warning to the rest, if any of them should happen to be surprised by the enemy.

This officer ought to be both diligent & painefull, considering how great a charge dependeth vpon these scouts, no lesse the preservation or destruction of the whole campe, and therefore he ought continually both day & night, either himselfe in person, or



by some other of great trust in his absence, from time to time, to peruse and examine the order and demeanour of these Scouts and courriers, giving order for reformation of all that he shall finde amisse, and so soone as he shall receiue any intelligence, forthwith to aduertise the Lord High Marshall. This officer in the auncient Romaine warres was neuer in vse, for they would neuer admit any watch without the trenches of their campe, but obserued this order, that every night one third part of the armie remained armed, the other two thirds took their rest: and this armed part they deuided into 4 quarters, and appointed to euery watch of the night one quarter, which went and walked continually about the trenches of the Campe, to heare and see if they could discerne any noise or stirring nere the Campe: the other three quarters resting in the meane time returned to the place of assemblie. And when the first watch of the night was ended, then departed an other quarter to the reliefe of the watch, and the quarter that had watched returned to the place of assemblie. And thus they continued relieuing the watch vntill day: so that the enemy could neuer approach their campe, but they found one third part in armes, who were able to keepe them play, vntill the rest had put themselves in order. But after that Militarie discipline grew to corruption, & that souldiours neglecting honoz and securitie, would no longer abide the hardnesse and the seueritie of the auncient discipline, they inuented this kind of forren scout, that the paines of a few might leaue the rest at ease. But what mischiefe hath and may thereby ensue, histories will shew vs, and common reason may soone teach vs. Therefore in time of danger and suspect of the enemy, I would notwithstanding the forren scouts and left sentinels, vse this Romaine diuision and strong order of watch.

The office of the high Marshall of the field, or  
maister of the Campe.

Sundry famous wryters affirme, that a Prince doth no lesse execute his kingly authoritie & dignitie, when with a sincere iudgement and equall ballance, he doth chastise offenders, and oppresse malefactors: then when by good gouernment and clemencie herewardes the meritorious, and exalts and raiseth by those

those that be good. Therefore the Knight Marshall of the field, being created with entire and full authoritie in his office, ought to prouide, that assured iustice be ministred in the armie, and that he heare and determine controuersies, and punish disorders no lesse then is vsed in the gouernment of a well ordered cittie, state or kingdome, since that in an armie there commonly be such men of excellent qualitie, that they for the most part merit the gouernment of great kingdomes and monarchies. For this respect he ought to prouide himselfe of Auditors and Pretors of sufficient excellencie, and that they be of good practise, learned and such as be resolute in the knowledge and rules of iustice, neuertheless conformable to the stile and order vsed in the lawes and exercise of armes, and that can thereby vnderstand, decide, and giue sentence, touching all causes and martial lawes: since that men of warre are not bound of dutie to obserue any thing, but that which is ordained them of their Captaine generall, being principally grounded vpon naturall reason, and the same to be published by open proclamation, that the whole campe may haue notice thereof: and to obserue and haue in reuerence the holy Cannons of the Catholike Christian lawes, the which in respect of the cause, and casualties of death, is chiefly to be respected.

He must prouide himselfe of a prouost, which hath knowledge and skill in that profession: and that he haue about him a conuenient number of coadiutors, and amongst them one to be the executour of iustice. It is very requisite he take order, that the said prouost with his solowers & familie, yea euen he that doth execute iustice, that is to say, the hangman, go in their apparrell ciuilly and not abiectly, as some in sundry countries are accustomed, to the end that they may be accounted of reputation in their office, and obeyed as of dutie is conuenient: for the ciuilitie of habite and apparrell amongst the greatest part of people, carries and procures a certaine credit and respect, although besides their office ought publickly to be pronounced with a generall proclamation vnder paine of life to be obeyed.

He ought to prohibite all souldiours, except the sergants (who for diuers respects ought to haue their weapons at hand) that they do not carrie their weapons in the campe at what time soeuer

ever as pikes, halberds, muskets, or caliuers, or any others, thereby to prevent and avoid as much as may be, the slaughters and treasons which in like places men of naughtie nature are accustomed to worke one against another. In respect whereof it is necessary for him to banish all quarrels, & by all possible means to barre the rehearfall and paraites of discords in time of war, the which carries with it great disquiet and hinderance to the principall intent and dutie, which a discrete and practised souldiour is bound vnto: for there hath bin found many which haue departed from their owne nations, cities & houses, and followed the warres, not with minds to do seruice, nor to become expert in the exercise of armes, neither to become of account amongst other men of valoure, whereby they might after wards merit a conforable recompence equall to their vertue and valiancie: but they are caried thither with a determination to live as nere as they can licentious: or rather to kill their fathers enemies, to reuenge some priuate quarrell, &c. and so execute traitorous slaughters, in place of obeying and susteining iustice, whereas it is the part of all good souldiours, to maintaine the due execution thereof, and to punish the contemners.

Merchants, victualers, artificers, and such others, as bring wares to the campe, he must take order that they be courteously & fauourably vsed, to the intent that they may vtter their wares willingly & safely, forseeing that they be paid with good money, vsing towards them a louing countenance, & procuring them a conuoy & sufficient gard, as well for their coming as for their departing, to the intent they may with good wils, be occasioned to returne the more speedely, & so remaine altogether satisfied, without suspect of being robbed or spoiled of their wares and libtories, for which he ought diligently & sufficiently to prouide, since that by their meanes an armie is made abundant of all things proper, commodious and necessary. Furthermore he must make and set reasonable prizes vpon the victuals, in such sort as the souldiours be not tayed and pinched, neither the victuallers so vsed but that they may be honest gainers (which I meane of things necessarie) as bread, beere, corne & wine, with such like: but touching other things lesse necessarie, he must suffer them to sell as they can, that is to say, all sort of stuffe & cloth for garments, saddles, & furniture for hozles, spicerie, armour, and such like merchandize.

After

After that he hath verie well consulted, and taken aduise (being accompanied with worthy Cavalliers and old souldiers of sound iudgement) and hath visited, oueruewed, wel discovered & considered of al plots and places where the campe is to lodge or be planted, he must with great reason & iudgement depart the lodgings & quarters, as I haue sene duely obserued vnder Don Iohn of Austria and the Prince of Parma. When the campe is to make long abode in any place, he ought with a capable & conuenient diuision measure the same, either by view of eye, by cord or other ingenious order, after an experimented sort & good iudgement, as partly appeares by figure hereafter ensuing.

The Artilerie, munition and victuals must be lodged in the strongest and safest place of the camp, every one of them hauing their ordinarie gard. Let him haue a vigilant respect that about the munition and powder, there be no fire made, neither any hargabusters or light matches approach nere vnto the same, but such souldiers as are armed with other sorts of weapons, as pikes, halberds &c. to auoid the perillous scandale of fire.

Then must he appoint out and ordaine quarter by quarter, and specially that euerie partion may haue a commodious plot of ground for an assembly or an Alarme, the which continually ought to be void, and not occupied of any qualitie of person, but guarded both day and night with a good Corps de gard, for their securitie. Note that the said place of armes be so lotted out in euerie quarter, that from thence the front towards the enimie, may be commodiously succoured, and that souldiers may conuey themselves thither with all expedition, together with their Ensignes, & there to range themselves in battel: & therfore this place ought principally to be capable of such effects, & either by nature or art, to be repaired & strengthened with trenches, towards the face & front of the enimie, provided that the souldiers be not pestered for want of room, nor by ouerlarge space, the camp not sufficiently fortified: & therfore must he haue a note of al the names & numbers of bands of hozemen and footmen; and according to that proportion, cast their ground and scope of encamping together with all their munition, prouision and carriages.

Encamping with an armie in the field, at the siege of a towne &c. I haue sene quarters for euerie nation first appointed out, & then seuerally euerie band lodged in forme of battel, the pikes

in the middle, and the shot in the flankes, and at the head of every band and lodging of every company, the Ensigne planted and stucke in the ground, towards the face of the enimie or citie, hauing an equal & iust proportion of ground before the Ensignes & betwixt them & the trenches, to range themselves in battell, which must be betwixt the Corps de gard of the private Ensignes, and betwixt the other generall Corps de gard for the whole campe, whether they be placed in trenches, or otherwise for the sake of the whole campe, & that plot of ground wherein the assembly of armes is to be: but these directions I will hereafter set downe with greater diuersity, that each man may make choise according to his fancie. Moreover he must appoint out the market place for victuallers & merchants, in a large, safe & commodious place for all the campe. He must likewise appoint out for every quarter in some place out of the way, a place for men to visit the nature, & to kill cattle & beasts, & for victuallers to roast meate in, to the intent that the rest of lodgings may be kept cleane, and infection of aire auoided, a general benefite for health.

In most manner of encampings, he must so diuide his quarters as every nation may be placed by it selfe, and every Collonel by himself, & dispose the horsemen & footmen distinctly in sunder, that every quarter may haue his place of armes, & market place for victuals: touching which, he ought to take great care of equall distribution, that he may entertaine & gratifie with special commodity, every nation that serues in the army. And that not only every sort of weapon haue their seuerall streets, but also every quarter & company in the campe, haue his seuerall charge of Artillery. It is most necessarie y<sup>e</sup> he take great respect to lodge the army in a strong situation, whereunto he must principally haue a vigilant eye, as a thing that consists in great practise, long experience & in many considerations. He must likewise haue respect that the place be of good aire, & that about all things there be good store of water & springs, and specially of wood in time of winter. Likewise that in the country adioyning, free from the enimies inuasion & danger, there be forage for horses & straw for soldiers to lie upon & make their cabbines withal, & that the ground be sandie or drie where they encampe, &c. Touching all the conditions belonging to encamping, he must take a very speciall & circumspect care, taking view of the same diuers & many times with

with great consideration. It belongs vnto him likewise to learne out and know the most commodious way, that is most fit & expedient for the armie to march & be conducted through, whether it be in the ordinarie & high way, or ouerthwart & a trauesse the countrie, and that they do march that way whereas the passage is most commodious, & must assigne to every battell a guide or two to conduct them the best and most easie wayes.

Let him provide that the Pioners accommodate & make easie, euery soule way, strait passage & encombzance, and to cleare the wayes before the great ordnance: whereupon one partie must attend, and therein to performe so much as is conuenient, without hauing respect to the commoditie or losse of any particular person, or to the prejudice or discommoditie of y<sup>e</sup> countrie wherein you march: which things do lesse import, then the perill, the hinderance & reputation of an army being an assembly of men of so great valour & importance, for whom the Marshall ought alwayes to procure with all possible diligence, all commodities and advantage to keepe the armie in reputation, and to maintaine it sound & lusty, to the intent that with an vndoubted presage the Generall may promise himselfe victorie in due time and place.

Together with the other aduertisements, for the commodity & enjoying of victuals & merchandise, he must yet further care to lodge his armie in such a place, that as nere as is possible, it may be an impediment to the enimies provision or commodity.

He must ordaine that the footmen and horsemen of every nation be placed & diuided in such sort, that by their orderly lodging, the seat of the campe may be well garded, easily and frankly defended.

Besides this, it is necessarie to dispose and plant the Corps de gard, and the bodie of the watch about the Camp in places most suspected, and best for the purpose, which in the day must consist of horsemen, & in the night of footmen, to y<sup>e</sup> intent the army may at all times remaine without feare of sodaine surprisles, or be assaulted vnprovided: which thing as it is of marvellous molestation, so sometimes it may be incredible prejudiciall.

When the strength and force of the soldiers and all the camp following, are constrained to take armes, and to put themselves in squadrons either in the day or night, by occasion of the enimie or any other necessarie accident that may happen,

the

The high Marshall of the fiede ought diligently to provide, that the Artillerie, the munition, and the victuals be safely kept with their ordinarie appointed gard.

The like care ought he to haue, that vpon any sodaine surprize, Camifado, or sally out of a besseged towne, the gard about the campe and in the trenches be strengthened and renforced with a new supplie for the more sattie of the munition, tents, cabbens, and other baggage: and therefore the said gard ought at the first to be planted in places strong by nature, or else fortified by art. These things he must perfozme with a certaine diligent mode, whereby not to displeas any person, that either particularly or principally, either is or hath bin inuested with y<sup>e</sup> like charge, as the Sergeant Maior, the general of y<sup>e</sup> Artillerie, or the Lieutenant of the whole armie, besides other private Colonels and Captaines, &c. which aduertisement I only giue by the way, for that he may endeuour himselfe to please euerie one, although the authozity of his office doth expzessly extend resolutely to command in things pertaining to the sattie of the field and campe.

Let him moreover call continually to memozy, that the art of warre doth require a sharpe and exemplar manner and condition of chastisement, therby to remaine the better obeyed, y<sup>e</sup> which thing is of principall & great impoztance: for since that in that place his Prince doth not only fight for the dearest thing he hath, but also for the health of his proper person, and all his subiects, it behoues him to be readie and perfite in such causes.

Besides, it is a most necessarie thing for him to note, that there is gathered together in the Armie, great numbers of people of diuers customes, of sundrie ages, and of minde and disposition not alwayes correspondent. Therefore he that thzough insolency wil not obserue the lawes of armes, so impoztant as nothing more in the honozable exercise of Militarie profession, let him be constrained to obserue due obedience, thzough hozrour & feare of punishment.

To the Marshal of the fiede, it appertaines to take order euerie day, sone after the Diana, that the Conuoyes, Ascoltes, and safegards do appeare befoze and come to his lodging to receiue their Commission, not only for the safegard and assurance of the merchants and victuallers, which come and go from the campe, but also as wel for the baggage of y<sup>e</sup> footmen, as the hozsemē, who are

are of custome enforced to provide both for forrage, from time to time, and for manie thinges necessarie for prouision for their hozles & other beastes, cabbins & things needful to be vsed in the campe. These conuoyes, safegards & Ascoltes ought to be of hozsemen, and guided by a Captaine of great discretion & experience.

When the armie shall remoue, the high Marshall must first giue order to the master of the Ordinance, that he set forth the Artillerie, with all the carriages, munition, &c. then the master of the victuals and cariages after wards.

He must after giue order to the Sergeant Maior, in what sort he will haue the battell to march that day: and to the scout-master which way he will send his vauncerours to discouer if all be cleare, who must from time to time giue intelligence what occurrence he discouereth. The high Marshall when he goeth to view the ground where he intendeth to incampe, may by his authozitie take such number of hozsmen, as he shal think conuenient, and then is he to consider that there be nigh at hand, as I said befoze, wood, water, and forrage enough for the Army: and if he intend long to lodge in that place, then must he make his campe the larger, and prouidently consider, that euerie Regiment haue his conuenient place, that the tents and cabbins be not pitched and made nigh the ring of the campe: that there bee large places of assemblie within the campe: that it be well entrenched and fortified, for which respectes it is requisite that the Marshal haue knowledge in Geometrie & Arithmetike, and that he haue in a readinesse sundrie plats, models & formes, as partly I haue annexed hereunto, whereby he may be able to resolue for any number or situation, what forme or quantitie of Campe is most conuenient, and presently stake it out, assigning due place for euerie Regiment of footmē & hozsmen, carriages, Ordinance, Munition & euerie particularitie, as hereafter shal more plainly be declared. For lodging of footmen, especially in a running campe, I haue partly in this chapter touched, but for lodging of hozsmen it is not amisse to imitate the Rutters, who commonly alwayes lodge in such closes as they finde environed with trees or quicke set hedges and ditches, placing their hozles in due order round about the fiede, two paces one from another, with railles betweene them, leauing al the void ground in the middle for the Captaines tents & cabbines for the hozsmen. So that in

that sozt in a field of two or thre acres, I haue seene a guydon of Kutters very well lodged & commodiously, with rattles or poles betwene their hozles, and bowes about them for the winde or heat, some with haies ouer them to keepe them from the raine: their saddels, bridels, and al other their furniture, hanging vpon poles readie by them, neatly kept & blacked, their mangers also befoze them: for all such necessaries the Kutters carrie with the in their wagons and carriages, besides little wheale barrowes to carrie away their dounge, so that their campe is no lesse cleane & orderly, then a princes stable. A faire stree they alwayes leaue betwene their owne cabbines & their hozles: They haue certain tropes of their seruants, whom they cal their knights, and these troupes alwayes attend, that so soone as the Marshall hath limited their quarters, they depart immediatly to the next woods, for poles, bowes, stakes and other necessaries to build their campe, stables, and cabbines: other go for forrage, that befoze the army appzoch, the lodgings alwayes are in a readines. To euerie 12. Kutters comunly there is allowed a wagon with 4 hozles, or to sire a cart with two hozles, and their knights are about one third part of the number of their hozlemen. The Lance knights also encampe alwayes in the field verie strongly, two or thre to a cabinet, their pikes & armour standing vp by them in a readines, & so orderly placed with streets, so conuenient & cleanly preserved, that their campe is no lesse holesome then strong: I haue seene sire thousand of them lodge in sire or seuen acre of ground, which propoztion differeth not much from that of the old Romains.

The high Marshall, as well for the ordering of scouts, as all other matters of impoztance in the campe, is to giue order, and at the setting of the watch his trumpets ought first to sound, and then all the residue of the trumpets in order to answere euerie one to his seueral quarter, and in the morning al the trumpets should assemble befoze the Lord Lieutenants tent, and there to sound the reliefe of the watch, but no man must vpon paine of death remoue from his charge, vntill the warders be come out, then may euerie man depart to his rest.

In the fielde at a day of service, though there be a Generall of the hozlemen, yet is it the place of the high Marshall to serue there as chiefe, & to appoint in how manie tropes the hozlemen shall

shall diuide themselves, and which shall charge, & which stand for their rescue, and to prohibite, that vpon euerie cric amongst the footemen, of march Cauallarie, or forward hozlemen, they doe not remoue, disband or giue charge, but onely by knowne counter signes and watch words from the Generall, that inuasions may be made at due times and when necessitie requires, & not for euerie trifle or priuate danger of some persons, for otherwise their disbanding out of time may arise to be ruine and losse of an armie in a day of battell.

If any prisoners be taken in the fielde, they ought forthwith to be enrold in the Marshals booke, and then if any make claime to any other mans prisoner, the Marshall as iudge to determine who shall haue him, and for euerie prisoner brought into the Marshall sea and enrolled in the Marshals booke, his fee is eight pence: he is also to haue of al booties taken in the fielde & brought into the campe the third part: but as well for this as other his fees, they are by the General to be limited at the beginning, as shall be thought reasonable. Finally the high Marshall ought to be a man of such perfection, that he know the duetie of euerie inferiour officer, and be able to refozme their misdeeds, and that of his owne knowledge. The handling of small matters must be committed to his Mouost, who ought to be a chosen person, alwayes retaining the greater causes, and such as concerne life to be heard by himselfe, who for his greater reputation, and to be knowne from other officers, he should haue a Coznet or guydon borne befoze him in the fielde, as I haue seene the pages, seruants, wines and women in Don Iohn of Austria his campe, attend in no lesse good order, then any well gouerned band.

And for as much as it appertaineth chiefly to the high Marshall to gouerne the execution of the Militarie lawes, I therein refer him to my first booke, wherein I thought it more necessary to be set downe then in this place, so the intent the souldiers may dayly heare their dueties, and not to offend through ignorance: vnto which lawes some thinke it necessarie, that not onely euerie Captaine and Collonel should be swozne, but also after the old Romaine manner, euerie particular souldier at his entring into pay, or at the consecration of the Ensigne, to make his oath ioyntly vnto them both, for which cause the Romaine warfare was termed *Militia Sacrata*,

The oathes that euerie officer ought to take of what office soeuer he be.

Of the Pretor.

**T**he Pretor, Aduocate or Coadiutor to the Marshall, being learned in the Martiall, Ciuill and common Lawes, shall take his oath giuen him by the Generall, & shall sweare by almighty God, that whatsoeuer he shall iudge, ordain, or determine in court or out of court, that he shall keepe it close & secret to his liues end, & that he shall be true and iust to the Lords, and that he shall execute iustice to his utmost power, and that he shall not during the wars take any gift of any man, for any matter in controuersie to be tried before him, but shall vse indifferent iustice to al mē, without respect of persons, friendship or malice, as God shall helpe him at the dreadfull day of iudgement.

Of the Prouost Marshall.

**H**is oath is likewise giuen by the Generall, that he shall see al faults duely and according to the lawes punished in al offenders, without regard or respect of persons. That he shall in the market place set vp a paire of gallowes, as well for the terrour of the wicked, as to do execution vpon them that offend by lawes. Also that he shall set on al victuals brought to the market a reasonable price, that the seller & the buyer may reasonably liue by it, and that he exact nothing behind his duetie of any man, that he neither vse extortion or bribery, that he let no prisoner take of the enimie, or offender otherwise to his witting escape, with other Articles contained in his office, at the discretion of the Generall, the which he must be swozne vnto. The master of the watch, the Purueuer for victuals & the fire master, must likewise take their oathes as it is here set downe in the 4. 5. and sixt booke of these Directions.

The Clarke or Notarie of the Court.

**T**he Notarie shall be swozne before the twelue Judges of the court, that he shall truly and without fraude exercise his office, not adding or diminishing, for friendship, malice or bribery, any thing deliuered to him in court or elsewhere.

to the hinderance of equitie and iustice, & that he precisely keepe vndefaced and vncancelled all the recozds, and the whole actes and dealings of all men hanging in the court, whether they be tried or vntried in controuersie, and not determined, and that he keepe and conceale all things which he heareth in the court, either said or done, as ended or determined, secret and close to his liues end, and if he do otherwise, he shall haue the lawe, prouided for such an offendour.

Of the common Cryer of the court.

**H**e shall take the like oath before the Judge, to doe truly and faithfully his office, at all times, and in all places, according as the Judge shall commaund him, so that through his diligence there be no fault found in him at the court day, and that he keepe close and secret all such matters as he shall heare handled by the Judges vntill his liues end, as God helpe him.

Directions for the marching of an armie, whether it be inferiour or equall to the enimie.

**W**hen an armie doth march nere vnto the enemies battels, the high marshall, Sergeant Maioz, and Collonels, ought to vse diuers considerations. First a Prince or his Generall, not being of like force to the enimie, or that he is not willing to give battell, because he will not hazard all his state and armie in one day into the hands of fortune, he must prouide (specially if he be inferioz in Canalarie) that he march through a countrie that is rough, full of hills, and where the situation of the ground is of such aduantage, that the enimie haue not any motion to assault him. But when he cannot shun the same, then must he prouide at leastwise, to enter into the action thereof, to his great aduantage, and almost with a certaine hope of victory, the which will not arise to be difficile, if he can apply the aduantage of situations to serue his turne.

In marching, I would wish him to haue one part of his light horsemen so nere the enimie, that euery houre he may haue notice what way he doth march, notwithstanding in a countrie where mounts and hills be not fauourable, but that of necessitie you must march through plaines and champaigne countries, and

that the enemy is nere at hand, and that it is very hard to shun the battell, I iudge it not farre amisse, to accept the battell, so that you be of greater strength in horsemen, for being the stronger, the journey in no respect is to be fled, for so much as horsemen yeeld the greater part of the victorie, when they bee well guided.

Charles the fifth in Germany against the protestants armie, by reason of the commoditie of the ground, for the most part, did not lodge his army further off from his enemies, then commonly the shot of a Coluerine, although he was far inferior in number. Nevertheless that order cannot be alwayes used when an armie is in the champaine countrie, for he that is in plaines and is not desirous to fight, he must march from the enemy 9 or 10 miles, and must determine to fortifie himselfe at every lodging, in such sort that neither the enemies Cavallarie or Infanterie, may be able in battell to enter into his campe, if not with great difficultie.

A meane fortification is sufficient in a champaine countrie, chiefly when it is to be made with speede, which beginning of fortification, when you meane to continue, may encrease and be made as strong as you see the case doth require. When an armie doth march in plaines and champaine countries, & that it comes to that point, yf it is able to have any little riuer or wood which may cover one flanke of the said armie, you must go about with all diligence to take this advantage, for that the same will arise to be of great importance. Provide ever that the bagage and the artillarie go continually on the contrarie side to the enemy, or at leastwise in the midst of the armie. The squadrons of men at armes must as appertaineth, flanke the battells and ranks of footmen towards the enemy.

It is a laudable custome to divide an armie into three squadrons, that is to say, into the auantgard battell, and arreargard, and that every day they do exchange, making of the auantgard the battell, and of the battell the rearward, & it is requisite, that every one of them haue his necessary number of horsemen & Bargalotes, & that each one be disposed and placed in his due ranke. Order must be carefully taken, that amongst the ranks of the footmen, vnprofitable people be not intermedled, but that all the baggage be in a place deputed for the same, vnder the Pro-

uosts

uosts guidon. Also that amongst the squadrons of the horsemen, there be no vnprofitable horses nor other impediments. The Ritters Cavallaries vse herein a meruailous strict order, and extreme diligence, which verily doth merit to be imitated. It is a commendable thing also, when the light horsemen be in such sort deuided and dispersed for discouerie of the countrie, and espying the actions of the enemies armie, as that they may continually returne and giue intelligences of the enemies demeanour. Whereby if neede require, comoditie and leasure may be had to provide for fight.

If the marshall of the field haue no experience of the countrie himselfe, it is requisite that he carrie such a personage, or two, the Cavallier with him, as he knowes to haue experience, that with them he may consider well of the situation and place, whether he is to march with his armie through plaines, by or nere hills, or in valleys that haue hills on both sides, or by or nere to woods, or alongst or nere a riuer. It is also requisite yf the light horse, as well for the discouerie of the enemy, as otherwise to take the breadth of the straits & passages go before, and to make certificate, that according to the breadth the host may march.

And put case that one part of the way be 15. foot broad, the host shall be made to march by five in a ranke, because every footman will haue three foote in breadth from shoulder to shoulder, and five foote in ranke betwixt ranke and ranke, and one foote for euerie person, so that 21 foote in breadth and 2 myles in length, will containe an armie of ten thousand. After the same reason, whether there be 20 or 30 thousand footmen, according to the measuring of ground by the foote, they may be set in order very easily, neither can the leader be deceiued, when he knoweth how many armed men every place can containe: and after the same order as the place doth enlarge, he must enlarge the ranks, causing part of the shot to goe before the aray, and part behind, and others to go in succours of the horsemen, that go in viewing the passages, and the ambushments, with the whole doings of the enemy: and let an other part be for vanguard & retrogard to the aray, to be able to serue them at need, and an other part to go alwayes at the flanks of the aray, the which if there be differences, shall serue as a countermure against the enemies horsemen. And if they be men at armes, they must march on both the sides

of

of the battell, and also of the Hargabuzies that do march by the flankes of the battell, and the light hozsemen to serue for scoutes both befoze and behind the aray.

There must be likewise abundance of Hponers and labourers to make places plaine, and to cast downe ditches & bridges, and to make defences and other necessarie things that are required in marching, the which must be garded by your light hozse and shot, and when you depart to faigne to go to some other place, then that you go to, and if there be no men at armes to appoint to euery regiment certaine Hargabuziers to serue on hozsebacke, the which may serue in stead of men at armes, and when occasion serues to serue on foote againe, wherein the Cavaliers of S. Georges Squadze, may very well be imployed. It is requisite that all souldiers follow their leaders, and carrie a great care and diligence in marching, to the intent that by sudden assaults they be not at euery step to arise in a rumour, and confusedly to runne here and there, and the one to go contrarie to the other, and finally comming about them, not to be able to do any thing of any profit.

For which cause thou oughtest to march with thine armie through euery place in battell ray, whereby the souldiers may be made more apt and speedie to make a voyage, and quicke and ready to resist if need shall be. The Souldiers according to my former directions, being trained to follow the Ensignes, & apt to obey commaundements, and to behaue themselves valiantly according to their place and order, if thou march in a plaine countrie, it is requisite that thy pikes march in battell ray, retiring thine armie into a little space, so that by the straightnes and facilitie of inlarging, thou be not constrained to extend thy selfe into too much length, which fashion of marching seemes to giue occasion and power to the enemy, to assault commodiously their aduersaries, & according to the occasion to endamage them, he beholding the commoditie to defend themselves to be taken away, forasmuch either with more largenesse comming against thee, the which is wont to happen both the hoznes being compassed, it is like that he shall easily disorder thee, and put thee to flight, or els giuing charge on the flanke in the midst of the battell, hauing already broken thine order, sodenly stop thy men from being able to go forward, being closed in the arayes of the ene

enemies. Wherefoze minding to retire in a maine battell, and to returne to resist, they shall be able to do little good, as those that haue bled such a maine battell, which for want of thickenes is nothing strong, but altogether weake. Also if the enemy should charge thee on the rearward, thou shalt be brought to the very same necessitie, because thou shalt be so compassed, as thy fronts shall not be able to succour the last, or the last to succour the first. For the which thing it is alwaies better and more sure and easier to gouerne the bands that march close and square, the thin and long: especially, forasmuch as to an army that marcheth long, oftentimes happens that of some thing seeme doubtful and vncertaine, there groweth suddenly feare and terroze, because sometimes it hath chaunced, that men discending from high and hillie places into the plaine, to places expedient and open, and the foremost seeing the last of the same band by a great distance to come after, supposing themselves to be assaulted of some ambush of enemies, it hath bene seene that they haue suddenly turned to fight, & afterwards no otherwise the enemies gone together by the eares with their owne companions. If as I said before, the vittuales, carriages, and munition, be not conducted in the midst of the armie, but if otherwise the hindermost part should be garded & defended of the most valiant souldiers, as in the fronts, because that at vnawares may happen many things, thy light hozsemen going befoze, discipheryng and espying whers they may passe, hauing occasion to passe by mountaines, wodes, places closed with hils, and most great desarts, because the enemy many times will lay an ambush prouilie by the passage to assault his aduersarie, who taking little heed thereof, haue bene easily broken and brought to bitter decay. The which ambush, if the conductor by way of explozatures shall foresee, with a little paine, hauing prevented the snares of the enemy, may win a worthy name of politike prudence, and likewise saue his armie from imminent ruine. And as for the plaines, thou with thine owne eyes maist see a far of, forasmuch as in the day dust moued and lifted by into the aire, doth by the mouing and stirring of the enemy, and in the night the fires and flames signifyeth the campe to be there. When thy men are to be conducted, and not fight, thou oughtest to remoue by day, if peradventure some thing do not constraine thee, for the which thou thinkest it good  
to



to go in hast to come befoze thine enemy, where in deed for such occasion thou must remoue in the night, so that thou know it may safely be done to fight with the enemy. Lead thy men not in hast, but softly, & inforce them not to make two long a iourney, forasmuch as labour taken befoze a man come to fight, is sene very often vainly to consume and waste the strength of their bodies. And marching in the country of thy friends, it is needful to commaund thy souldiers, that in no manner of wise they touch or spoile any thing, but rather altogether to refrain, considering that souldiers hauing weapons and liberty to doe what shall please them, will fauour nothing, especially for that the sight of things that please men, out of doubt is wont most dangerously to lead ignorant and vnwarie men to desire them, and with the sweetnesse of robbing to entice them to all manner of mischēse: whereunto if thou prouide not, thy friends & thy confederates, for very small occasions will become enemies: notwithstanding, the country of thy enemies, thou shalt suffer thy souldiers openly to destroy, burne & consume, because by the dearth of victuals & lack of money, wars are wont to deminish and be extinguished, and contrariwise through abundance and riches, they are nourished and mainteined: but first befoze thou suffer thine enemies country to be destroyed, thou shouldest giue aduise to thy enemies, threatening them what thou wilt do, if they will not yeeld vnto thee, for by the perill of the misery prepared, & the feare of the ruine looked for, oftentimes constraines men to grant many things, the which at the first by no maner of means had bin possible to haue brought thee to passe: but after they haue once receaued the hurt, they will make little account of thee, and dispise all other things, as though thou couldest do them no more harme. Albeit if thou knowest surely that in the country of thine enemies thou must carrie long with thine army, suffer to be taken & spoiled those things only, which thou seeest wil not be greatly profitable vnto thee: but the same which is to be thought may be preserved for thy commodity, commaund openly to thy souldiers, that they forbear. Hauing made ready and set in order thy men, tarry not long in thy owne country, nor yet in thy confederates, least that consuming all thy prouision, it seme not that thou art of greater hurt to thy friends than to thy enemies, but rather conduct thy army speedily into thy enemies country, whereby it

be fertile and abundant, there may be taken at thy neede most plentifully those things that thou list: but if it be otherwise, thou shalt cause to be knowne, if thou seekest to prouide most lovingly both for thy wealth & profit of thy friends. Besides this thou oughtest to care with all diligence, that marching or incamping by sea or land, victuals may safely be brought, forasmuch as by such means the merchants with all diligence will bring all things, which for the vse of an army wil be necessary. Moreover when thou must passe by straights, or march through rough & hilly wayes, this is it convenient, principally for the preservation of thy things, to send befoze thee on horseback & on foot, for the keeping of those places, rocks, or inclosed waies, least the enemy taking it befoze thee, may both let thy passage to thy great hinderance & losse: the contrary thou ought inforce thy selfe to do, when thou understandest the enemy to passe, the like thou hast not onely to take heed for receiuing harme, but to inforce thy selfe to turne against the enemy those deceits whereby he thought to deceaue thee. And when thou purposest to go against him, it is requisite to prouide befoze him, & at vnawares oppresse him: so diligently thou must find means to let & endamage him euery way, if thou vnderstandest that he intends to pursue thee. The marshall of the field must foresee, if whether soeuer thy army both retire, or by ordinary march & iourney, that the captains that lead distinct & seuerall bands, must with mutuall diligence by horsemen, riding to and fro, measure the march of the army, neither suffer the ensignes to go any thing out of sight. The auantgard to obserue with what pace the middle battell marcheth, and so likewise the middle battell the rearward, that euery battell may be ready at hand for all sodaine incursions of the enemy, & to succor the battell which is circumuented, & finally fight if a man be forced, or aduantage doth serue, with all the power of the army vnitied together.

Of the order of the march in figure, and of the placing of the weapons.

Forasmuch as there are diuers formes of marching, according to the ground and diuersities of mens minds, I haue onely thought it good to set downe this figure ensuing, as very necessarie, and of great force for an armie, with his whole carriages to march

The art of Warre.

march withall: Wherein I partly imitate the antiquitie, as otherwise the order now used, as for example. Let there be an armie of 40000. footemen, and 14000. horsemen, according to the proportion set downe, there is allowed to euerie 100 footmen 40. pikes, 50 shot, and 10 halberds, the which falls out to be 20000 shot, 6000 pikes, and 4000 halberds, the which with the horsemen are to be deuided into three battels. The forward, the mainward and the rearward battell: In the forward shall be placed 10000. footemen, whereof 4000 pikes, 1000 halberds, and 5000 shot: In the front of the forward battell are to be placed 2000 argaloteares on horsebacke, 1000 launces: When there are to be placed the pioners, who are to be garded with 500 shot of each wing. The Sergeaat Maioz must giue in charge, that these pioners beate downe and make plaine the ground before them in their march, in such breadth as occasion shall serue to make your battels, or necessity procure, or the straightnes of the place permit. Also the Sergeaat hath to appoint these pioners, that if they be charged by the enemies, hauing their weapons to defend themselves amongst the shot, or otherwise to retire themselves by the wings of the battell, and to be placed at the discretion of the Sergeaat Maioz in the battell: Next after these Pioners shall follow 2000 shot, next vnto the shot the carriages of the first battell, with all the impediments: Then followeth 2000 pikes, and 1000 halberdeares, with the Chiefetaine in the midst, then followeth the other 2000 pikes, after the pikes the carriages of the merchants and puruepours, who must by the appointment of the Generall march armed, for the defence of their charge: the follow the other 2000 shot, and if you passe through any dangerous places, it is requisite so to march, as you may suddenly bring them to a quadrant battell, sending alwayes before 100 argaloteares on horsebacke, and 100 lighthorsemen, for vauntcurriers, to discover and view the straights and passages, as otherwise to take their breadth, and to giue certificate to the officers, whereby they may make their march thereafter, and to view that all places be free from ambushes and traines of the enemy, whereby the armie may the more safelie and quietlier passe, sending from the frontes as necessitie requires, ayde to assist the Curriers: When must follow your maine battell of footemen, the which is 20000. footemen, whereof 10000. shot, 8000. pikes, and



Place this battaile 252. follio, at this marke \*\*\*\*\*

H3  
RO

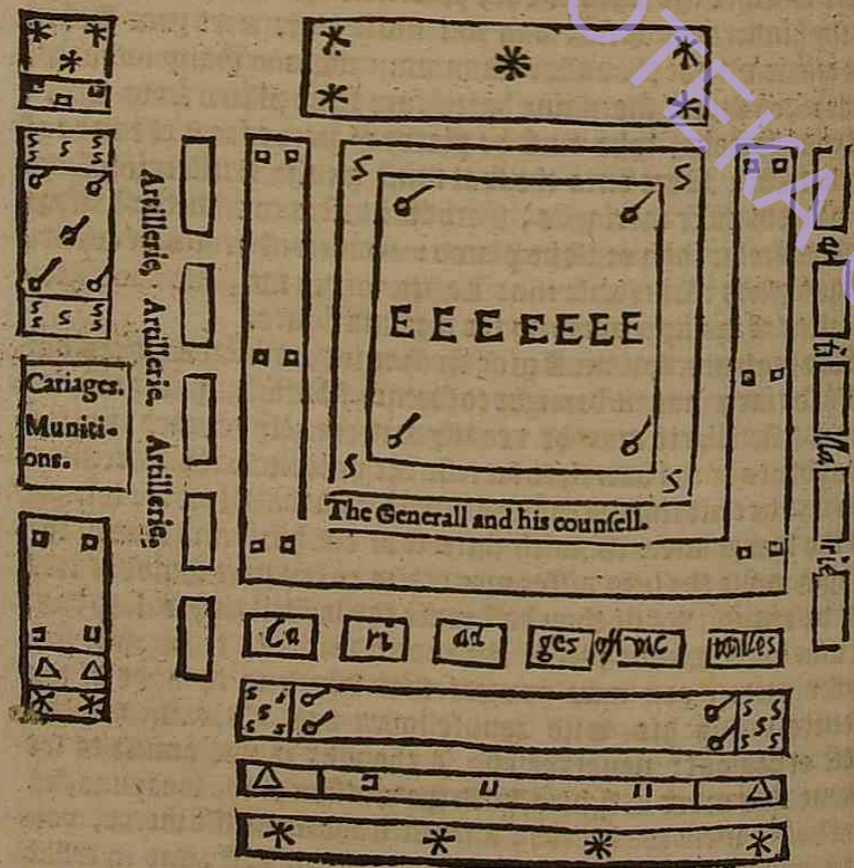
and 2000 Halberds, the which are to be divided in this manner: next unto the shot of the bowward battell, must be placed the carriages of the maine battell with bagge and baggage, who must be placed by quarter: then 4000 pikes, next the pikes 2000 halberds with the General in the middle, then the other 4000 pikes, after the pikes the carriages of the merchants, as appears by this figure.

The weapons of the rearward battell to be divided as in the bowward, who must send forth courriers from the rearward, to espie whether the enimie doth prosecute thee to take advantage to thy hinderance or no, and you must place next your shot in the rearward one thousand Lances, and 2000 Hargolateares, your 10500 shot of the maine battell are to be placed as wings in all your battels, who must be placed 16 paces from the sides of the battels: Next unto the shot must go the Artillerie of the fælde with their carriages, with like distance on both the sides of the battels: then must be placed 1000 men at armes, of ech side of the battels: Likewise 1000 Lances of ech side, and 2000 Hargolateares, as appeareth by the foresaid figure.

The high marshal must give in charge that in al dangers untill y footmen may be brought to some of battell, that the Ordnance & Artillerie may be readily and equally divided into the two hornes of the battel, to terrifie the enimie to the uttermost: and it to be that the enimie wil attempt the battel on the wings, let the Hargolateares with the rest of the horse and shot in the wings make the like difference: thus every part shalbe of like sort defended, untill thou hast made thy battell as pleaseth thee. If this order cannot please the march withall, through a suspected place, you may practise that which is thought of the Generall and his wise counsellours and Captaines to be most expedient: neverthelesse I thought it not amisse to set downe this order in figure, with the division of the weapons, for that being well considered, and with advise well ordered, you may make presently as many battels as you will, and in what order you please, even by hand without any great trouble or toile.

The proportion of this march ensuing, was used of the Earle of Hesse, & the duke of Saxonie, in their wars against the

the Emperour Charles the fifth, their maine square battell of pikes being flanked, fronted and backt with shot, was empaled with Lances & men at armes, with a battaillon of Argolateares on horsebacke in the vaantgard. The whole battell enuironed with Artillerie, and the carriages of the campe and munition on the side from the imperialist, garded with a Squadron of pikes, shot, and lances. The victualles betwixt the rearward and the main battel, empaled with horsemen, being backed with lances and Argolateares.



The

The order how to encampe an armie, and to accommodate the same according to the situation of the ground.

In respect that no resolute rule can be given to the marching of an armie, since that the same so often alters and changes, according to the quality of the ground, the quantity for distance, or nere bying march of the enimie, & diuersitie in minde of the Marshall or Generall. I will therefore procede to speake of the lodging of the Campe, of his situation, forme, compasse, and fortification, and the commodities and orders which be thereunto necessarie. First touching the situation, I say, that being in a plaine farre from hils, it is necessarie to haue a riuer or such quantitie of water, as the same may commodiously nourish a whole armie, and the Cavallarie: and provide that from the adjoining woods, if there be any, you may fetch al sort of wood and fewell for the necessitie of the armie: and that likewise provision be had of hay and straw for the horsemen, for these be the things that an armie cannot carrie about with it. When provision is made of these necessaries, the armie must be so well fortified as the enimie cannot raise the same.

The greatnes and circuite of the lodgings must not be so great, that the same may be an impediment, that a man cannot at all times vse succour and defence when neede doth require: neither ought it to be so little that the armie cannot haue al his commodities & necessarie places for victuals, and for merchants which follow the armie. Touching the forme & fashion of the campe, y same must be such as these portraures following make shew, accomodating y same neuerthelesse to the situation of y ground.

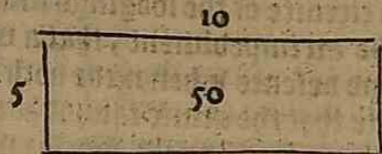
In the portrature is described and drawne all the quarters, with their places, the lodgings for the Generall, and the wayes to issue out, wherein for further instruction, I will somewhat delate, but he that is more curious, let him reade Ieronemo Cateano his example, out of whom I toke this.

If it chance that an armie must lodge amongst mountaines in a ground full of hils, & diuersly situated, as in vales, croupes of mountaines, riuers, woods, caues, & such inequalities: If the Marshall be a man of experience in the wars, and know how to lodge an army, he may serue his turne therewith greatly, & with smal laboz fortifie his camp & lodgings. As for aboute all things he must be careful y he do not plāt himself in any a place, y the same be:

be subiect to any hill or other height of ground that doth command ouer him, from whence the enimie might looke into his lodgings, and so batter the coytines of his rempares: For if the enimies armie occupie this mountaine or hill, the Generall of the campe shall be constrained to dislodge his armie, and so be forced to fight to his great disadvantage.

To lodge an armie in the field, with his due measures being of good proportion, according to the situation of the ground, you must know how much space of ground must be had for the quarters of the Cavallarie, and how much for the Infanterie, with their places of armes, strætes, and other necessaries for the service of their lodgings.

For example, suppose there is a campe of 60000 fighting men, that is to say, 2000 men at armes, 10000 light horsemen, & 48000 hargabusters, Cozlets, light armed pikes and halberds. To euerie man of armes I giue 7 lodgings, and to euerie light horseman 4, and euerie lodging as well of men at armes, as light horsemen, shall containe 50 foote of earth, that is to say, five foote large, and 10 foote long, as this figure declares.



To euerie souldier on foote, with a seruant or a page, I will giue 64 foote of earth for his lodging, which shall be 8 foote in square, as this figure declares.



This done, you must accommodate the place for the General, from 200 to 250 foote, euen in the midst of the campe, and from that place shall be drawne two straight strætes, which shall crosse ouerthwart with two straight angles, right in the midst of the place for the General, which two strætes shall be called the principall strætes, and shall serue for a Corps de gard towards the enimie.

Suppose that next of all I will lodge 500 braue souldiers, or gallant warlike Caualliers next to the Generals lodging, to

euerie one of these I will giue two lodgings, that shall be of the same circuit that the men at armes are.

Besides this, about the Generals plot, I will draw two plots, the one for the market and the other for victuals, which two shall containe as much ground as the lodging of the volentarie Caualliers of the Generals traine, or Caualliers of S. Georges Squadze to the General, which termes doth best fit all such Gentlemen, as volentarily follow the campe, to see service & to court the Generall.

About the plots and lodgings of these Caualliers, I will draw out a stræte of 25. foote, about the which shall be the quarters of men at Armes and light horsemen, with their strætes and void places in the midst.

About the horsemens quarters shall be drawne a stræte of 50. foote large, round about which is to be compass out the quarters for the foote men, with their strætes and void places.

At the end of one of the principall strætes towards the enimie, you must draw out the generall place of armes, which must containe as much at the least, as halfe the lodgings for the foote men do containe. In one of my figures I haue not drawne this void place, for that I haue set the trench so farre from the lodgings, that going about the campe within the circuit of the said trench, you may easily make a generall place for armes.

In one corner of the campe towards the enimie, must be appointed a place for the munition of the Artillarie, and at the backe of the campe must be drawne out the lodgings for the picquiers, and for the cattell that is killed for the nourishment of the campe, with other necessarie things.

The victuallers must lodge in the void places of the quarters, and all along the strætes. The trench must be made far distant from the lodging, from 200 to 250 foote.

The place of Artillerie is comprehended in the Calcul of the foote mens quarters, and shall be distant from the trenches that enuiron the lodgings, from 200 pace to 250 at the least, as in my description it is drawne 250 foote distant. The places necessarie to be accommodated for quarters for souldiers to do their naturall businesse in, and to lodge other persons which are lodged in the said quarters, may be taken in that which is superfluous in the place of Armes; for in drawing the circuit of the said place,

I have allotted out sufficient substance of ground.

In my draughts I have set downe 50 fote for the largenesse of the streets, by reason this largenesse ought not to passe the bord of the largenes of the place of armes. This 50 is not so much to forme and frame the largenes of the streets, as to make large by the said 50 fote, the length and largenes of the place of armes for the quarters, whereby they be enlarged. The rattel for victual for the campe, the pioners and other vnprofitable things shall lodge at the backe of the campe, as I said befoze.

The victuallers lodge in the place of Armes in the Quarters, and all along the principall streets.

The whole portrature hereof may be more apparent by my figures following, for the better understanding whereof, these Characters shall direct.

A. Signifieth the place of Armes in the quarters both of horsemen and footemen, and the place for the Generall which is in the midst, together with their streets and the space which is betwixt the trenches and the lodgings.

△ Signifieth the quarters of the light horsemen.

□ Signifieth for the Lances and men at Armes.

⊞ Signifieth the quarters for the footmen.

M Signifieth the place for Munition.

C Signifieth the Cavalliers lodgings nere the Generall.

Mar. Signifieth the Market place.

V Signifieth the place of Munition for victuals.

P Signifieth the lodgings for the pioners and for rattell, which is kild for the nourishing of the Campe, and other things vnprofitable that follow the Armie.

F Signifieth the Fort upon the hil, for the defence of y Camp.

The portrature of these three Campes following, may serue for example to draw any other by, in what situation or of what number of men so euer they be, so that it be well practised.

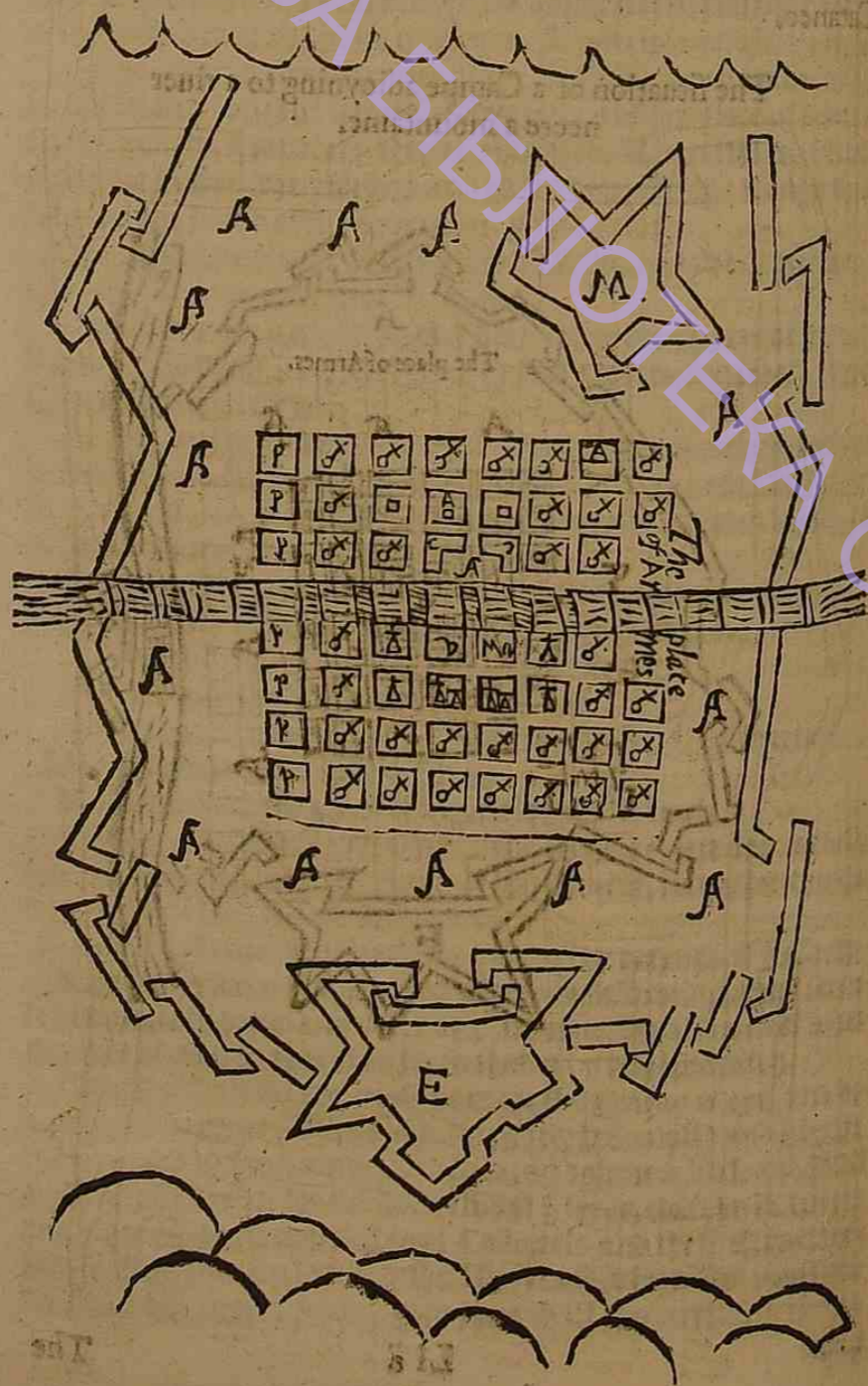
The Marshall for the most part must by rache of eye, and by quicke iudgement, allot out and readily set downe and impart the lodgings of the Campe, and sticking downe a little rod with a paper fastened in the nocke or clift of y same, thereby in euerie due place allot and appoint to al Collonels and their Quarters, whose Marshals for lodging shall in like sort by bellet limit out the place for euerie band, and thus shall the arriuing armie finde

finde the quarters, places, streets and other things alwayes in readinesse, but if you will more Arithmetically worke, reade Cataneo.

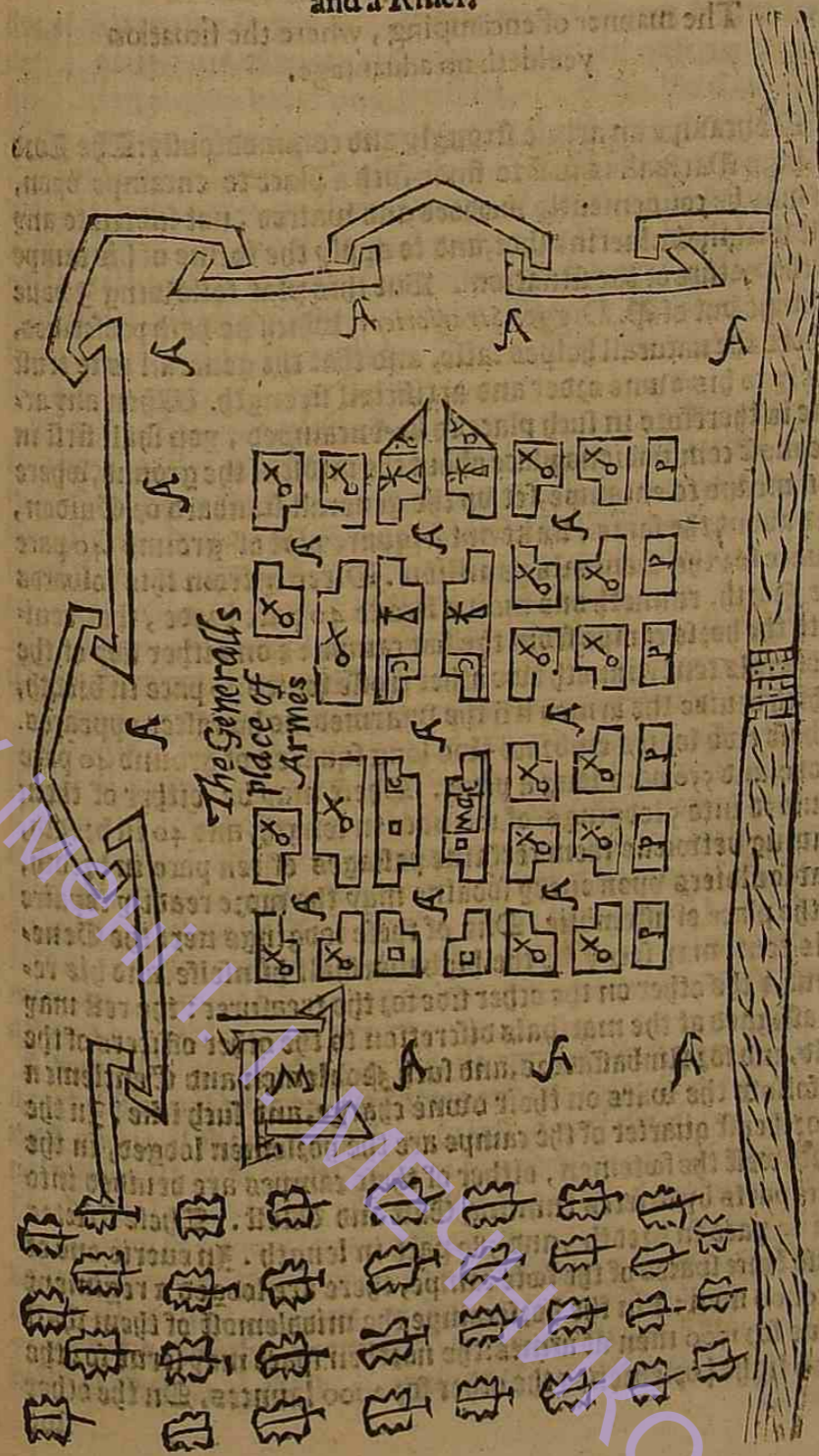
The situation of a Campe adioyning to a riuer nere a mountaine.



The situation of a Campe in a vale betwixt two mountaines,  
the one is capable of a Campe, the other not,



The situation of a Campe aiouning vpon a wood  
and a Riner.



The manner of encamping, where the situation  
yeeldeth no aduantage.

To encampe an armie strongly and commodiously: The Lord  
high Marshall is first to finde such a place to encampe vpon,  
as may be conueniently waded and wated, not subiect to any  
hill within Culuerine shot, and to apply the forme of his campe  
to the nature of the situation. But this plat following I haue  
drawne out of M. Digges *Stratoticos*, which he hath prescribed,  
where the naturall helpes faile, and that the generall is to trust  
onely to his owne order and artificiall strength. When any ar-  
mie is therefore in such place to be encamped, you shall first in  
the most commodious place about the midst of the ground, where  
you meane to encampe, set vp the generall Standard or Guidon,  
and about the same, take out a square plot of ground 40 pace  
square for the Generals pavillion. Directly from this towards  
the North, runneth one maine stræte 40 pace brode, that deui-  
deth the horse campe from the foot campe: & on either side of the  
Generals tent runneth two other crosse waies, 30 pace in bredth,  
which deuide the armed frõ the vnarmed, as hereafter appeares.  
These two waies embrace two long squares of ground 40 pace  
brode, and 550 pace long a pæce. These may be either of them  
deuided into 5 lodgings of 100 pace in length, and 40 in bredth,  
leauing betweene them certaine passages of ten pace in bredth,  
that souldiers vpon euery sodaine may the moze readily repairs  
to the place of assemble. One of these lodgings next the Gene-  
rals tent, may serue for the high marshall himselfe and his re-  
tinue, & the other on the other side for the treasurer: the rest may  
be assigned at the marshals discretion to the other officers of the  
field, and for Ambassadors, and such Noblemen and Gentlemen  
as follo to the wars on their owne charge, and such like. In the  
North east quarter of the campe are the horsemen lodged, in the  
northwest the footemen, either of these campes are deuided into  
three parts by strætes running East and West. These strætes  
are 20 pace in bredth, and 580 pace in length. In euerie one of  
these three spaces of the foote campe, there are lodged a regiment  
of 10000 men: & in the horse campe the middlemost of them shall  
serue for 1500 men at armes: the northern space may serue for the  
2500 light horsemen, & the other for 2000 launces. On the other  
side

side of this maine stræte are the lodgings assigned for the lea-  
ders or gouernors of euery regiment, and their officers: euery  
space being 30 pace brode and 170 long. A is for the Captaine  
of the launces, B for the Captaine of men at armes, and C for  
the Captaine of the lighthorsmen. Likewise D E F for the lea-  
ders of the three principall regiments of footmen, the which you  
may distinguish with the vsuall names, vaward, battel, & rere-  
garde, calling the vaward that which lieth next the Generals  
tent, and answereth to the Launces: the battell that which an-  
swereth to the men at armes: & the rereward the other against  
the light horsemen.

Euerie of these principall Regiments you may againe diuide  
into five smaller Regiments by strætes of ten pace brode, run-  
ning North and South, so haue you 15 lesse Regiments in the  
foote Campe, and 5 a pæce in euery of the horse Campe, and eu-  
erie of these Regiments are 100 pace brode, & 170 pace in length,  
and shall containe euerie of them of footemen 2000. of men at  
Armes 300. of Launces 400. of light horsemen 500. with their  
Collonels, Captaines, Officers, &c.

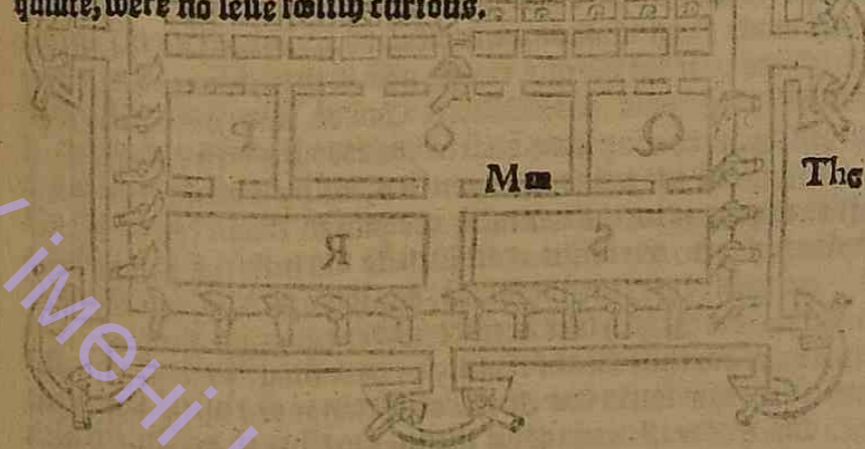
These Collonels & Captaines of men at armes, may be lodged  
at the head of their Regiments, as you may behold in the campe:  
These marked with G are for the Collonel of footemen, H for the  
Captaine of light horsemen, I for the Captaine of men at armes,  
and K for the Captaine of the Launces. So remaine their Regi-  
ment of 100 pace brode, and 150 pace long for lodging of the sould-  
iers, which may by small strætes of five pace brode, be diuided  
into as many spaces as there are severall bands in euerie Regi-  
ment, and then the harbinger of euerie band must set downe the  
officers and souldiers of their bands.

These last diuision of bands I haue omitted, because in so smal  
a plat it would breede but confusion, and the thing being of it self  
most plaine, it should be tedious to rest longer thereupon. This  
only I would wish the Marshall or campemaster to obserue, that  
his shot be lodged toward the outside of the campe, & they may be al-  
ways ready at the ring of the campe vpon any alarme, & which he may  
do by diuiding the uttermost seuen regiments into halfe, as you see  
by the prickted lines, leauing the seue spaces marked with L for the  
7000 shot, & the other noted with M for 7000 pikes, and the other regi-  
ments marked with N, shalbe the lodgings of the 16000 short weapons.  
Thus



Thus in the worst moity of your campe, are al your armed, both horsemen & footmen lodged. Now the other moity must serue for the lodgings of the unarmed, as Pioners, Carters, Carpenters, Smithes, Butchers, Victuallers, & all other sorts of Mechanicall artificers, together with a large place of assembly for y<sup>e</sup> souldiers to retire vnto, to put themselves in order vpon any alarme, and also to exercise themselves in sundry sorts of activitie. You shall therefore from the southside of the Generals pavilion 600 pace southward, extend out your first maine streete of 40. pace broad, and crosse him againe with an other street, running east & west 360 pace distant frō the southside of the Generals pavilion. This streete neede to be but 300 pace in breadth. Againe extend out the second narrow streets, that run parallel to the first maine streete, till you come to the crosse streete last made: so have you y<sup>e</sup> your place of assemblie 330 pace broad, and 540 pace long. P<sup>l</sup> shall be appointed for the munition, and officers attendant on the artillery, Q the market place: round about this market place may be lodged the Butchers, Bakers, Cookes, and victualers of all sorts. About the munition quarter, besides the officers and Gunners, may the Smithes, Carpenters, Whelewrights, & labourers, attendant on the ordinance be placed. About the place of assembly may be the tents of all such as furnish the campe with things needfull for the souldiers, as Armourers, Taylers, Shoemakers, and all such like artificers. Yet remaine there two long squares of earth, either of them 540 pace long, & 190 pace broad: here you may settle the Carters & Wagoners with their horse and Dren, for the carriages themselves must alwaies impale that part of the campe, that is not otherwise by nature and arte fortified. In these two quarters also may be lodged the pioners and all other sort of labourers, that aptly cannot or ought not be placed in or about the former courtes or quarters of assembly. Last of all, you shall describe 600 pace distant, from all those regiments, and their quarters already set downe. The ring of the campe, causing some prettie trench and baumure to be throwne vp, placing your ordinance vpon the same, as in this figure is described, and betwene the ordinance your carriages: and this may suffice, if the enemy be not very puissant, or nere at hand: but if you suspect the arival of the enemy, or that you know him stronger in the field then your selfe, & would therefore encampe surely

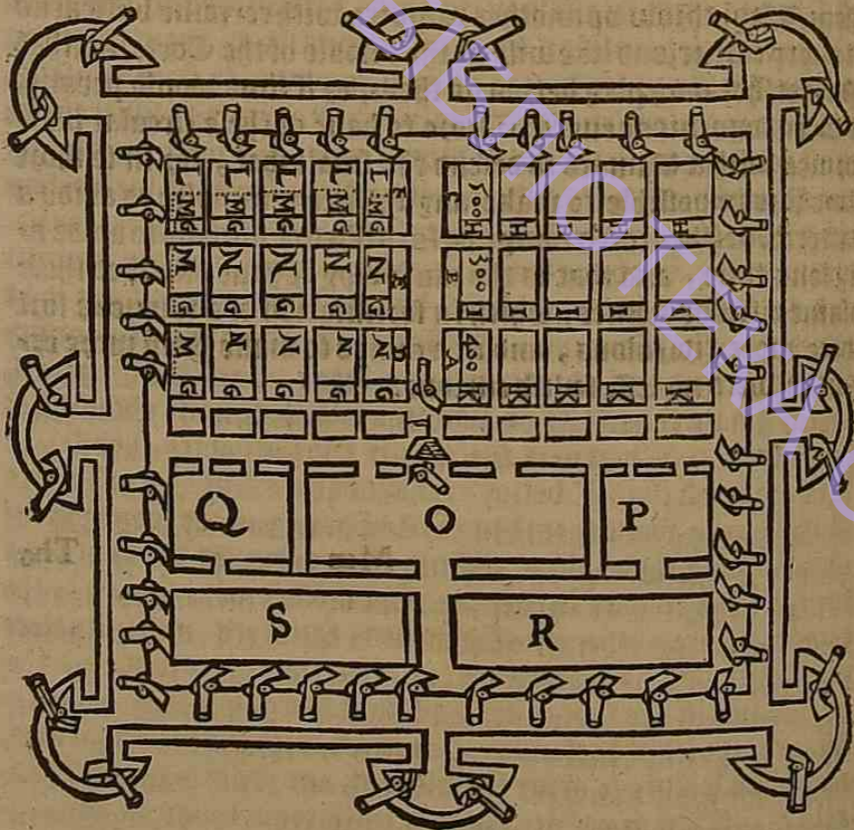
surely, vntill further aid come vnto you: then shall you without this ring 100 pace distant, cause your pioners and souldiers (for vpon such an occasion he is not worthe to beare the name of a souldier that will not set his hand to the Spade) you shall cause them, I say, throw vp another rampire with certaine bulwarks at every corner, and likewise in the middle of the Curtaine, that Basket shot may play betwene them, or if time would permit, it were conuenient euerie 12 scoze to haue of these circular plate formes with a Chamure to defend the small shot, for in so short time it is impossible to make any sufficient rampire to abide a batterie, neither can a campe be furnished of victuals to abide any long time, and that is the cause why I haue described those plaine circular formes, which in fortification of a towne or fort were more ridiculous, and in a campe to make them more requisite, were no lesse foolish curious.



M

The

The forme and proportion of  
the Campe.



The

The forme of another Campe.

In the second booke of Marshall discipline, Maister Steward, as I take it out some Italian translation sets downe this maner of Campe, which I will briefly touch. After the returne of the discoverers and espials, he must according to their relation, march to such a place where he may encampe, to stoze himselfe, and hinder the passage of victuals to his enemies, wherein he must conferre with the chiefe Purueyour, and with the Sergeant Maiors and others, whether it be fit for the fight, well defended, wholesome in aire, drie vnder soote, plentie in water, wood, and medowe, and haue free passage for forrage, victuals, munitions, &c. If there be any pallace, hall, or house, the same is to be allotted for the Generall, otherwise a fit proportion of encamping, so as the men at armes may lodge about the Generall, which I note thus. □. The Launces and light horse about them thus noted. △. Then next Merchants and victualers, thus M. V. The pikemen thus, ○. being next about thē. The Vargabuziers in the square about them thus S. Thē haue you the lodgings for the artillarie, thus DD, or a Gun. Then next the Bulwarkes & the trenches 80 pace in breadth. The crosse broad wayes to the campe 30 pace, wherein Marchants, artificers, and victualers may lodge, but his speciall drift is, that vpon any suddaine Canonicado, whilst the shot, pikes, and light Vargolateares, make resistance, the light horsemen, Launces, with the men at armes, may haue leasure to arme themselves, and repaire to the Generals Paullion or pallace, where with their Launces and charging staves in fronte on soote, they are in the manner of Pikemen to trie the vttermost of their strength, to saue their Generall and the armie, together with their owne honour, and with their Launces encounter courageously with the enemies Pikemen, who being already wearied with their former encounter, shall be able to maintaine the fight vntill the footemen of their part being refreshed, giue a new onset and put their enemies to flight. Thus would he haue the footmen, the horsemen, the marchants and purueyours, the craftmen, souldier to souldier, back to backe, and ridge to ridge, making the lodgings double, vpon the banke of the ditche, and in the curtained he may place artillarie round about, and besoze it for safetie, or els with the carriage



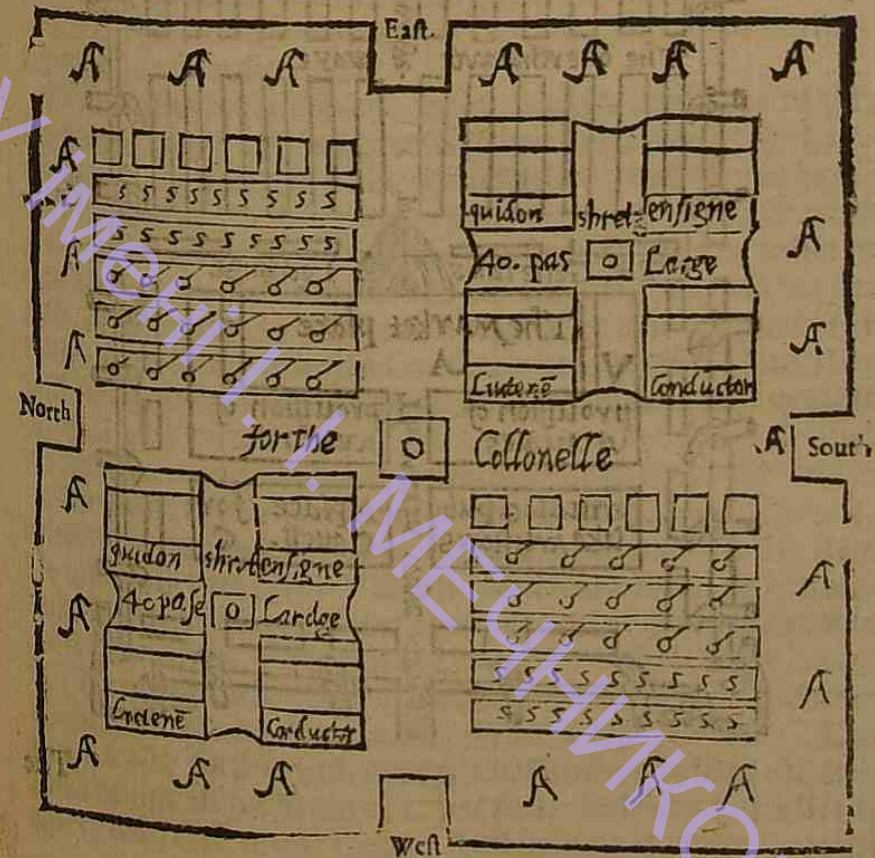
НАУКОВА БІБЛІОТЕКА ОНУ МЕДИКОВА

# The art of Warre.

## An other proportion of Encamping.

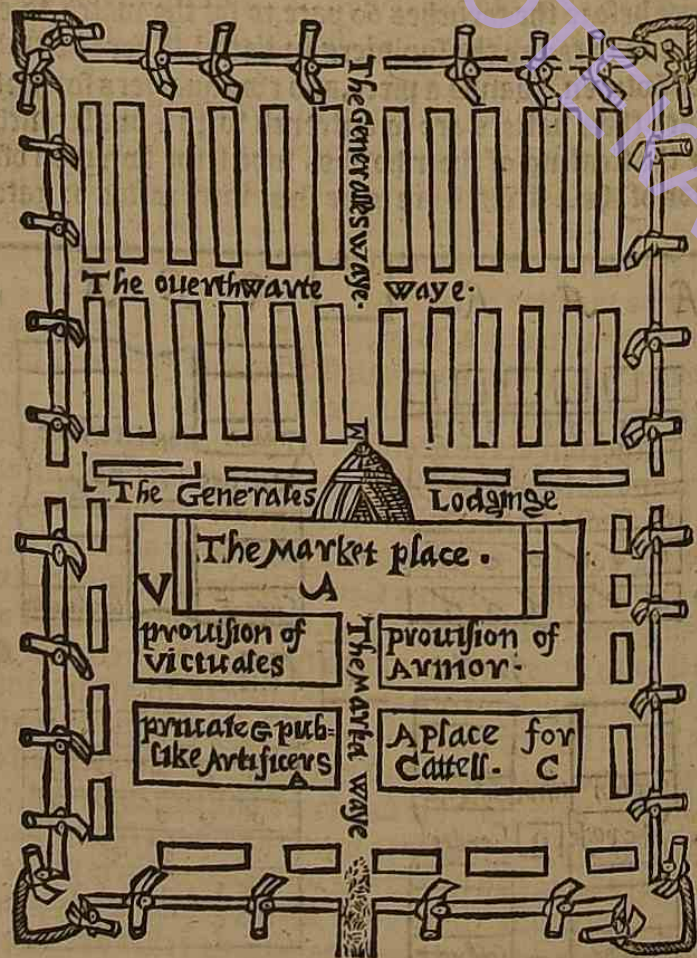
Messire Guillaume du Bellay Seigneur de Langeay, Knight of the Order, and Lieutenant to the king of France at Turin, in his first booke of Militarie Discipline, doth in this sort following lodge one of his legions of footemen, consisting of 12 bands, with two bands of horsemen, containing euerie one 100 men at armes, 100 light horse, 50 Estradiots, and 50 Hargolateares.

The Collonell is placed in the midst, two crosse streets of 300 pace long, and 60 large, for marchants, artificers, and victualers, the place before the trenches 60 pace, to set the watch, to exercise armes, and to range the souldiers in battel. There be two quarters for footmen, 6 bands a pece, and two quarters for horsemen, the which their ballets are to entrench with a smal trench, for to auoide the stealing of their horses, which the footemen often do, the ends of the 4 streets are to be shut with railles or gates.



## The proportion of a twofold campe.

In this proportion the greatest part of the armie is placed in the one halfe, with the Generals lodging: The market place noted thus. M. The place for munition at the one side, and that for victuals at the other. The place for cattel is thus marked. C. The place for artificers is thus, A. As by this figure appeareth, being environed with souldiers lodgings.



The

## The manner how to dislodge and march away from the enemies Armie.

Having, as I suppose, sufficiently declared what an Armie ought to obserue, as well in marching as in camping, I have thought good in brieve sort to shew what is to be done in the dislodging of an armie, presupposing that the two armies being lodged in the view one of another, or at the leastwise but small distance betwixt them. And for that it is a thing which imports the high Marshall verie much, to know how he ought to governe himselfe in such an affaire, he must therein haue speciall considerations.

To retire in the night and so to get away from the enimie, seemes to be the onely & most assured way that can be chosen, notwithstanding that way is not sufficient to accomplish his determinations, if he which meanes to retire, be not aided by the situation of the ground, and other qualities of the place and countrie, whether he meanes to retire.

To touch particulars I say, when you dislodge in the night, it behoues you to vse the greatest diligence you can, which notwithstanding, as I said, is no wayes sufficient, vnlesse you be aided by the situation of the ground: for he that is to march through plaines and open places, without having any wood or vallie to retire his armie vnto: when the enimie doth perceiue his retreat, verie hardly (as I haue said) shall he be able to procure his safety. For when the enimies Cavallarie haue attained him, they will easily constraine him to stay, and force him to fight against his will with great disorder, and specially if he conduct Artillerie and other impediments appertaining to an armie, which no reason would that he should leaue in pray and spoile to the enimies. Moreover an army must not be made to march faster then his ordinarie pace: for if it should be hastned with an extraordinary speedie pace, the same would augment the euill opinion the souldiers haue had to conceaue by reason of their retire, which is a very dangerous thing, for thereby may arise a disorder without redresse, as oftentimes hath bene experimented. The armie which pursues hath not these difficulties, besides she may leaue behind all her baggage: and if their souldiers be pressed to march fast, their armie thereby shall become more couragious.

couragious, specially if the Generall, Collonels and Captaines vse magnificent speeches, and words of aduantage, as is conuenient should be vsed in such cases. Therefore howsoeuer it fall out, the retraite made in the night, seemes to me not altogether assured, if the same be not accompanied with the situation of the place: the which was very well foresene and put in practise by Francis the French king of Cambrais, when in the night he did march away from Charles the first, for by the succour of a great wood, he put all his armie in safetie, the which had entere past the said wood, befoze the enemies Cavallarie could ouertake them: and then hauing made *Alta* by reason of the aduantage they had, & through the commodity of the situation of the ground where he was encamped, he was able to fight with the emperalists. Contrariwise, they hauing ouer hastily followed the French army, at the issue of the wood setting vpon them, remained for the most part either taken, or slaine, or repulled. The Protestants in Germanie did vse the same pollicie, when they retired away from the Emperoz, who was so nere a neighbour vnto them, that they could not, no not in the night march away, but the emperialists did follow them, for whilst the Protestants did enter into a balley, in the which they could not fight without great disaduantage, they did speedely seaze vpon a hill, where they placed a good troope of horsemen and footmen, with certaine field peeces, by meanes of this hill, & of a wood nere hand, which they had filled full of Hargabuziers, they did barre the Emperozs campe from following them, euen accordingly as they had determined: when as the Emperoz being appoched, and perceiving them to be retired into so strange a place, both by nature & arte, he suffered them to passe. Therefore I say, by the fauour of the situation of the ground and countrie, a man may assure his retraite, as by these examples appeares. And so the retraite made by night is alwaies best, for then you may with greater oportunitie and leasure winne or attaine to any place of aduantage: whereas the retire made by day, without assurance of some place of aduantage, is most dangerous, vnlesse it be that he which makes the retraite, be much more stronger in horsemen. Therefore the armie which is the weakest, ought to keepe himselfe as farre off from the enemy, as he can: to the intent that when he will retire, he be not constrained to fall into some notable disorder.

The



THE FIFT BOOKE OF  
MILITARIE DIRECTIONS, EN-  
treatring of the great Master of the Atillarie, of the  
Master Gunner, of generall Notes of Fortification, of the be-  
sieging, expugning, and defending of a Fortresse, &c.

And first, The Office of the great Master  
of the Artillarie.



HIS great Officer, and man of singuler estimation, after he is by hys Prince or Generall Captaine, appointed to take charge of the Artillarie, he must make an inuenty of euerie small & particular percell, that accompany the peeces of Ordnance: for that they be almost infinite in number, so that the same may alwaies remain ready, at time of need, & that he may make good account, as appertayneth to hym that doth exercise an office of such importance.

When he is to march in Campania, (as it is to be presupposed he shall) it is requisite that he make provision, that euerie peere haue hys sufficient number of draught Horses and Oxen, apt to carry the same according to the nature of the Countrey, with conuenient speede and great safetie.

The said Horses or Oxen ought alwaies to haue men for the purpose to gouerne them, who at all times in all places, ought euerie one to lodge nere hys Ordnance day and night, that they may alwaies be ready to do their office, thereby to auoyde confusion, that vnawares in such cases doe at times fall, when things be not well placed in order.

Likewise it is conuenient that euerie peere haue a Cannon, Culuerine, Demiculuerine, or Demiculuerine, as the

¶ n.

ner

ner to attend thereupon: and every Gunner haue his Coadiutor or mate, and they both a man to serue them and to ayde them to charge, discharge, mounte, wadde, cleanse, scour, and coole the peeces, when they are overheated: For which there must be alwayes ready, Sponges, Vineger, colde water, &c. Besides that, euery heauie pece in some certayne respect, must haue alone by himselfe, a Master of the wood and a Smyth, that together they may aptly supply the needfull force and strength, for the weelding of so huge and heauie a Machine, as is a Cannon.

It is necessary that he create a sufficient Corporall or Constable ouer the Gunners, who may take care and charge ouer them, and that hee may maintayne and keepe order amongst them: yea, and continually ouerbieue, examine, and search the Instruments to charge, to sponge, make cleane the peeces, coole them, with vineger and colde water, and such lyke.

This Corporall or Constable, must likewise looke to the lyfe and behauiour of the Gunners, their gouernment and customs, theyr committed and conuenient orders, their obedience and actions: and it is conuenient, that he prayse and confirme the good doings of them, and reprehend and dispraise the euill vse of others, making report thereof to his chiefe Captaine & master, for that he may readily, by hys meanes, who hath authoritie, vse remedie agaynst such inconuenience as wold aryse, the which sometimes is occasion of great disturbance and of errors of importance.

For the better performance of this great Officers service, hee ought to be very curious and carefull for the safe-keeping of the Munition of powder, which is allotted for the service of Artillery, Muskiet and Hargabuziers, and fyre works: so lyke wyse he must haue regard to the Bulletes, to the Lead, to the Hatch, whether it be of Cotton, Hemp or Flax: to the Ladders, & Iron worke, the wood worke, the Salt-peter, the Coales and Brimstone. For sometimes, euery one of these things is caried by it selfe, for more safety agaynst burning and artificiall fyres, which are accustomed to be carryed for the seruyce of the armie, and to furnish and suffice, during the warres: and therefore hee must take care, that hee haue good prouision of Cartes or Wagons, or some other sufficient meane, apt to carry these Munitions and necessary preparations, together with the whole quantity of Ropes, of wood, fitte and com-

modi-

modious to serue for the vse of hys office: Of fables, apt to make Bridges ouer ditches, & in all other places where y passage of the Artillarie or Armie is stauled. And so consequently of many other things, that be committed to hys gouernment to conduct: since that the Ordnance with the impediments belonging thereunto, be of greater trauayle and toyle then the rest of the Campe.

To this Officer therefore appertaynes a Constable or Lieutenant, as I sayd before, and certayne Clarke in wages, who are to haue regard vnto the foresayde causes, and to attend bypenintferior matters, rendering account of all their doings to the Master of the Ordnance. From time to time he must foresee, as I sayd before, to prouyde that there remayne stuffe enough in store, for all kind of necessaries, belonging to the Artillarie: as wheeles for Ordnance, Areltrees, Lables, Sponges, bullets, chayne shot, crosse barres, corne powder, & serpentine powder, Hattockes, shouelles, Crowes of yron, hand Axes, Engines for the mounting of Ordnance, Graund Maundes or Gabions, little hand basketes, Ropes, and all other Carte ware.

To haue the Gunners not only skilful in the ready managing of theyr peeces, but also in the making of Trunckes, Walles, Arrows, and all other sortes of wyld fyre and fyre worke: and for the continuall supply of them, they ought to haue in a readinesse, great store of Sulphure, Saltpeter, Rosine, Calx viue, Quicke peate, Turpentine oyle and comon Lampe oyle, Pitch, Tarre, Camphere, Waxe, Tutia, Arsenicke, Quick siluer, and Aqua vite. Hereof let him frame balles of fyre, to burne in the water: Cressets and Torches that trowes or windes canont extinguish: murdering bullets, to be shot out of great mortar peeces, and such lyke.

If any band in the Campe, want Powder, or Hatch, or shot: the Master of the Ordnance, upon request of the Captaine, is to giue order, that his Clarke deliuer the same, taking a bill of the Captaynes hand for theyr discharge. The which bill must at the pay day, be deliuered to the Treasurer, who is to stoppe so much vpon the pay of the Captaine and hys band.

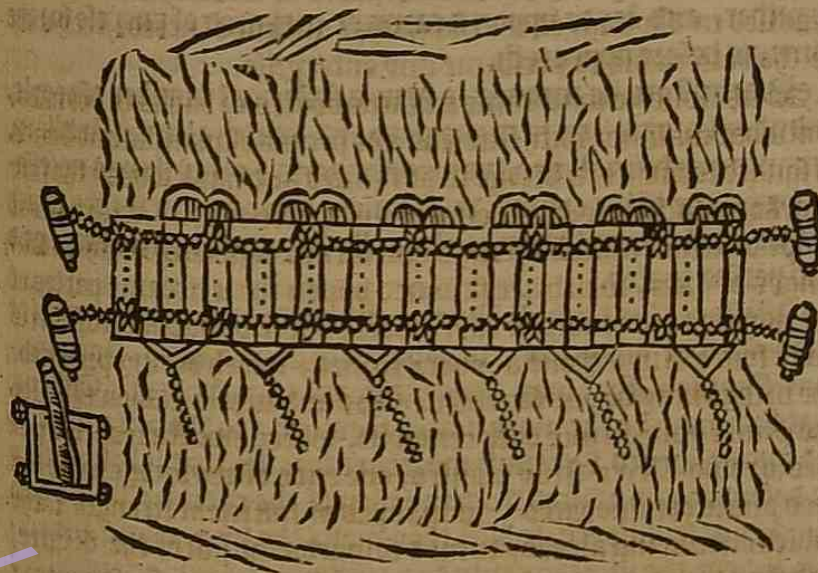
Let him prouyde that there be of wheelwrights, Carpenters, Copers, Smithes, Bowyers, Fletcheres, Masons, and such other skilful Artisans, with all tooles and necessary needfull, to preserue, repayre & make all such thinges, as to the Artillarie and munition appertaineth.

To him likewise it appertayneth, to cast brydges ouer waters, Riuer, and Ditches, for the commoditie of the army: and consequently for that respect, must take great care to carrie wyth hym, men apt, sufficient, and fitte for that kinde of seruice: as Shipwrightes, Wagon-wrightes, Bakers of Cables, and such as be practised in sayling, to the intent that at tyme of neede, they may be the better able to perfoyme any enterpryse.

So likewise he must cause certayne boates or barkes to be made, somewhat massiue, with fitte and apt peeces of plancks and boards in square forme, for a brydge to be fastned and nayed vpon the said Barke, in such sorte, that being ioyned peece to peece, with a great Rope or Cable, thrust through and turned double, through certain ringes of Iron, which are fastened vpon the extreme partes of the poyntes or corners of euerie peece of the brydge, and for euerie peece foure Ringes, one at euerie corner, which beeing prepared, the brydge may be put together entyre and whole. Upon that side the Riuer your Armie doth remayne, where two stakes, two pillars, or two Trees stifiy planted, one ende of the brydge must be tyed and accommodated, with ropes of sufficient strength: the which ende being already turned towards the fall of the Water, and the other towards the running of the streame, must afterwards be sette free & loose, and thrust forth and disseuered from the bancke, by certayne of the foresaid men practised in sayling, who ought at due tyme cast Anckers into the Riuer, which are of force to sustaine the brydge, from being carried downe further then his prescribed and limited bonds of the other bancke, by the violent course of the running of the water. The which bounds & marks ought to be fore-seene, and the largenes of the Riuer artificially measured, if the same be desired to be done exactly: that iustly & at the same instant when neede doth require he may serue his turne, neyther with moze nor lesse number of barkes or boates, then so manie as is necessary for the breadth of the Riuer: for if there shoulde be moze or lesse, there would arise great confusion or disturbance.

This arteficiall brydge, is an instrument very much vsed amongst great Armies in the warres at these dayes, as was manifest by the preparation of one made at Namures, for Don Iohn of Austria, and this figure following is the forme thereof.

It



It shall be sometimes good to plant Souldiours vpon this brydge, who may be able to withstande, and repulse the enemies vpon the other shore, that they do not displant the same, but that you may be able to recover the shore, and sustaine the brydge. The Anckers being cast, and Cables ready to let at large, it is necessarie to let the head of the brydge styppe downe slackly, and be disseuered from the banckside where it was ioyned together, & which you are determined to leaue, and to aspect the running of the water, carry the brydge to the other side of the Riuer, ayded by the industry of those men that be vpon it, to make the passage moze easie.

The Armie being passed the Riuer, & the brydge being disseuered peece from peece, & drawne on lande, the boards nayed to the boates euen as they bee, must be layde vpon a broade Waine or Wagon, made of purpose for the carriage of them after the



Armie, so shall the boate remaine with the bottome turned vp towards the skyes, and the boordes ioyned together, lye flat vpon the wagon vnderneath, readie for any other action.

Provision of Hoies and Oxen, will easily conduct these Engines after the Campe, whilst the boate and the boordes be nailed together, and layde vpon a carriage prepared of purpose for the same, as before appeareth.

Hee must make meanes to haue a sufficient number of people, and of apt proportion to make guard and watch about y<sup>e</sup> Artillary, munition, arteficiall fire, waines, wagons, & other things necessary for y<sup>e</sup> siege of the enemy, with diuers other accidents: the which people must goe with him continually day and night, to keepe good and perfect watch.

Besides this he must haue a band of Pyoners, of conuenient and sufficient quantitie, who ought to haue a carefull and vigilant Captayn, that may alwayes guide them vnder an Engine, that they may be the more vnited together, and the better conducted and gouerned. Hee must moreouer foresee, that lyke wise they be defended and assured from inuasion of the enemies, with a good number of souldiours, whilst they make the wayes euen and perfect, where the impediments therunto appertayning and all the Campe must passe.

The sayd Pyoners, must be provided of Spades, Pickheaxes, some with Leauers, Crowes of Iron, Baskets, Wheele barrows, and other Instruments apt to such vse and affayres: to plant Artillary, and to entrench the place in the Campe, that shall be by the prouost Martiall assigned for Position.

It shall be very conuenient if it were possible, to pay the their wages euery night: for since they are not men of estimation and honour, such as men of warre be, and right souldiours, they oftentimes wil depart without licence at their own pleasure. Neither haue they respect of incurring danger of punishment, or hazarde of life, no nor to bring great discommoditie to an Armie. The which through the benefite of they<sup>r</sup> worke is very well accommodated and strengthened in diuers respects, not onely touching the foresaid causes, but also to make Trenches, Gabions, Mines, Ditches, straight and crooked, and all other platformes conuenient and necessary for the Armie.

The great Maister of the Artillary, must haue about him a Squa-

Squadron, which may be called the Gentlemen of the Artillary, Lanze spezzate, or Cauahers of the Cannon, such as I haue described in my seconde Booke to be of S. George his Squadron, in which booke they may reade speciall notes about their duties, speciallie in the Chapters of discoueries. These Cauahiers, euery one hauing the ouersight of a Pece, especially at a battery, when they must see continually that the Gunners doe their duty, I would wishe to be very sufficient personages, to the intent they may be able to know how to execute the great Maisters ordinances, in things necessary to be performed in so great actions: and that particularlie they desire to be accounted discrete and modest souldiours, whose office is, continually to sollicite and keepe in order such men as be vndiscreet and rude.

Not onely the great Maister, and his other Officers, but also these worthy Cauahiers, ought to be of sufficient vnderstanding and experience, to know howe to charge euery Pece, and afterwards be able to perceiue (as neere as is possible) what effects the shotte of euery Cannon will worke, the shotte of euery Culuerine, the demie of them both, and likewise what euery Pece is able to performe, to the intent he be not alwaies ouer-ruled by the iudgement of euery Gunner: which his experience, is both profitable to his Prince, and commendable to his proper credite and reputation.

It is a speciall note for them to obserue, that Wine & Vineger, be apt to coole and refresh the Artillary when it is ouer hote through often shooting. In these and such like matters, hee must delight himselfe, that he may be of perfect experience, and be fullie provided for all employts that may fall, and for any other notable respect, worthy of great consideration.

Hee must take assured order, that the Peeces of Artillary, be well planted vpon they<sup>r</sup> carriages, forceable & substantially, and in respect of the performace of this seruice, hee must carrie with him more then the ordinarie Load of Spades, Shouels, Barrels, Salt, Spokes, Plates, Paues, Axeltries, broad Pailes, Spykings, and other ordinarie yron worke, that he may vpon a suddaine, with the helpe of a Smith and Carpenter, and other like Artificers, which are appointed in cases of such neede, yeeld a supply to all such things, which shall be lost, broken and destroyed in a long voyage, or els by many bolles of shot.

Note

Note that the great Maister ought to haue good vnderstanding and experience, how to prepare with great aduantage, with Gabions and Rampiers of earth, or with wolle packs, the place where the batterie must be planted, to the intent the said batterie may take effect, that the flankers and curtine may speedily and with little charge be battered & ruinate, that all things may succede according to his determination, in as perfect order as is possible, and that it may take away and make frustrate all the enemies defences, bursting and displanting theyr Pæces, & tormenting them in as terrible sort as he can or use, procuring, and alwaies fore-seeing, that there be a sufficient batterie made, & that it be easie for the souldiours to ascend by vpon their assault, that they be not forced to make a shamefull retire, to theyr great vyl-credite and destruction.

Therefore it is most necessarie, and altogether requisite, that in batterie, or in any other naturall forme of assault, not only the breach be sufficient, large, and easie, to mount vpon and ascend, but also that hee vse dilligence to dismount the enemies defences, that is to say, such Pæces as annoy the Campe, and that the flankers be cut off before any assault be giuen, as I shal moze at large hereafter declare, to the intent the meaning of theyr assault take effect, which is, to enter the Towne, that the slaughter and great destruction of many notable Captaines and souldiours may be auoyded.

Hee must endeouour himselfe to haue knowledge in making of Mines, Quens, and Caues, and to know howe to order and vse them: the which things, if they be made conformed to their due as they ought, are of meruailous ayde to those y<sup>e</sup> besiege a Fortresse: but aboue all things, hee must be very warie and circumspect in making them, that the besieged doe not perceiue they are mined, to the intent they preuent not the same by making countermines: the which sort of working dooth easily hinder Mines, or other wise by sincking of deepe wells, or profound holes & pits, the which choke by the Mines when they encounter with them. And if by Mines hee performe any thing, to giue order that the Captaine of the Minors and Myners, accomplish his directions.

Hee should likewise take delight, to cause powder be made, and arteficiall fire of all sorts, and to the intent he may commodiously performe these things, and make them with greater facilitie, hee must

must carry with him necessary instrumets for the same, as Morters, pestles, troughes, Cribles to sift, tables to dry vpon, yron work to refyne saltpeter, Caldwons, Coullanders, or strainers, and such like.

Hee ought to be learned in auncient and moderne hyfkozies, and to consider and compare the manifold stratagemes that other notable Souldiers haue heeretofore vled. To deuise sundry Engines for assaults defences, and to be cunning in framing sundrie sorts of brydges for passage of waters, to diuert the course of waters, or to drowne any Country or Fort subiect therunto, to conuey great Ordnance ouer Marshes, and other ingenious inventions.

Hee must likewise haue exquisite knowledge in the Mathematicals, considering thereby he shall be able, certainly to shote at all randons, to conuey Mines vnder earth, to any Curtine, Bulwarke, or other place, that hee determines by violence of powder to rent in pæces. To make a coniecture & forecast, what quantitie of shotte, powder, &c. shall be requisite to serue the Campe, to suffice a batterie, mine, or any other employt. To sette out in due proportion euery particuler fortification, of Campe, Towne or Fort, where Ordnance is to be vled, which cannot possibly without knowledge in these Sciences be sufficiently discharged. And that Maister of the Ordnance that is ignoraunt here in himselfe, and trusteth to the skyll of others, shall be abused by audacious presumptuous persons, that taking vpon them the knowledge they vtterly want, will shame themselues, dishonour him, and foyle the enterprize.

In the fielde, when soeuer any day of seruice is, it is the office of the great Maister of the Ordnance, to select a conuenient place to plant his Ordnance, as well to annoy the enemy, as also to be in such sort garded and fortified, that it be not surprisid of the enemy.

In the Campe he onely ought to giue order for the planting of the Artillarie, and fortification of the flankes. And that the Ordnance be planted to the best aduantage, and also to fore-see that the Maister Gunner, and y<sup>e</sup> other Gunners doe their duties, which doe appertaine to theyr office.

Finally, thys office is of great reputation in the fielde, vpon the execution whereof great seruice dependeth. And therefore the

great Maister of the Ordnance, ought to be a man of great learning and experience: whereby he may bee able to conceiue & performe many particular actions. Since he is one of the principall Officers of the field, hauing (as I haue already said) charge of the Artillary, munition, and fortification, in which employts, a be-rie good wit, without trayning and experience, shall stagger and be amazed. But because it is neither possible nor conuenient, that the Maister of the Ordnance, should attend vpon all the premisses himselfe, hee may commit (as I haue sayd) inferiour causes to the execution of his Lieutenants or Constable, and to the Gentlemen of the Artillarie, Cavaliers of the Canon, or voluntarie Lieutenants, reseruing alwaies to himselfe the disposition of the great and most important.

#### The Office of the Maister Gunner.

The Maister Gunner is but an Officer appertaining to the great Maister of the Artillarie, and his Office is, to see all the inferiour Gunners to do theyr duties, to be skilfull and readie in theyr charging, discharging, cooling, leueling, and mounting of the Ordnance, and to haue in readines, bullets, powder, ladders, and sponges, to wadde, ramme, cole, and charge the peeces, also to peruse the cariages and wheeles, that they be strong, and the peeces themselves, that they haue no honie-combes or flaws in them, whereby they should be in danger of breaking.

To haue in store crosse-barres, chaynshot, cases of haileshot, in manner of Cartages, trunckes and bals of wild fyre, with artificiall barrells of preble stones charged with powder, to throwe into Ditches, or to defend a breach vpon any suddaine attempt. These and such like, are matters for the Maister Gunner to occupie himselfe in, and to make profes of them in the presence of the Maister of the Ordnance, that he may see the effect & violence of them.

#### The Office of the fyre Maister.

This Officer, the better to performe his duetie, at the entrance into his Office, must take his oth, to be true and iust in his Office, and that without speciall commaundement of the General,

rall, not to aduenture to set any thing on fire, vnlesse that the enemye be inuaded and encountered withall, and then without delay, all matters layd apart, to annoy the enemye by hys skill what he may. And that he do not burne or wast any Corne-houses or other thing that may any wayes profit the Campe. And that to his knowledge he shall not hurt or hinder any poore creature or aged person that he may well spare, but extend mercy and pittie on them.

This Office is, to make and carry with the Campe all sorts of artificiall fire-works, and Engines of fire to endamage the enemye.

Certaine generall notes of fortification, necessarie for a singular souldiour or ingenior to knowe.

Although many Authours haue in long discourses written of fortifications, neuer thelesse, for that it seemes vnto me a thing necessary to be vnderstood of a Souldiour, at least wise of hym, which by way of merite, meanes to obtaine recompence of such Capitaine Generals, as be famous professors of this honourable discipline, I therefore resolue with my selfe, to declare my opinion, but onely in generall and not in particular, which I leaue to those that be Maisters of this warlike Architecture.

This arte for the most part, is grounded vpon the knowledge how to accomodate all things with a requisite forme, agreeable to the situation of the ground where one determines to fortifie. The which ought to be made with Trenches, and conuenient workmanthyp, well flanked, and the circute of the ground within, as nere as is possible, large on euery side, and so towards the manifest oppositions of the enemies, there ought to be planted and made round and sharpe corners. The meanes howe to doe the same, is to leaue them beneath in the Ditch as they bee, and from the midst vpwarde rounded or pared, for aboute where they be most easily battered, they be round, to the intent they may be the stronger, and beneath sharpe, which may be very well defended from the shotte, which the enemye cannot lay so low, as if the angle were round beneath, and this is the best order that may be used touching the sharp corners of Bulwarks.

Towards the opposition of the enemy, these foresaid angles, or corners, curtines, covers, or other such like workes of bulwarks ought to be turned, with theyr defence of Casamatte, with theyr counter covers, that is to say, shadowed in such sort as they cannot be battered or choked, of the foresaide platfomes placed opposite by the enemy, and much lesse be seene or discerned if it be possible.

Neither let him put his confidence in counter scarpes, or els in adioyned platfomes, bulwarks, or Cavalieres, sholdered and arteficially made, which doe couer or shadowe the, neither in deepe Ditches that doe incompasse them: for that the oppositions being manifest, the one may be scaled and the other broken downe with Pickaxe & Spade, for by the favourable corner of close and crooked Ditches and Trenches, Pyoners may very easily be guided, with those and such like instruments vnto them, being euer accompanied with a good garde of Souldiours.

Note that the Bastillions be massiue, the Parapettes grosse, the Gabions strong and stiffly rabled, and full of good matter of earth, purged from stones, apt to be incorporated, and cleaue together: and aboue all, it is requisite, the Fortresse be compassed wyth strong Ditches, that is to say, cutte out of firme and naturall grounde, and not forced bype of heaped earth, which is remoouable, and that they be large, profound and deepe, in the which the fortification may remaine covered, and closely hid, euen to the height of the Scarpe, and edge of the same, to the intent the Parapettes be onely seene and no other.

Take speciall care that the Scarpe of the wall or the Trenches, doe not so much decline, that by theyr ouer much declination, the circuit of the Fort, the which is in making, be not deuoured and made straighter then was determined, and the worke did require: the want of the obseruation wherof, hath brought many fortifications to great defects.

When these fortifications be reduced, into a reasonable condition & perfect forme: it is an easie thing for a Mason to mantle the same with a wall of stone, sande, and chalie, being a mortar more firme and stable, done by the ayde neuerthelesse, of those that haue knowledge in Architecture. For that in the greatest part of thys worke it is not necessarie, that the wall therof cause any other effect, the onely to sustaine, wyth his counterforts and other arteficiall deuises, the weight of the earth, and to prouide in

in the one and in the other of them, as neere as it is possible, Countermines, lyghtes, breathings, hoales or windowes, and pittes, wrought in theyr right places, and in due sorte: therby to auoyde and make frustrate, the Mines, hoales and Duens, that the enemy shall cause to be made. By y comoditie of which Countermines, is vnderstode and known very comodiouly, when the enemy dooth secretly labour vnderneath the earth, to annoy the besieged.

To bee aduertised therof, place within these Caves vpon the playne ground, a Drum, on the one end, and lay certaine dice vpon the skinne, which dice, the enemy labouring vnder the earth, neere vnto the wall, cannot lye still and quiet: but by reason of theyr worke vnder the earth, (although not seene of the Defendants) doe remoue and leape. Otherwise placing within the sayd Countermines, and vpon the playne ground, a bason of Copper, Tinne, or Brasse, or of such like mettall, full of Water, the enemy labouring vnder the earth, neere vnto the wall, by reason of the sayd strokes and working, although the same remayne vnsene of the eye, neuerthelesse the water shall be seene to remoue and tremble, a manifest shewe of their myning, which may suddenly be prevented, by meanes of these Countermines, or such like preparation as dooth serue for that purpose.

Some vse to lay a sacke of Woll in the Countermines, and vpon the same a bason of Copper wherein is put three or 4. round harde peales, the which will moue and ring against the side of the bottome of the bason, at the strokes of the Miners of the enemy.

These walld Countermines, seme to be sufficient to finde out any other hidden or secreete deceite of y enemy, neither ought they in my iudgement, to be displayed, as some doe, which cause them not to be made in their fortifications, alledging for their excuse, the auoyding of expence, which presumption, perchance in the ende, will become the cause of theyr ruine.

Note that the firme and reall defence, consistes more in the thicke and grosse platfomes of earth, being well compounded and made of good matter, rather then in stone walles, although they be meruailous massiue, and of extreme thiccknes, considering that against the force and violent furie of Artillarie, that substance dooth most resist, and receiue lesse damage by theyr blowes, giuing place with an arteficiall yeelding, rather then by

the force of stubbozne resistance.

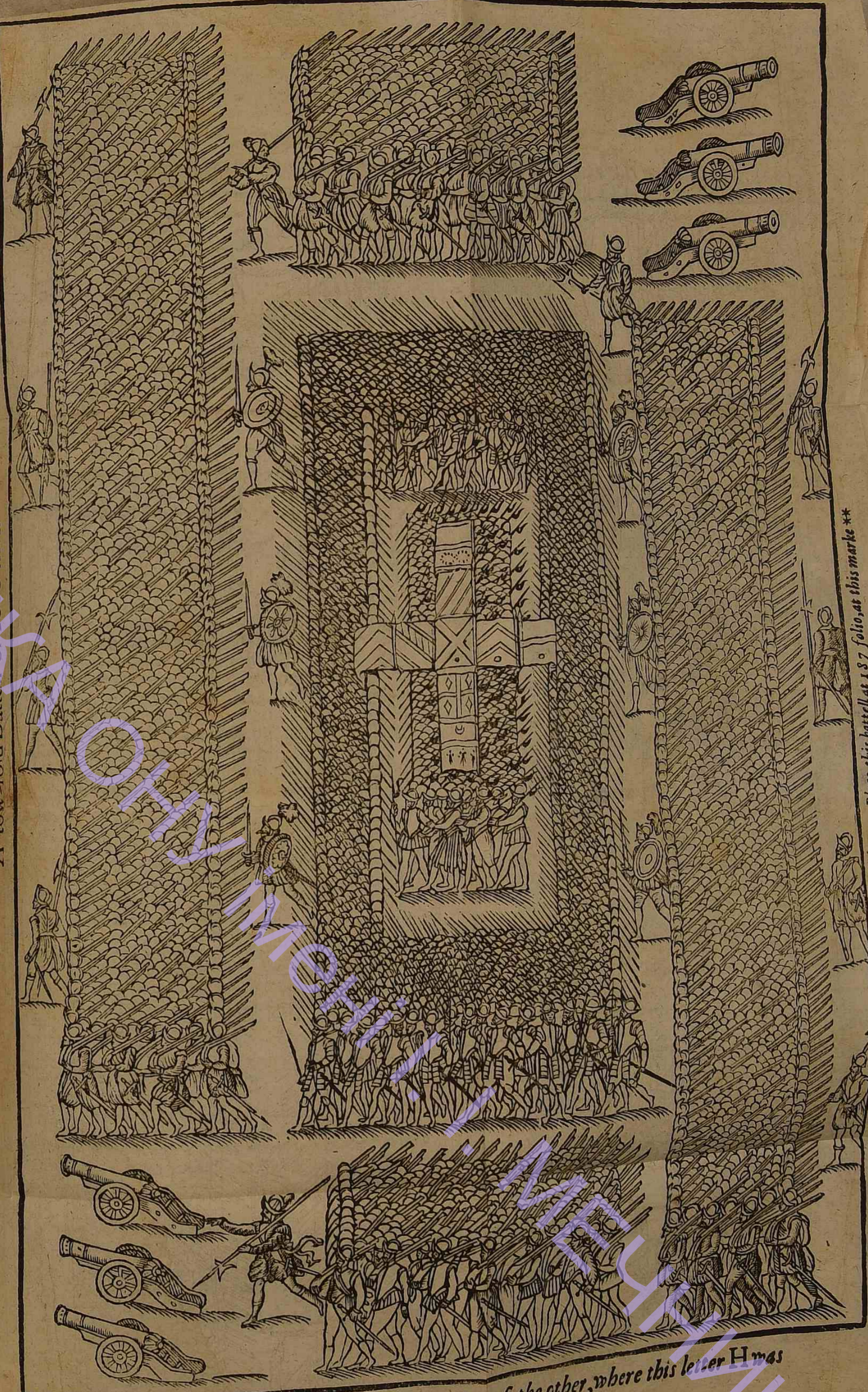
It is manifest, that to ruinate or make that wall to fall, which doth lightly giue place to the blowes of the Artillarie, and suffers the bullets to enter and pearse the same with small difficultie, that the same be shaken, cut and losed with the often blowes of Artillarie, and by the often reiterating of volles of shot, (as of necessitie you must) to breake and beate downe the same: yet notwithstanding there folloves very small effect, for that sometimes the same is battered lesse, and with lesse furie then is requisite. But the massiue wall of stone, greater ruine is made by the enemy the sometimes he desires, and with small labour, which onely comes to passe by the stubbozne resistance of the firme and massiue deade wall: the which the Artillarie for the most part, as well farre of the batterry, as nere it, only by y forceable shaking therof, byings great confusion to the defenders.

Therefore besides these foresaid aduertisements, it is conuenient a good Souldiour, haue long practise of the effects, & extreme force of the Artillarie, and of the diligent arte and infinite pollicies, vsed of souldiours of valour, the which is farre more then any witte of small practise can imagine, since that he is not capable of any thing, but that his simple iudgement doth behold.

And for thys respect, besides a particuler profession in this art, it behoues hym of necessity to be able to draw proportions. That he haue knowledge in the art prospectiue, in numbers, in measure, in making of Gabions, in making of Lotte, compounding & simple, to naye them dispeare and solve them, to compounde fagote of good boughes, to know how to ioyne and mayle with wood, these kynde of woorkes, to dispeare and distribute the earth with sufficiency, and that it be well deuided or sifted amongst the fagots and cliftes, to the ende that they may be easly endomaged with fyre, and thereby to make them stedfast.

To beate well downe and fasten the labour with maules of wood, to giue reasonable and easie issue to the course of water, that might chaunce to make corruption, and to make cloach large and walled, and not other wise: for that by meanes of water, such lyke woorkes are accustomed to receiue great ruines and hinderance. And it is necessary mozeouer for him to knowe: howe with due measures to foyme Bulwarkes, Cauaheres, Platfozmes, straight and crooked, Casemates, Couers, Canoneres, Perlones, Curtines,

A tow-fold Battell of 2000 men



Place this battell at 187 folio, at this marke \*\*

These Charecters are to be used in the place of the other, where this letter H was placed for Bas here you may see.

These Charecters.	{ S or this P + or this B E □ △ *         }	Signifie	{ Shot. Pikes. Halberds. Ensignes. Launces. Light horsemen. Argoletteares.         }
-------------------	--	----------	---

tines Scarpes, false Portes, secrete issues for footemen and horse men, Counterditches, Ditches, Sholders and Counterscarpes, and he must beware that in hys parapettes, he make no windows nor loope holes neyther small nor great, to the intent they be not choked, neyther stroken by leuill, nor displanted of the Enimye, with hys Artillarie. But he must prouyde that the sayd Parapettes be so placed, that very commodiously the Artillarie, the Muskets, the Hargabuziers, and all other sortes of offensive weapons, may play and trouble the Enimye, without being (as is aforesayde) manifestly disturbed and displanted by the enemy.

Touching the entrees or Gates which bee made to enter into Fortresses: they ought to bee made in the midst of the Curtine, or rather neere adioyning to the flanke of the Bulwarke: with a bridge of wood, to the intent that in time of siege, the same may be cut downe or burnt. The Porte ought to be so lowe, that being on the Counterscarpe without, the same remayne discoverd. It is requisite also, that at the entrie of the sayd Porte, there be a safe place for diuers respects: and specially to keepe assured the Souldiours Armes.

In the bottome of the Berlone, or rather neere adioyning to the flanke of the Bulwarke, an issue must be made, which may serue for the Souldiours (whilst the batterie is in making) to issue forth: to the intent also they may defende the Dytych, and take away the ruines of the batterie, because they would hinder the Cannons, and be a meanes that the enemy myght appoach the nearer.

There be many which require that the Curtines shold compass, or be bended inward towarde the Fortresse, with a platforme eyther within or without, or a Caualiere vpon the bynke of the sayd Curtine. They alledge for theyr reason, that the enemy thereby is much more endamaged, and that his batterie is more crooked, and therefore procureth lesse danger to the Fortresse then if it were straight. But I am of an opinion, that if a man worke in that sort, the bulwarks cannot haue theyr ample places, and thicke sholders, to be able to sustaine the blowes of the Artillarie, and euen so it should be likewise difficile to make retraites.

Therefore I thinke it is not good to haue the Curtines folded compass wise or crooked, if the situation of the place do not require the same. But I would rather they should be straight from one

one Bulwarke to another.

And furthermore, it were good that they were of such length, that not only the great Cannons of the first place, but also the small Peeeces may cleense the front of y<sup>e</sup> Bulwarke. Some perchance wil affirme, that the Curtine being short, the great Cannons would become hurtfull to the Bulwarks of the Fortresse. For answer whereof, I say: That in the first place when the enimie doth assault the Foote, the great Cannons ought not to bee charged with bullets, for defence of the sayd Foote: but rather filde with peeces of Iron, or of some other Metall, or with stones or chaynes, for these thinges worke a marueilous effect, against the assaults and Escalades which the Enimie doth giue.

To shoote bullets in great Cannons were good, when the Ditch is full of Rockes and heapes of stones: for the sayd Bullet striking amidst the sayd heapes of stones, dispearling & marking them, will make a great slaughter of those which giue the assault. Bullets in the great Cannons be good also, to break the Trenches and Engines, which the enimies make within the Ditch: Forouer the length of the Curtine beeing correspondent to the carrying of the small Peeeces, is cause that the shot of the sayde Peeeces, becomes the dispatch and mortalitie of the Enimies, and the defence and sustentation of the Fortresse: for almost against all Fortresses, the Enimie worketh vnder the Curtine with Trenches, in cutting through the Counterscarpe, or rather by filling of y<sup>e</sup> ditch, thereby the more commodiously to cut the sayde Curtine or Bulwarke, and so make steppes or degrees, to ascende to giue assault to the Fortresse: as I sawe performed at the siege of Limbourgh, the head Citty of that Dutchie, where the Prince of Parma being Lieuetenant of the Armie, in Don Iohn d'austria hys absence, betwixt the batterie and the breach in bottome of the dry Ditch, certayne close couerts were made, from whence the Souldiers might ascend vp to giue the assault, by certayne steppes cut out of the hyl and Bulwarke it selfe, by which the towne was entred, although in ende it yeelded.

It is profitable to haue water in the ditch, when a Fortresse is situate in such a place, that it borders vpon diuers Enimies: for water brings with it this comodity, that vnawares in the night, it cannot be assaulted by Escalade. Water likewise is profitable to small Fortresses, wherein there is not such great numbers of peo-  
ple,

ple, as one may be able to make issue for the defence thereof.

But for a great Fortresse where it is necessary to make sallies, it is requisite the ditch be dry, for that in the same a man hath space to make retraits, and is farre more commodious to make issues and sallies, to defende the sayd Ditch, specially if the bancke descending from the Curtine, bee cutte rounde with couert and close Trenches, euen with the Counterscarpe: as was about the dry Ditch of Louayne, vnder the government of my Collonell the Baron of Cheuerau, when we did dayly attend the siege of 60000. men in Campe by Machlin, guided by Casamire and the Counte Bossu. 1578.

Lyke wise a Ditch being dry, one may comodiously take away the ruines, which the Enimies make with theyr batteries: to the intent the sayde ruines, doe not serue the Enimie for a Ladder or steppes, to mount vp to the Fortresse, and for a Trench.

A dry Ditch hath lyke wise thys good comoditie, that when the Enimie would fill it with fagotes, they may be the more easilie burnt, the which woulde not come to passe, if water were in the same, which doth extinguishe fyre, and make the Ditch more easie to be filde.

Water is lyke wise more dangerous in the time of Frost: for that being frosen, it maketh the walles more apt and easie to be scaled and surprisid. The dry Ditch is in this to be commended, that when the Souldiers sallie out to skirmishe, or do any other action, and would retyre by reason of the violent charge the Enimie giues them, they may saue themselves in the dry Ditch, if the draw bridge of the Fortresse were forced to be drawen vp.

A drye Ditch is lyke wise good, that vpon any suddayne affaire or inuasion in tyme of warre, one may saue the Cattell of the adioyning Country, within the sayd Ditches.

Notwithstanding all these deuises for y<sup>e</sup> defending of a Fortresse being considered, yet am I of a grounded opinion, that it is no wyse, dome to put such assured repose and trust in a Fortresse, howe strong soeuer it be, and how well victualled and furnished with all necessary thinges, that it is able of it selfe continually or any long tyme, to resist the force of a Royall Armie: For ether the Defensours become wearie, or by warlike sallies deuoured, wasted, and so by little and little, remayne consumed, or else the munition and the victualles, the which consists of infinite thinges, do fayle, if  
not

not in all respects, at leastwise in some particularers: the which, although it seeme to haue bene very little, yet hath it bene manie times the occasion of a generall losse: so that it doth much moze ensue when the principall things doe want, as water, wood, bread, wine, beare, vineger, salt, drye flesh, and such like particularities, necessary for mans life.

Moreover, these things following, may procure the losse and ruine of a Fortresse, byzing of the Situation, the vaine consuming of the same, or by the meanes of Mutinies, secret treasons, the death of some principall person, or els the deuouring damage which the sundry shots of the Artillary hath made: and cheefelic where sometimes doth want matter to repaire y<sup>e</sup> ruine of a breach, and to stop by y<sup>e</sup> battered wall. Sometimes the carelesse diligence of the Captaines and souldiours defendants, suffer the Towne to be wonne by Mines. And others haue been gained by vnder shade and pickaxe, as was attempted by Duke Charles at Metz, and performed by the great Turke befoze Famagosta in Cypres, the which they performe in thys sort. With five or sixe thousand Miners, they begin a rowling Trench, somewhat far from the Ditches, and neuer cease day nor night, untill they haue performed they<sup>r</sup> enterprisc, wherfoze they place their Miners by garde and course, that one part workes whilst another rests, and when the earth is at the beginning raised the height of a man, and of the largenes that the same Trenches is to be made, there doe some of the Miners stand aloft, to cast by the earth that those beneath cast vnto them, and so they alwaies continue, euen vntil such time as they haue made a Mountaine, neere to the Ditch. And when they be there, they make Bastillions, to withstand the sallies that those of the Towne might make vpon the Miners, and so alwaies wyth great numbers of Miners, they cast thys Mountaine into the Ditch, the which consequently being as high or higher then the wall, they enter with the same into the Fortresse, and so at their pleasure expugne the same, against which, it seemes that neither men nor Artillary can preuaile to vse defence, but that time will eate them out.

Yet thys notwithstanding, every Fortresse in a Frontire, or vpon the border of any Country of importance, ought to be made as strong as is possible, without sparing of any cost, who although they cannot as is aforesaid, resist the reall force of an Armie, ne-  
uerthelesse

uerthelesse they may entertaine and deferre time after time, vntill such time as the part assaulted doe resolue to entreate of peace, truce, or accord: or els procure such provision, as shall be sufficient for his defence vntill succour arrine to relieue the besieged. As in the yeere 1565. when the Isle of Malta was succoured against the mightie Turkish Armie, a thing no lesse wisely then courageously performed: the same being galantly defended. For thes against continuall assaults, infinite furie, and innumerable shotte of Artillary, to the eternall memozy of the defenders. Yet for all this they<sup>r</sup> braue disposition, if they had not bene succoured, the strong Fortresse had bene lost, a thing to be noted of such as be Opiniatro.

Therefore all the foresaid aduertisements and many others, which appertaine to like matter, that I heere for breuities sake omit to write, ought to be well vnderstood, searched and disciphered, and with the practise and right iudgement of a notable Souldiour, not onely conceiue and carrie in minde euery perfect subiect and discourse, but also haue at his fingers ends, all that eyther he hath seene or may be seene, or any thing able to be put in execution touching such importantt affayres.

Likewise he must be of profound knowledge, and apt to yeelde ayde and giue counsaile when neede requires, or when he is called thereunto by his Prince. For by such vertuous meanes, moze then by other that be lesse lawfull, idle and vicious, hee may vndoubtedly make himselfe acceptable, and become gratefull to euery great personage: to which good disposition and sufficiencie it followes, that of them he shall be very much employed & esteemed, and so consequently shall come to merite the honour, profit, and recompence due for so great trauaile.

The which, although it doe not succede and fall out speedily, yet time doth bring forth the same, who being the father of truth, doth faithfully in the end, manifest the merite or demerite of the man, to the confusion of the wicked and vicious worldlings, who by vile iniquitie work to blind the excellencie of other mens vertues and valour.

Two things therefore there be that time can not deuoure, although that intirely it discover the same, neyther can Fortunes destroy them, and they be: The vertue of those men which bee written in Bookes: And the knowne truth. The which although  
P p. 2. for



for a tyme they may be hydden, yet in the end they appeare to be cleere and manifest. And therefore the woorthy actions of a good man, is the occasion that we should haue him in great estimation: for which respect, in the ende he ariseth to be wonderfully rewarded.

The order that is to be obserued, when a Fortresse is not able to be wonne by Batterie, Assault, Escalade, Mynes or Rowling Trench, but by Famine.

When a Generall that hath taken the charge of a siege, shall assuredly know, that the Cittie or Fortresse that hee shall besiege, cannot be taken by force in any sort whatsoeuer, but that he must gaine the same by a long siege. Fyrst he must with diligence and good counsaile, oftentimes discover and view the situation of the place, and chosse the seate where hee may Encampe and lodge his Souldiours. Aboue all things he must be ware that he plant himselfe in such a place, as that the ayre become not corrupted, taking for example Mounseieur de Lawtrece at the siege of Naples, who by his occasion, besides the ouerthrowe of his enterprise, lost both all hys Armie and his owne lyfe, with the ruins of a great part of the Nobility of Fraunce.

That he chosse likewise a place that is proper for his purpose, through the commoditie of wood and water, and other necessary things for mans sustenance, and couert and safe from danger of the enemies Artillary, as much as is possible. If the place that hee doth besiege be great, and furnished with great number of Footemen and Horsemen, which be able to make sallies and come to skirmish, he must incontinently take order, that hys Campe be fortified in such sort, as he shall thinke most conuenient to fronte the force of the enemy.

Thys done, he must take from the enemies, all the commodities he can, as water and all other things, which may yeld them sustenance or reliefe, and to reduce them to the greatest necessity he can.

Moreouer, it hath bene seene by experience, that to deuide an Armie, and to make it ouerweake when it is neere a Cittie, is a very dangerous thing, principally when there is great force of  
haue

haue and baliante Souldiours within the Towne. As fell out at the siege of Florence, where two Chiefes were elected, the one on thys side the Riuer Arno towards the North, which were the Almaines, and the other towards the South, where was the person of the Generall with the greatest force of the Armie. Florence therefore to deliuer it selfe from such continuall toyle, did sallie out by night, and assault the Almaine Armie with such furie, that had there not been great disorder amongst the assailants, the Almaine Armie had entirely bene ouerthrowne, and Florence had been deliuered from siege on that side.

Wherefore I thinke the most assured and the easiest way is, to enclose and restraine the besieged Towne by means of Forts, as was practised in the warres at Mirandell and Sienna.

Visite diligently all the waies and passages, by the which succours may be giuen to the Towne besieged. At every such place you ought to make a Fort, and to approach so neere, as with foure Forts or more you may enuiron all the Cittie. I woulde not haue these Forts so that they be litle, to be feeble, neither that they should be situate in such a place, but that they might ayde one another. The forme which I would wish them to be of, I haue here sette forth.



Afterwardes, with the rest of his Armie, he must plant himselfe in such a place, as from thence at tyme of neede, he may succour his Forts, or at the least with one part thereof, hauing fyrt sounded the force of the enemy: then taking the Artillary which he shall thinke most necessary, hee shall endeuour himselfe to become the Maister of the Countrey round about him: specially of such places as he is able to force. Whereby he may reape great commodity,

moditie, as well by victualles, wherby he may nourish his Armie, as that thereby hee it all take away from the besieged all hope of succour, and likewise by that meanes, cause his Armie to be feared: so that the Countrey eyther through loue or feare, shall neyther take occasion to rebell, or yeld him any resistance.

What is to be obserued, when any Cittie or Fortresse is able to be expugned by battery &c. to approach and besiege the same.

I presently haue declared, howe much it importeth to chose for encamping a plotte of ground, commodious, healthfull and assured: now I will speake of the order which is to be used, and necessary to be obserued, when a Generall supposeth himselfe able to gayne a Fortresse or Cittie by maine force of Armes.

First the Marshall of the fielde must goe with practised souldiours, and of tryed experience in the warres, well accompanied, to the intent they may safely viewe and consider the circuite and situation of the Towne, and to see vpon what side Trenches may be made for the planting of the Artillarie.

Above all he must be careful and prouident, that the earth be of such nature and qualitie, that it will receiue the Spade & Pickaxe, and be apt to make Trenches in, and other necessary thinges to couer themselues against the enemye.

To thinke that a man may perfectly discover & view a Towne or Fortresse eyther in the day or in the nyght, it is impossible: for in the day, the enemye will not giue a man leaue or leysure, at leastwise if they be men of courage. In the nyght one cannot directly and thorowly, neyther discover the flankes, Bulwarks and Ditches, neither behold many particularities, which be necessary to him, which will aptly & in good order prepare himselfe to make an assault.

But the same discovery may be well and commodiously done, when the Trenches shall be made, the which may bring him euen to the Ditches. There the Generall himselfe may at his ease, behold and discern all that he desires to know.

Touching the manner and fashion to make the Trenches, although there be diuers opinions, neuertheless for the greater satisfaction

of the Reader, I haue drawne out diuers fashions, which seeme to be most commodious, most sure, and most easie, as in the sundry portraictures of thys Booke doth appeare.

But above all he must prouide, that in the Trenches there be places to plant the bodie of the watch assured: and in such sort as they may be able to giue succoure one to another.

Likewise there ought to be issues or passages to goe out of them, as you may behold by thys figure.



Thys done, you must chose a place to plant your Artillarie, with Cabions, Wall-packs, and other Engines proper to those affayres, and carefully take order and foresee, that the Master Gunner, and Gunstable of the Artillarie, and other inferiour Officers, haue experience and good knowledge herein.

Accomodate thicke boordes or tymer close together, where the battery is planted, for the Artillarie to run vpon: and foresee that those planckes, yeelde a certaine fall and descending to towards the Cannones, to the intent that after they bee recueled, they may be the moze easily brought againe into theyr places. By this meanes the peeces shall remaine assured from running and sinking into the grounde in wette and rainie weather.

Diuers are of opinion, that the Artillarie ought not to be planted any further distance of from the Fortresse, more then one hundred and fytie pases, if the situation of the grounde will permitte.

I will omitte to speake of the qualitie of the Artillaris. Onely I say, that according to the vse in this age, the Cannons ought to bee of thre scoze, reinforced in such sort, that a man neede not to feare that they shall not remaine firme and iust, although they be shotte from the morning euen unto the euening.

The greater the batterie is made, and with the greater number of peeces, the more shall hee annoy the enemye, and make easie his enterprize: specially if the batterie may be crossed and trauesed.

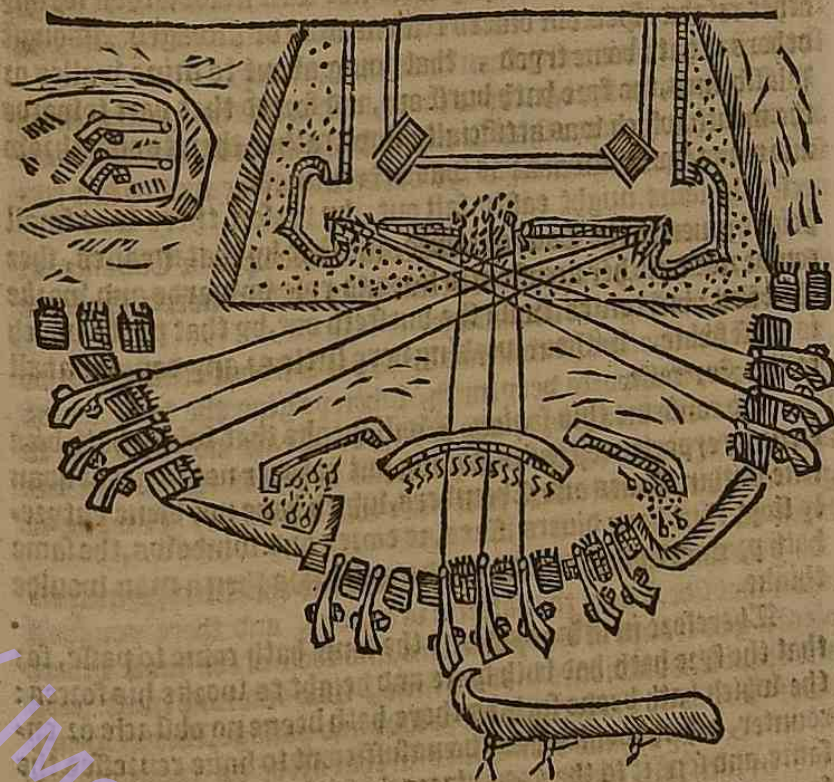
If you can haue the commoditie to raise vpon a Cavalier or Mount, so that thereby the Curtine may be discovered, the same shall remaine of great aduantage.

Note that you must continually shoote without ceasing if it be possible, for it imposts very much, when ye giue the besieged no leysure to take bzeath or make repayze. Cease not likewise to shoote in the night, for the perfozmaunce whereof there is manie good meanes, as hereafter (if leysure will permitte) I meane to write of.

You shall make your Trenches nere to the Ditch, principally lie on that side where the batterie is made, and there you shall place a good troupe of Hargubuziers, and those of the most expert and bzauest Souldiours in the Armie, who likewise must haue theyr Corpes de garde, with theyr issue and passage, theyr Corpes de garde, may behaue themselues in that order as you may behold, in such sort, as they may likewise serue for the flanks, the enemies Artillary first displanted.

These Hargabuziers or rather Musketeares, must haue peeces of two ounces of Calibre, for by such like y besieged are greatly troubled, principally when the walles and Bulwarkes begin to ruinate. This figure next following makes my former woords more apparant.

By



By reason that for the most parte, the Counterscarpes couer the flanks, so that a man cannot easily endamage them, the said Counterscarpes must be cutte and opened in such sorte, that the flanks may be battered.

But touching the filling vp of the Ditches, and to cotier and choake them, is a worke both difficile and long, if they within the Fortrelle be men of courage and experience, vntlesse it bee a rowling Trench. If the fortification be of earth, the ruine thereof may be attempted, by entering into the Ditch, and cut it dovene, as oftentimes it hath bene experienced.

Howe resteth it to speake somewhat of Mines and Caves, for that they be matters of great effect, as hath bene often tryed, as well

D. q.

as well in times past as in these dayes. And although sometymes they haue not fallen out according to mans pretence, the same did aryse rather, because they were not well made, then for any other respect. Herein diuers reasons may be alleaged. Amongst others it hath bene tryed, that going about to mine walles or Platfozmes, the fyze hath burst out, and forced that part towards the mouth, which was artificially stoppt, rather then to ouerthrow and ruine the Bulwarke as was determined.

The same might easily fall out, by reason there was small height giuen to the Caue or haute, and that by that meanes, she coulde not take her accustomed force, to ryle by warde and worke the effect: but contrariwise she bursteth out, by that parte which is most feble, without working very little or any damage at all to the Fortresse.

To confirme this saying, I will speake that which hath ben seene by experience, that is, hauing put powder not in great quantitie within Caues and Chambers, which haue not bene entyrelly stoppt: but haue diuers issues, as doores and windows, the same hath procured great ruines, and much moze then a man woulde thinke.

Therefore in mine opinion, the same hath come to passe, for that the fyze hath had both space and height to worke his forces: the which hath bene such, as there hath bene no obstacle or encounter, which woulde haue bene sufficient to haue repressed the same, and sent it to the open places, but it hath wrought and performed his course, according to the effect of his nature. Therefore when these Caues or Hautes are made, as dooth appertaine, giuing them such forme, as this Clement may worke his forces and effect, certaynely they bring forth maruellous effects.

But for that these thinges are necessary to be entreated of in particular, I will beginne a fresh to delate somewhat moze largely thereof. Therefore when an Armie doth march to bessege any Citty: It is necessary before hand, to examine the intelligences of such persons, as perfectly knowe the situation thereof, the strength, and all the wayes and passages vnto the same. And hauing together with the principall Captaynes, made full discourse thereof, for they perfect instruction: determination must be made, what is to be done vpon they appoach to the Towne, and what lodgings must be ceased vpon at the first, whether one,

two,

two, or moze according to the situation of the place, and as is most conuenient. For it is euer much better, for two reasons, to lodge euen at the first, as neere vnto the Portes and Gates as it is possible.

The one is, that the enemy thereby shall be much abashed and discouraged: the other is, that they shall haue no leysure to burne the adioyning houses, where the Army may lodge, if before it be not already done: neither shall these bee hindered, to take their Lodgings, or mount their Artillarie, to goe to that lodging a fresh vpon an other day. Sometime it hath bene seene, that the Armie hath planted & lodged it selfe, before 3 or 4 gates at one instant, one part of the Campe as soone as an other, the which hath bene tryed very good, so that there were people enough in the Armie. The Marshall of the host must be accompanied, with so forcible and strong a band of horsemen and footemen, that he may ouermatch those of the Town: who, if they chaunce to sallie forth either on foote or on horse-backe, to repulse them as furiously as is possible, euen within the Gates: for sometimes there falles out such disorder and confusion, that either they may enter Pesse, or kill some Chieftana, or make such a slaughter of Souldiours, that the Towne shall be much the sooner taken: at the least, wise vpon the repulse, the Master Gunner or Ingeniour, following the great Marshall, may haue commoditie to view and discover the places and plottes, where the Artillarie is to be planted, &c. Which beeing accomplished, the Marshall is to sound the retraite, and to lodge as neere the Towne as is possible, so that it be without the batterie.

The approaches be made by Trenches, and Haunds, & will lackes, as before I haue declared, and as hereafter may appeare by figures, in the defence of a Town. Neuerthelesse, they must be accommodated according to the situation of the ground, and turned and compassed according to the opposite Bulwarke of the enemy, the which are to be begunne in the night, specially the planting of the batterie.

The Trenches are to be made, high, great, large, and deepe, for the safety of the Souldiours, and such men of account as vse to come into them: in respect that the Prince himselfe, may sometimes goe into them, neuerthelesse becometh idle.

The Trenches beeing begunne where the Artillarie is, they must

must be continued on euen to the Gates, thereby to cut of sallies. And against all the Portes, make a Bulwarke of Gabions, one vpon an other, and if it bee possible, närer the Towne then the Trenches, both to stoppe their battery alongst the Trenches, and to barre theyr sallies.

Vpon that side towards the Campe, must be made Ditches & little Trenches, for y<sup>e</sup> Corps de Garde, of those that must guard the Trenches, wherein must remaine such number of Combatants, as they may be able to repulle the enemy vntil succour arriue, which must be vpon great necessity: and then beeing ayded with some mayne Squadron, to repulle them with great furie.

For the better prohibiting and knowledg of which issues and sallies, it is not only requisite, to aduance the Trenches euen to the Counterscarpe and brincke of the Ditch, but also to haue lost Sentinelles euery night betwixt the Towne and the Trenches, within the sayd Ditch, if it be dry. Wherein lyke wise a good Ingeniour, may worke many good deuises.

The Marshall must if occasion serue, fortifie towards the Champayne, place the Princes or Generals lodging in the midst of the Campe, that he may giue order to all mutinies, sallies, allarms, and disorders. And if the Towne be well peopled, to make certaine such Fortes as befoze I haue set downe, governed wth valiant Captaynes, and good bandes of Souldiours, to keepe shoote the enemy. And those lodgings or Campes so well distributed, that they may remaine safe from inuasion, yet so apt to come together, that vpon the arriual of any Armie, they may at one instant issue out, and be ranged together in battaile to fight: and therefore if a Riuer passe through the Towne, a bridge must be placed to passe ouer, guarded at both endes with bandes of Souldiours, that thereby victualles and succours may be barred from the enemy. It is rather to be placed aboue, then beneath vpon the Riuer, in respect to auoyde burning by artificiall fyre, or else to be planted where they looke chæfely for succours.

Observations for an assault, and the sacke of a Citty.

When the batterie of the Cannons haue made sufficient breach, and that the same is saultable, great diligence and celeritie is to be vsed, for that diuers thinges at one instant are to be

be done. The Campe must be all in armes, and in battayles: the Assailants ready in the Trenches to giue assault, & the Pyoners to carry Ladders, or such Engines as are inuented for the safety of the Souldiours. If the Ditch be full of water, and that the same hath neither bene cut down, nor drawne drye by artificiall Milles, and buckets, such as here Brewers vse. Then must the Pyoners roul forward the artificiall Bridge, made vpon Barrels of purpose for that respect, hauing befoze cut the Counterscarpe to put the same into the ditch: the which must be done nimble, and at one instant. During which time, the Artillarie must beate towards that place, to barre the besieged from endomaging the action.

Also when the great Master of the Artillarie, shall perceiue the batterie to haue made large, easie, and sufficient breach, & to haue displaced the flankers. He must giue aduertisement, that the Assailants may procede, if the assault be first determined vpon. Which beeing concluded: the assailants must remaine ready and in order to aduance, when the last blow of the Cannon is giuen, and that they beholde the ruinous fall, of that which was determined to be battered, & then shall all the Artillarie discharge, great and small. And when the Souldiours begin to march forwardes to the assault, each one shall shoote to breake the remparts and other strengthes, which it may be the enemy hath made, and thereby to amaze them the more. But then must the great Artillarie cease to shoote at the batterie, for feare of hurting your own people: but they shall shoote at the defences which shall be somewhat further off, and the which might arse to be hurtfull to the sayd Assailants.

But the lesse Pieces shall alwayes shoote at the breach, vntil such time, as they see their people pass the Ditch, and that they be mounted as high as the sayd breach, and so cease there.

It hath bene vsed of some, to put all the Campe in Armes, (hauing determined in what place they will assault, which is in the greater number the better, but in two at the least) for pollicie to make shew with inuasion, cryes, and noyse of Drums, towards that place where hee meanes not to giue the assault, to amaze those within the Fort, and also to separate them into diuers places, to the intent, they may haue lesse at the breach: and accordingly put his people in order, that is to say at the two places where

where he meanes to make the assault in god earnest, consisting of strong and puissant bandes: all which companies must marche close and sacried together in this order following.

First if neede should require, there must bee certayne people ready to carry Ladders and such Engines, to adzesse and reare them to the breach. After them must followe, the men at Armes, and other Souldiours well armed, which must goe toynly together with them that carry the Ladders.

The shotte, aswell Musket as Hargabuziers, ought to bee within the Trenches, and so euery band which is to assault, is to remayne in order, and must march afoote and in troupe: for whether it be to ascend the breach, or Ladders, the last must thrust the foremost forwardes and bywardes. And from the time they begin to march, the Artillarie must shote: to the end, the enemies haue no leysure, to shote at them that march in the Ditches.

And when they are within the sayd Ditches, the small Artillarie must alwaies batter at the defences and breach, vntill such time as thy come hande to hande. And likewise the shotte, aswell Musket as Hargabuziers, must be vpon the bzincke of the Ditch, alwaies shooting and defending, that not one of the towne do so much as appeare at their defences or loope-holes.

The high Marshall of the fielde, must stand with the rest of the Armie ranged in battaile, and placed in such conuenient sort as is needefull. And this for thre reasons.

First, if the enemies should giue charge vpon the Armie, during the assault: hee must bee of sufficient power to defende the Campe, which must bee so well fortified, that he may resist any force or inuasion.

Secondly, if it bee necessary a fresh supplie, for the assault: hee must culle out such and so manie, as will serue the turne, and send them immediatly.

Thirdly, if the Assailants shoulde bee repulsed, and that they did retyze, which is to be presuppoted, will be in disorder & confusedly, neither is it otherwise possible, and that those of the towne thereupon doe make a sallie, it being not like that those should be brought to make front, that were so lately forced to retyze. The high Marshall must then marche in order, with some maine Battillion to succour his people, & to repulse the enemies, and so may it appeare, to what ende the order and battailes ranged in the Campe doe serue.

If as I said befoze, it chaunce that the Assailants be repulsed, as great stoze of shotte as is possible, must be retained vpon the bzinckes of the Ditches within the Trenches, to shote alwaies at the defences. And likewise the Cannoniers ought to be readie at that instant to do theyr duetie, if it so chaunce. For it is the custome of the besieged, at the repulse of an Assault, the souldiours moze willingly do show themselves, and appeare carelesly at the breaches then at the beginning, through the hart and courage they haue taken to see theyr enemies repulsed, and likewise at the loope holes, and ouer the Rampiers, for they thinke the that no man can hurt them. So that if the shotte be plyed, it shal greatly endamage them, benefit the retraite very much, and shall saue many god Souldiours.

If the Armie be lodged in thre or foure seuerall Camps, & forsetyed lodgings as befoze I haue touched, euery one in theyr quarter must thus be guided. And during the assault, the General, Sergeant Maiors, and other Counsellors of the warre, must haue an eye to all things, and specially to the nature and qualitie of the assaults, ayding them with all artificiall and warlike inuentions. And if there be any that linger behinde at the tayle of the rest, there must be Officers appointed of purpose (without sparing of any) to chase them forwardes, with naked swordes, and perforce them with blowes to accompany the Assailants.

The General, or the great Master of the Artillarie, (as I haue already said) must vse diligence, to cause the Gunners and the other shotte to ayde the assault, but so as they hurte not theyr owne companions. Neyther must the Generall euer rest in any one place, but ryde here and there, and direct all thinges, vnlesse he haue the commoditie to see all the assaults and assayzes of the Campe, from some place or platfoyme: from whence he must by some worthy Cavaliers giue order what is to be done.

If any alarm chaunce in the Armie, towardes the Champaigne during the assault, those which be at the assault, must not leaue nor slacke theyr duetie, for the Marshall and those Colonels appointed for that purpose, are to resist the same.

It hath bene somtimes likewise seene (although very seldom) that a number of Souldiours haue sallied out of the Towne, during the assault, to be an impediment to the Assailants, and to affright them behinde. And therefore the Marshall of the fielde, hauing

uing severall Squares by themselves for such like accidents, must sende one of them, that may incontinently marche to gyve them a furious repulse, and to enter pelle melle with them if it be possible. It is a thing almost neuer accomplished, yet neuertheless they must do theyr best.

Nowe if it chaunce that the Towne be taken by assaulte, a publique band or cry must be made, that the bootie and sacke, shal be gyuen as well to them that haue stood in battayle, as to those that were at the Assault. Otherwise, it were almost impossible to constrain any one to keepe order, but that euery one woulde be at the spoyle.

Immediately vpon the taking of the Towne, the Prince or Generall, being accompanied with 20. or 30. Cavaliers, and other of his Garde, must enter into the Towne, with his sword naked in his hand, and must goe to the principall Church to giue God thanks for his victorie, and also to defend, that the ornaments which appertaine to the Church be not pyllled nor robbed, & must leaue people to garde the same. And if the enemye do not stand to theyr defence in the Churches, he must prohibite and hinder to his power that no blood be shedde in them, for the house of God ought to be pure and free from slaughters.

And from thence he must goe to other Churches, and by and in the streets likewise, hinder such euils. Incontinently he must make cry through the Cittie, that none vppon payne of hanging, neither take nor spoyle any Churches.

Also that vpon thys paine, none do violate, nor vse force to any religiqus woman, and that not any also do violate Maydes, or married women, or any others against theyr wils, which lawes must be strongly kept, and those seuerely punished that offende therein.

Thys done, he must sende for his Marshall of lodgings, and cause him to deuide the Quarters, for those people he would haue lodged in the Towne: wherein there is alwaies some trouble, and many debates doe arise. For those which haue pyllled and taken the houses, will not auoide by theyr god willes, and therefore hee must haue a good eye, that these dissentions and debates do not arise. For oftentimes whole bands doe trouble themselves with these particulers.

Some to auoide these dissentions, doe sweare certaine substantiall

stantiall persons of euery Bande, to make booties for all the rest, and to become accountable that equall distribution may be vsed, it being brought to the Ensigne, which thing I iudge impossible to be obserued in our age.

It hath bene the vse in some Armies, that after the winning of a Towne, to retyze to the Campe. And of some, that they did all withdrawe themselves within the Towne, and lodge there. Which two contrarieties, I leaue to the discretion of the Chiefe: vnlesse the Campe being very well fortified and accommodated, and contrariwise the Towne small and straight of lodging: in this case I would wish them to retire to the Campe, especially if you meane to put a Garison in the Towne, thereby to auoide the spoyle of victuals, and other confusions.

But if the Campe be not well fortified, and that you do feare the coming of the Enemye, and that the Towne be wide and great, sufficient to lodge your Arme: then shal it be good to enter the Towne, for it shall be hard vpon occasion when necessitie requires, to cause all the Souldiours to retyze out of the Towne to the fielde, but that a great part will remaine behind, vnlesse a man will sette the whole Towne on fyre, which is the onely way to cause them abandon the Towne, and otherwise not, but with great labour and length of time.

Thus haue I partly touched what is to be done at the assault of a Towne, at the sacke thereof, and after the spoyle. Whelie I haue omitted, that the great Maister of the Artillary, to procure a good battery, must now and then, to hartten and encourage the Gunners, giue them severally and vpon occasion, certaine peces of money or gold, to make them apply a pace the battery.

And likewise that the Generall, when the souldiours stande readie to giue the assault, and that they be in order to march, that he cause to be published before the Assaultants, that the first which breache the breach and enters the Towne, shal haue such a sum of money by him limited, and the second so much, which is lesse, and the third not so much as the other two. The which shal make them more couragiously to keepe the ground, and to aduance themselves forward, to repulse the Enemye valiantly, and to enter triumphantly.

Or

What

What is to be obserued of those, which haue charge giuen them to keepe and defende a Fortresse, and what remedies they haue to saue themselues at a siege, batterie, and assault.

**H**Auing presently declared, how to besiege and expugne a hold, I will now declare the order of the keeping of a Fortresse, and the meanes wherewith the besieged are to defende themselues, an action to be perfozmed, as well with the quicknes of the spirit, as the provelse of the body.

How for that the defence of a Cittie or any Fortresse, is one of the most importantt affayres, that can in the warres be committed to any mans charge, it is very necessary for him that is to carrie such a burden, that he be very hardie, of good experience, very vigilant, and exceeding rich in inuentions, to the intent he may be able, redily to resolue vpon all suddaine chaunces, as well to repayze the ruine the Artillary makes, as to furnish himselfe against diuers accidents that doe fall out, not onely through the want of courage in the Souldiours, but also by reason of the cowardise and clamours of the people, whereby many inconueniences doe arise.

Wherefore he must with his prudent and haughtie courage, resist and striue against the feare and ignorance of hys people, carrying in his countenance such a maiestie and grauitie, that his commaundements may be of euery one reuerenced, approved for god and perfozmed.

But he cannot enioy these qualities, if hee be not a person of experience, and that in times past hath yelded good account, and honourable effects of himselfe in his actions.

Moreover, it is necessary that he shew himselfe most forward of all men, each where, as greatest dangers of importaunce doe principally fall out. Hee must likewise be able with his speech to encourage his people, for in great affaires & dangers, if a Chiefestaine cannot serue turne by these meanes, feare wil easily slide into the harts of his Souldiours, which after wards can not be plucked out but with great paine.

It is likewise requisite he be of such a nature, that he willingly suffer to speake, and giue eare to those which would giue hym aduise

aduise and counsaile. yea even of the simple Souldiours, for often times very profitable things be learned of such persons: and many god counsailes haue bene found hid in a man of base condition. I doe not meane that he should alwaies followe euery aduise that is giuen him, but serue his turne with those that are for his purpose, and reiect the rest.

Let him with dexteritie procure himselfe to be obeyed, as well by his Souldiours, as by the inhabitants of the place, for obedience is one of the principall things which is necessary to be had in the warres, without the which, all enterprises are made frustrate and turne to nothing. But as the nature of many people is different, so I thinke it not alwaies conuenient, to vse lenitie & clemencie, principally towardes souldiours: Neyther also is it alwaies expedient, to vse ferour and threathnings. Wherefore it shall be very good, yea and most necessary, to mixe seueritie with clemencie, and to change nature according to occurrences, and to accommodate himselfe to the qualitie of the fortune whereinto a man doth fall.

I must not omit to aduertise the Captaine that shall chaunce to be in such a faction, specially to defend, vpon paine of greenous punishment, that his people make no speech with others, neyther amongst themselues, of any composition whatsoever with the Enemy: for if this opinion should spring vp amongst a multitude, it behoues him to quench the same with as great diligence as is possible: by reason it is a thing which of ordinary doth happen in Townes that are battered, and that be reduced to an extreame perrill. For if these rumors or opinions should once take roote, it shall be afterwards very difficile to stoppe the Souldiours from Mutinies. Let him therefore foresee, that hee prevent the following of these and all other dangerous events. Wherefore euery Chiefestaine, ought to haue this poynnt in singular commendation, for that it toucheth him particularly, and is of great importaunce for the conseruation of his credite and honour. And according to my iudgement, he shall much more content his Prince, if he lose the same intirely, with magnanimitie of courage, rather then he should yeelde the same with most honourable conditions. For in those conditions doth not consist the entire satisfaction of his Prince, if it be not that hee be thereunto expressly commaunded, and in that case must accept the condition appointed him.



He must not haue regard to the sauing of his souldiours, neither to theyr desire: for when the Chiefetaine doth commit anie fault more then his due tie, the souldiours beare not the blame. It is he vpon whom euery one hath his eyes fixed, and to him it onely appertaines to yeeld account to his Prince, and to all y<sup>e</sup> world, both of his owne actions and of his honour, considering that it is a great grieue for a worthy Capitaine, to haue his honour come in doubt and in question.

But now, to descend to the particulars of keeping & defending of a Fortresse. We must haue such number and store of Artillarie, as is sufficient to garnish the Bulwarks, Platfozmes, Cauaheres, and other places where neede requires.

It shall be hard to giue any speciall particular rule touching the places where they are to be planted: for according as occasiō doth offer, men are constrained to change aduise, sometimes planting many, and sometimes very fewe, in respect as well of the small number of the assailants, as of his small store of Munition.

It is requisite that euery Pece haue his instruments and necessary furnitures, with sufficient store of bullets and powder.

Besides, a Fortresse must be storied with all sorts of instruments, which are knowne by experience, fit and proper for the defence thereof.

Vpon worke of all sorts be likewise necessary, coales in great quantitie, with other Munition, which serue for the making of artificiall fires.

Likewise there must be all prouisions and necessary matters to make powder, and chiefly Milnes of all sorts. Furthermore, instruments for the Pyoners, as Pickaxes, Spades, Shouels, Pattocks, Baskets for the hande, Whelebarrowes, and other such like Instruments, to carrie earth, wood, sagots, & in summe, all other matters proper to make Ramparts, and to repayze the ruine the Artillery makes.

That there be likewise great numbers of Gabions, to couer and defend themselves from the Artillery, in the which neuertheless it is not good to trust ouer-much, although they be great and very well filld: for experience hath made profe, that it is not good to put assured confidence in them: but yet they be altogether necessary, when a man will vse them to couer his people, when hee begins to repayze or make any other worke.

Like-

Likewise he must haue all sorts of Artificers, as Carpenters, Smithes, Masons, Cutters of stone, and Quarels, & such like.

The Fortresse must likewise be well furnished, with all sorts of Armes and weapons, that they may be distributed to the souldiours, people, seruants, prentises, and great Mutchaches when occasion doth require: for it is as great a praise to cōserue a place as to conquire it.

It behoues him moreover to be very circumspect and carefull, against Camifades and suddaine surprises, cheefely when the Enemy is so neere, that in one night he may come thither and giue a scalade, as Alba, Casall, and diuers other Fortresses haue felt. The Corpes de gardes and the Sentinels, be not sufficient, when a man hath to deale with an hardie Enemy, which willingly doth try fortune, and delights in actions of the night, the which when they be well conducted grow to meruailous issue.

Besides, the diligence vsed in the placing of the bodies of the watch and Sentinels, I thinke it very requisite, there should be sent forth of the Cittie or Fortresse, eyght or tenne Horsemen, to skoure the way on that side that the Enemy might come to gyue the scalade and assault: for by this meanes you shall remaine assured, that there can nothing fall out, whereof you shall not be aduertised in due time to prepare your selfe for defence. For want of Horsemen, vse some Footemen, for lost Sentinels, a Culuerine shot from the Towne.

To prevent the dangers which a man may receiue by his owne proper Souldiours, let not any of them know what Quarter they haue to keepe, neyther in what place they must be sette in Sentinell, but euery night change Quarter, and sende out continuall Roundes by the Gentlemen Cavaliers of S. Georges Squadron, and Souldiours appointed for that purpose, who carefullie may visite both the bodies of the watch, the generall places of Armes in the Towne, and the Sentinels vpon the walles and in the streetes, according to the dutie of theyr Office prescribed them in my second Booke.

I iudge it likewise requisite, that he which is Chiefe, which doth commaund, and hath the keeping of a Fortresse, must not in any case, permit his Souldiours to practise, deuise and become familiar with the Enemy, as hath bene oftentimes seene, and principally of the Italians and our Nation: but contrariwise

ought

ought to defend them the same, and altogether behaue themselues like Enemies.

Suffer not often to enter into y<sup>e</sup> Towne the Enemies Drums and Trumpets, for they may be of such craftie and practised qualitie as might become very hurtfull, and as by experience was seene in the warres of Parma, at the taking of Torchaira, where, by the practise of a Drummer, which had the commodity to view, discern, the measure and height of the Ramparts, the Towne was taken, and the Prince of Macedonia the Governour there, of slayne. Therfore to auoyd such inconuenience, some haue vled to blindfold the Enemies Drum and Trumpeter, with a scarfe, vpon his first comming to the Sentinell without the Gates, and fro thence to send a Sergiant or other trustie Officer with him, to the Governour, who accompanying hym vntill hys returne, may disband hys eyes, a Hargabuze shot from the walles.

I cannot heere passe ouer with silence, one note among other great trauels and toyles in warfare, which falls out in the defence of a Fortresse. In that sometimes a Prince or Generall wil commaund thee to goe into a Towne or Castell, which befoze hande you know by effect, to be of small defence: wherefoze considering it is a difficile thing, for a Souldiour of approued experience, to yeeld account of hys honoz, together with the losse of a Fortresse, many haue thought it good to refuse such a charge, by meanes whereof, they haue lost the god grace of theyr Prince, and haue bene diffamed of him & of the people, and accounted as cowards and dastards. Wherefoze in my iudgement, a Souldiour of honour, ought rather to accept such a charge then to refuse it, yea, if it were to runne headlong into manifest danger, doing his dutie neuerthelesse, with as great dilligence and valour as he can possiblie.

It is good for all that, he giue his Prince or Generall to vnderstand, that the same place is of no defence, neuerthelesse, to do hym seruice, he is resolutely determined to hazard his life therein. Now if hys Chiefetaine be of discretion, as it is to be presupposed he is, and one that will not shewe himselfe ingratefull towarde his Souldiours, he wyll honour this Souldiour, and recompence hym for hys valour and loyaltie.

To come to the defence of a siege, I woulde first require the Chiefetaine, to reade my generall notes of fortification, wherein and

and in the other parts of this Booke, he shall finde many good aduertisements and obseruations.

Howeouer, let him aboue all things, victuall hys Fortresse well, for though it be otherwise inuincible, yet for want of the same it may be lost: for a Towne being once besieged, it is hard to victuall the same, or to discharge it of improfitable mouths, for the one is very hard & vncertaine, the other doth profit smally, touching which, Florence and Sienna in the wars of lealie may be an example, who going about to vse this remedie, were in the end smally discharged. But alas, with what difficultie and incredible compassion did they obtaine the least part of theyr intent, a thing more miserable then is necessary to be rehearsed, & therfore according to the place & persons, requisite prouision ought in due time to be made, and to be kept in Storehouses for the siege time.

The number of Souldiours to defende a Fortresse, ought to be greater then those for the ordinary defence of the same when it is not besieged, to the intent there may be stozz to make sallies and issues: and besides, in the time of a siege many be destroyed and faile, eyther by sworde or sicknes. It is accounted most necessary for the defence of a Cittie or Fortresse, to haue a thousand Souldiours for every thousand pale, yea and a farre greater number according to the bignesse of the Bulwarks and circuit of other places.

When the Enemy hath enuironed the Towne, and begunne bys approches, it is requisite the Souldiours should likewise enuiron the walles, and lodge and make theyr Cabbers at the fote of the Curtines and Ramparts, that according to theyr due appointed Quarter, they may be ready vpon all occasions of seruice, keeping neuerthelesse, sufficient Corpes de garde in the Market place, Towne-house, and other strength, to brydle the mutinous mindes of the Townes men.

He must with all dilligence, vse all possible meanes to garde and keepe the Ditch, with the way which is made in the Counterscarpe, which commonly is called the couert way. The same doth very much import for his defence, and the better dooth hee trauaile the Enemy, if he can hinder the sayde Enemy from approaching: for if he make approach, he may easily enter within the Ditch, and open the Counterscarpe, to batter afterwarde the Casemates, and to Wyne and dig downe the Ramparts.

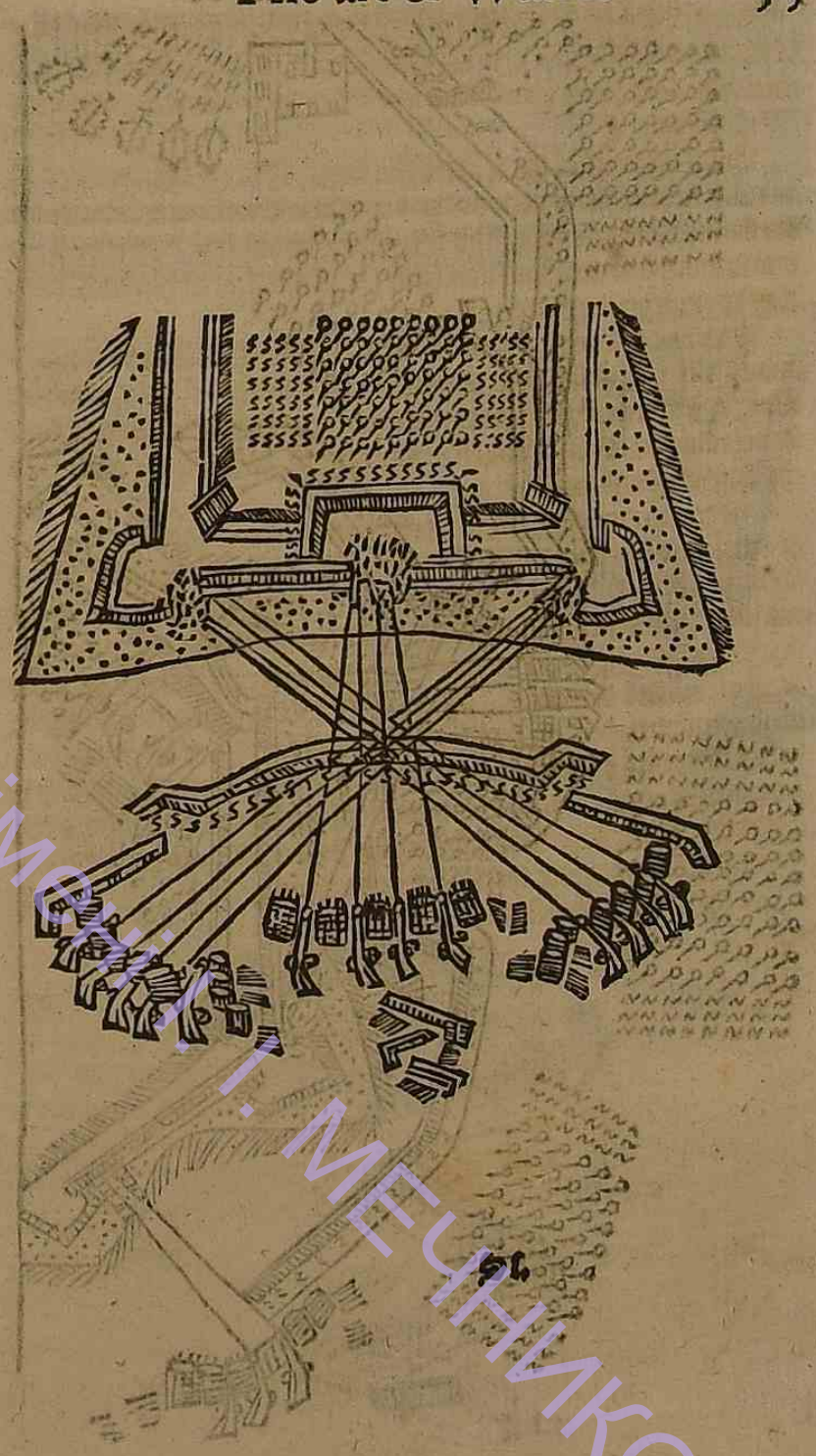
He must not fayle whilst the battery is in making, oftentimes to sende out to discover and view the Ditch, and to cleanse the ruines which the Artillarie hath made: soz these ruines do hinder the Cannoniers.

But if the force of the Enemy be such, that by the meanes of hys Trenches, he take away the use of the Ditch, make frustrate the flankes and defences, it is then very necessary, that you retyze so much inward, that you have the comoditie to make Trenches to enuiron the batteries.

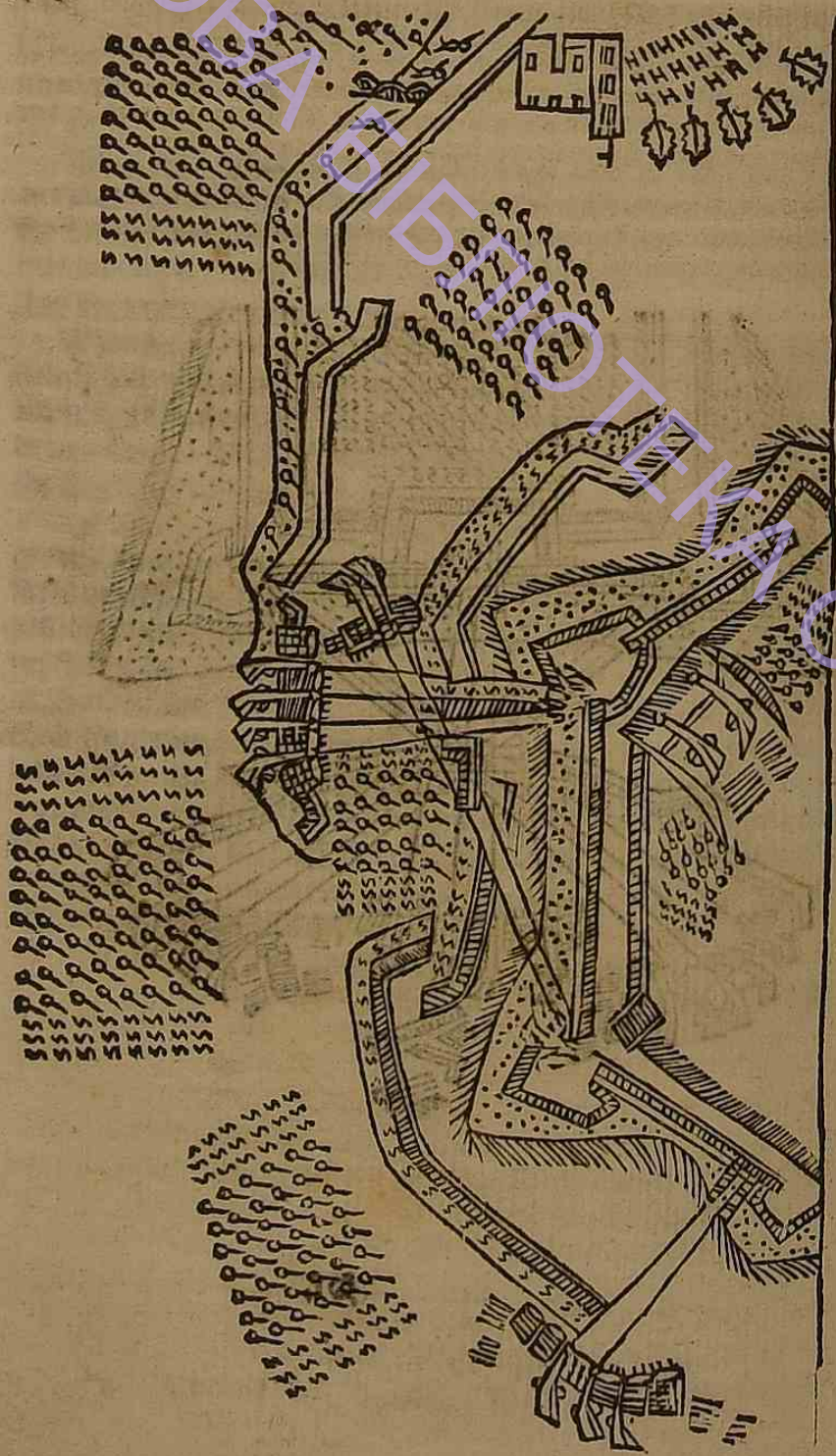
Moreouer, if you haue time, and that the situation be conuenient, you may make new Kamparts and defences, as Counterditches, Flankes, Cavalieres, and other Kamparts, such as shal be necessary to furnish himselfe against the batteries & assaults the Enemy shall make.

Note likewise that in so terrible an accident, being so dangerous, and specially when the walles be ruinate, you must not fayle to keepe your people in battayle, so nere the battery as is possible, with a good number of people Armed on the head. And soz that it falls out oftentimes, that certayne companies of men at Armes, and Launces, be in a Towne or Fortresse besieged, these Horsemen being Armed and sette on foote, are of great vtilitie and profit, if they be put in the head of the battaile, wyth a troupe of Hargabuziers by the flank of the Trench, to flank the battery withall. The Souldiours, both Hargabuziers and Pike-men, must accomodate themselues rounde about the Trench, as appears by these two figures following.

31



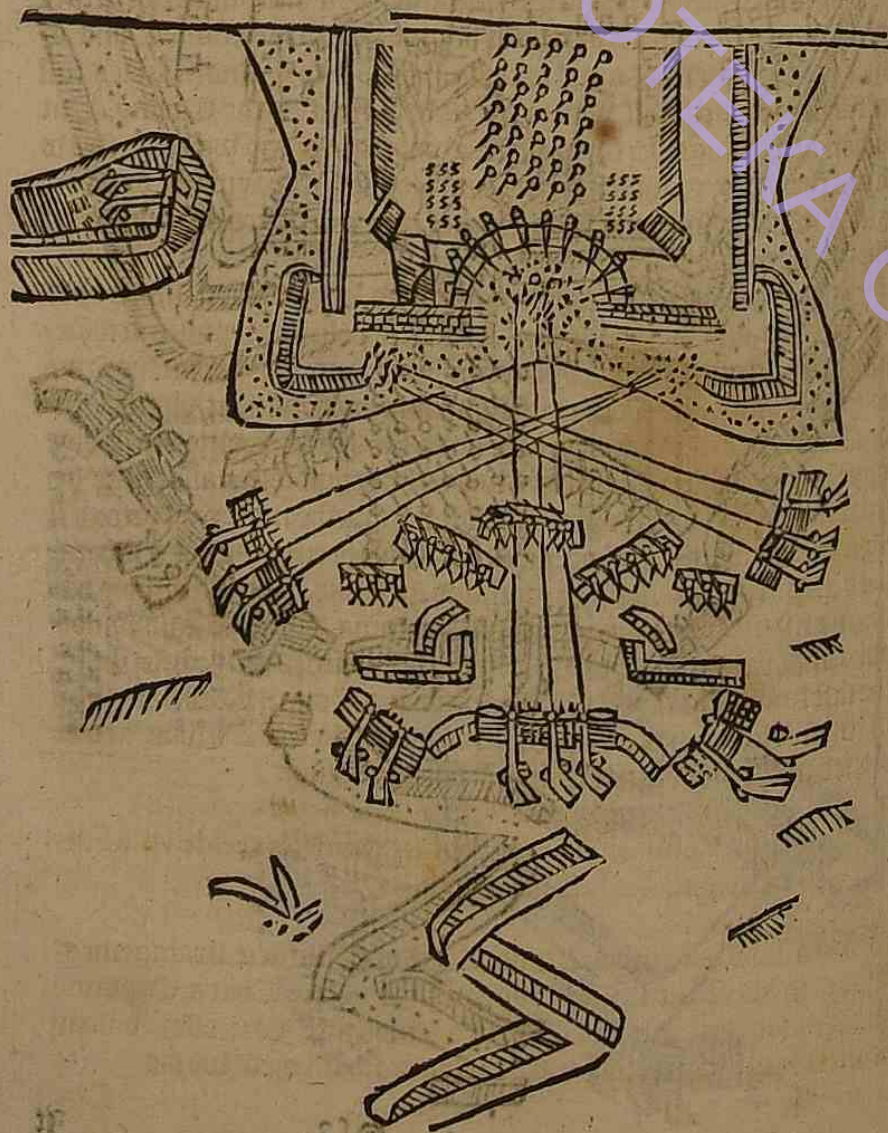
31



It hath oftentimes come to passe, that neere adioyning to the place where the battery is made, there hath been found certaine houses, that the said battery for the most part hath battered & ruinate, neuertheless, there doth remaine as yet, some height of wall out of the earth, where there may be placed vnder couert of the same, a good number of Musket and Hargabuziers, that flanking the Fortresse and breach, hath bene the safegard and the defence of the place, as appeares by this figure following. Therefore these things before considered, it is very necessary, that he which dooth gouerne a Fortresse, be of good vnderstanding and experience, and he perfectly knowe and be able to choole all his parties and aduantages.



It falles like wise out oftentimes, that Townes and Fortresses be subiect to Mountaines and vnto Cavaliers, and Mounts made of purpose, in such sort as they be battered along the Curtine, by reason wherof they are with great difficultie defended, principally when they be of little circuit, for that there remaines no place, wherin Trauerles may be made. But if the Fortresse or place be great, and that leysure doth permit, very good Trauerles may be wrought, to resist the battery of the Enemy, as appeareth by this figure following.



If it fall so out that you cannot make Trauerles vpon the Terrepraine, for that the Enemy doth hinder it, either by y<sup>e</sup> means of Mountaines, or by the meanes of Cavaliers raised vpon purpose, the same will fall out to be very hurtfull, being constrained to leaue and abandon the height of the Terrepraine, or top of the Curtine to the Enemy, and to become farre distant off from the battery, neuertheless, you may accommodate your battery w<sup>th</sup> Trenches by flanking it, and abase downward your selfe so lowe as is possible: this is one of the best meanes that may be vsed.

For preparations against the assault, you must not be destitute of all sorts of artificial fire, as Trompes, Granades, Bullets, and other such like, neither omit to cast Chausse traps, and Tables full of nayles, which will giue great impediment to the Enemy. But when such things doe faile, place great store of dry wood and straw vpon the battery, which being kindled with a trayne of powder, giues some leysure and oppozunitie to the kesiaged, to prouide for theyr affayres.

Some haue spreadde a netting, such as is vsed vpon shypps ouer the battery, and by the Mast of a shyp, a pole and a pullie artificially made, haue taken Souldiours being entered vpon the same to giue assault, like Conies in a Purnet, by hoysing it v<sup>er</sup> suddainly, as was put in practise at Harlen in Holland. Some vse to bleepe the breach with powder, when the Souldiours assailants doe swarme most thickest vpon it. But finally, the most part defend it by trenches, planted ful of Muskets, murdering Pices & Chambers, filled ful of nayles, old yron, and such like. And lastly, by v<sup>er</sup> valiant & maine sozce of couragious Captains, Officers, and souldiours, that rather chose to die amongst the ruines of the breach, for the safety of theyr sayth, Christianitie and Country, then enjoy a shamefull life, and die with infamie vpon a bed of Downe, and be buried in the pit of ignominie and darke obliuion.

Vpon what occasion it is lawfull to yeelde vp a Fortresse into the Enemies hands.

Bernardin Rocca in his second Booke of Militarie stratagemes, and in his eyght Impresa, vpon this note. That a Captaine ought not to giue into his Enemies hands any Fortresse, vnlesse he were moze then constrained thereunto. hath these words.

The orders of antiquity are run so far out of course, specially in the arte of warres, that a Souldiour doth not knowe howe to resolve himselfe, whether hee doe well or euill in the affaires of his Prince, and whether in one sort or another, hee ought to gouerne himselfe in his profession. And that the same is so, I find amongst other things in the arte of war, an order or statute of this tenoure. That whosoever doth giue into the hands of the Enemy, anie Towne in his keeping, doth incurre the danger of death, if by chance, he be not moze then constrained to yelde the same, and that it is likely a man of valour would haue done the like. By this ordinaunce therfoze is comprehended, that when a man of valour, shall be appointed to the garde of a Cittle, or Castle, or any other place, he ought neuer to depart and giue ouer his enterprise, for any words spoken, sent, or witten unto him by the Enemy, neither for that he doth enuiron him round about with his Campe, and proceedes no further: for neither by words, neyther by seeing the enemy encamped round about him, it can neuer be iudged, that a Castellane issuing forth of his Castle, which is stored of all sorts of victuals, or lookes for succour, that therfoze hee was forced to doe so, or that he hath issued forth like a man of valour, or that every man of valour would haue done the like.

Therfoze he ought to haue respect, that when the place it selfe may be defended against an assault, without batterie, that at leastwise he ought to aspect and carry one assault, and moze, if he be able to sustaine moze. And if a batterie were necessary for the taking of the same, for that it is apt to defend it selfe from some shot of Artillarie, some shot likewise it ought to abide.

But if the defendants did find themselves in such state & termes, that they could not, or did doubt themselves not to be able to resist, neither the one nor the other, I am of opinion, that not being promised assured succours, at a certaine limited time, in yielding afterwards, that the defendants doe not merite any punishment, by law of Armes, neyther of their Superiours, nor at the handes of the Enemy.

Thus farre Rocca writeth, touching the tearmes of yielding vp a hold, in which Chapter he declares, that certaine souldiours yielding themselves vpon thys foresaid necessity, vpon conditions to issue and depart without Armes, eyther offensive or defensive, the Enemy vpon theyr comming forth, searching the souldiours vpon

vpon the wordes of thys paction, finding onely theyr hangers and buckles vpon their gyrdles, whereat they did hang theyr Rapiers, toke occasion vpon the same to hang them vp. Therfoze the Articles of yielding by a Fort, (if it be lawfull at all to doe so,) is to be scanned thorowly, and euery doubt to be well discyphered, that neither he that is Captaine, nor his Souldiours, incur the displeasure of his Prince, or the danger of the Enemy.

But when it imports the generall safetie, commoditie, and advancement of his Prince, his Country, his Campe and Confederates, he must then persist euen to the losse of the last man, as of late hath bene a great policie of sundry Generals, to staule the fury of the Enemy, and by those blocks of delaye, to linger the time, thereby to preferre his owne safegarde, and the common commodity of the whole Campe.

Necessary aduertisements for the Captaine that expects besieging.

That Captaine which hath the gouernment of any Garrison, and lookes to be besieged, must haue respect to diuers things, as to expell certaine suspected householdes, which seme to drawe with the contrary part, likewise all vnprofitable persons, as olde men that are not able to keepe watch, nor of strength to worke at repayres. To prouide necessary victuals, Surgions, Physitions, drugges, spiceries, likewise all Provision for powder and Artillarie, wood and fagots for repayres, wood to bake bread, Smithes, Armourers, Carpenters, for making repayres, and all sortes of handy crafts, necessary.

Likewise when a Captaine doth enter into Garrison, hee must goe twice or thise about the Towne, both within and without the walles, to behold and discern where the Enemy might most en-domage, as well by scale, as by batterie, and diuers times thorowly consider of the same, and use requisite fortifications, wyth repayres, bulwarks, Bastillions, Cavalieres, Casemates, Counter-scarpes, Countergardes, halie Mines, Trenches, Mounts, &c. ayded therein by the industry of good Ingeniours.

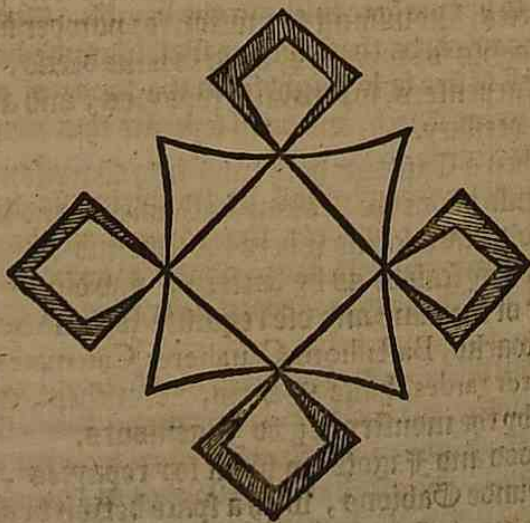
When wood and fagots doe want for repayres, use great numbers of rounde Cabions, with a space betwixt each one, for Artillary. For want of these, use empty Barrells & Pypes, filled with

with earth and well fastened, but when these want, in great extremety, bring forth flock-beds, Mattresses, Featherbeds, pea tarpasary, &c. hauing euer great care y<sup>e</sup> no stones be mixed in any of these Bastions, Bulwarks, or Fortifications, by reason they are moze hurtfull to the souldiours within, then the Enemies Artillarie without, & therefore Ruddle or mossie walles, is euer better then the thickest stone wall.

Provide that by Geometricall obseruations, one Bulwarke defend another, that like wise hee haue use of artificall syze, and such like instruments for the defence of the walles. Neither must he forget, sometimes to fayne the losse of some Bulwarke, so that the Enemy being entered vpon the same, either he may be blowne vp with powder, or caught in a nette of cordes, layd secretly vnder loose dust, and hoysed vp at the end of a Gall, as was at Harlen, where diuers of the assailants were caught, like to Conies in a purse-net.

The Towne gates must be made lowe, the toppe thereof appearing very little aboue the Counterscarpe, from whence the ground must descend downwards, with a crooked bending, euen to the Gates, which must but be onely capable to receiue a Carre or wagon, loden with Hay or Cozne.

The proportion of a Plat for fortification.



A new

A new inuention, and almost inuincible forme of fortification, against the furious battery of Artillarie.

It hath bene the common vse in all fortifications heretofore, to place the earth behind the walles of the Fortresse, and therof to make Bulwarks and Ramparts, but in the construction of this inuincible fortresse, against the infernall furie of Artillarie, it is necessary to vse a new inuention to fortessie. For the sayd earth being placed in forme of Rampart behind the wall, cannot serue to resist the blowes of the Cannon, but then onely when the saide wall is ruinated: which is quite contrary to the proportion I meane to preferre. For in steede that y<sup>e</sup> wall doth couer the earth, and doth serue for defence vnto the same, I meane to make the earth to supply thys Office, and that it do not onely hinder the Artillary from being able to batter the same wall, but also that it become a couer thereunto, to the intent the sight thereof may be wholly taken away from the Enemy.

To performe which, it is necessary to plant and place the earth befoze the wall, & not as of ordinary is accustomed, to ioyne it close to the wall, but distant thirtie or thirtie fife foote, in making a dry Ditch without water betwixt them both.

Thys earth shall be sustained vpon that side, which doth behold the Fortresse, with a little wall of foure foote thicknes in the foundation, arising to be two foote thicke in the height. vpon that side which doth looke towards the fieldes, it shall likewise be sustained with a little wall of fife foote height from the toppe of the water, which is in the great Ditch, and doth seperate thys masse of earth from the Counterscarpe.

The plaine of thys earth shall be in thicknesse where it is most narrowe, which towardes the corners of the flankers and Curtines, or moze or lesse large as the proportion requires. And the largest, which is at the Angles, as well of the Curtines as Bulwarks 150. foote thick, which doth arise to be 25. sadome, and for the gard of the sholders he shall haue 60. foote mounting to ten sadome. In sum, that the sholders in comprehending all the space, which is from the walles y<sup>e</sup> flank makes, vnto the little wall, which doth sustaine the masse of earth vpon the side of the great Ditch, shall be 150. foote. That is to say, the earth shall haue in this

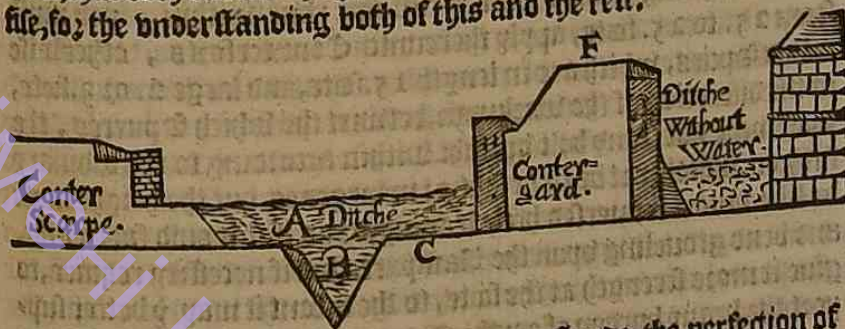
Et

place 60. foote, the ditch betwixt the earth and the sholder of the wall 30. foote or more, and the sholder of the Bulwarke 60. foote.

Where I would demaund of those which haue searched out so many inuentions, to find the meanes to fortifie and make a Fortresse inexpugnable, wherein they haue thought to haue attained therevnto. If to find meanes to prederue it against the blowes of Artillery, be the conseruation of Townes of war, I perswade my selfe that this my inuention, doth approach very nere to that which they in vaine of long sought for, and so in part I doubt not I shall satisfie their desire. For what stroe of Continuation, what length of time, must be imployed, to batter this by the blowes of the Cannon, first 60. foote of the defence of the earth, and as much of the sholder made to the wall: this masse of earth being a matter soft, which cannot be disseuered or dispersed, as I presuppose it should be, shal it not defend the sholder that stands behinde from receiving any damage. And if the case be thus, what feare is to be had, y<sup>e</sup> Townes being fortified by this meanes, but that they shall be able to defend themselves from any violence or fury of Artillery. For whilst the defences remaine whole and entire, the which serue vnto Fortresses, in like case as armes, legs, and other members do vnto the bodie, it is certaine that they may assure themselves, from falling into the hands of the Enemy. Now this masse of earth, being placed as I haue said, may be named a Countergarde, y<sup>e</sup> which may be so placed, that it shal not any thing hinder the flankers or defences of euery Bulwark, but that they shall be able to behold, and freely to discouer, all that whatsoever shal show and present it selfe alongst the same, as may be more plainly iudged, by the view of y<sup>e</sup> draughts and platforms of this inuention, which I haue set out at the ende of this discourse.

But to the end euery thing may be the more plainly vnderstood, I wil particularly thus set downe all the parts. First, betwixt the Countergard, and the Counterscarpe, the which is the bounds and space of the ditch, the said ditch shal be at the least 80. foote large, and 25. or 30. deepe, as is shewed in this figure following, by the place marked with A. In the bothome of the said ditch, must be made another little ditch, which shall be made 20. foote large, and 20. deepe, made in forme of this letter V. & marked with B. This little ditch shal be distant, and stretched out from the Countergard 10. or 12. foote, which space is marked C. At the foote of the Countergard,

Countergard, the little wall must be placed, surmounting y<sup>e</sup> brinke of the water, as I haue made mention of here before, coated with D. Betwixt this little wal and the Countergard, a little Allie shal be left, or space of 4. foote large, marked with this letter. E. The masse of earth called Countergard, must be made in the fashion of a Rampart, but quite contrary to those which haue bene accustomed, to be placed behind and against the walles of Fortresses. For in stead that the Ramparts ordinarily haue theyr accesse towards the body of the Cittie, this shall haue his back turned towards the Champaine, and the Front towards the Cittie, the which backe shall be made in the forme of a ridge, slyding and leaning downe all alongst, from the top euen to the bothome, as both the side of a rofe of a house, except that in the very top and height of the Countergard, there must be 8. or 10. foote of explanade or flat grounde, marked thus with F. And for that I haue before made mention of the wall, which must sustaine the Countergarde, also of the second or ditch, which must be betwixt the Countergarde and the wall, that doth enclose the Fortresse. Let this figure following suffice, for the vnderstanding both of this and the rest.



But to the intent the Reader may vnderstande the perfection of this worke the better, I will in part expound the properties & circumstances therof, & wherinto euery one doth particularly serue. Touching the proportion and body of the fortification, as Curtines, bulwarks, sholders, flanches, and Cavalieres, I presuppose that they are made in such due forme and order as hath been accustomed to be vied, of those y<sup>e</sup> be perfect Maisters in this arte, saue that I would haue the Curtines from the flanks bend inward in Angle like a paire of tonges or forke, wherby it shal be very hard to place any Artillery to batter the, and if it should be so that they were battered, yet might they be well defended by the opposite sides, wherby an infinite number of Assaultants should lose theyr liues,



lynes, being so well defended on all sides, and do mozeouer make this fortification, moze forceably and longer time, to resist & continue against the Hattocke & Spade and such rowling Trenches, as were made by the great Turke, at the expugnation of Rhodes, and Famagosta.

But to procede to my former promise, first the circute of the wall, and the enclosure of this Fortresse, is not needfull to be made so great, and so thicke as hath bene accustomed to fashion them, that is to say, from 12. to 15. fote, but it will suffice to give them 7. or 8. fote in the foundation. For by this invention, the wall is not subiect at all to the battery, neither to be thrust downe & loden by the Kampart, because there shall need to be none, (if it so seme good) as a thing not very necessary.

But if any Kamparts of earth be made, let them not with their massiue heauines thrust downe the standing wall, to annoyde the which, in clothing the bulwarks and Curtines with walles, after you haue planted the foundations, which may be of the largenes of 5. or 6. fote, or moze strait, the wall on the outside must be made according to the ordinary custome: but within, you must from 25. to 25. fote, apply thereunto Counterfoots, otherwise called Spurs, which are in length 15. fote, and large 2. or 3. fote, at the discretion of the workman, betwixt the which Spurres, the wall must not stand bolt vpright within according to the ordinary fashion, whether it be in height or in largenes, but the height must be like vnto a renuerfed héele leaning, or as if it would fall reeling, and bend groueling vpon the Kampart. And if necessity require, to give it moze strength at the fote, to the intent it may y better support the heavy burden of earth. Mozeouer, the space betwixt the one Counterfoot and the other, must be made in round, like vnto a baute, making the Spurres to serue for proppes and staves.

The commodity which thys wall bringes, is, that it is exempt from great charge, from the violent thonging & thrusting of the earth. The stones thereof being battered in by the Cannon, will close and knit together with y earth, and so make great resistance, besides, they will not very much fill the Ditch when they are abated, rather falling toward the Kampart then otherwise. And the sayd Kampart hauing taken the proportion of a renuerfed wall, will make a strait shape, like vnto the first face of the wall. And for thys respect, although the wall were taken away, & ruinated,

it can neyther fall nor styde, and will make fronte receiuing anie damage.

But to continue on my first discourse, hauing begun with the wall which doth enuiron the circuit of the Fortresse or Cittie, I will goe on, and presuppose that the Ditch, which is made betwixt the wall and Countergarde, hath 36. fote in largenes, and is dry without water, therby to haue commoditie to goe and come all along. The entrie thereunto, must be by the Cannoniers of the flankes, which defend y same, which will serue to be of no small commodity to the Souldiours, hauing the meane to transport themselues easily and without danger, into all places where necessitie doth call them.

The Countergard must be sustained on that side towardes the Cittie, with a little wall, which must be of lesse height then the earth, by three or foure fote, to the intent you may easily discover, (being before the Counterscarpe) five or sixe fote of the wall, which doth enclose and shut vp the Fortresse.

This earth must be spred vniiformally, and couched betwixt the two walles, according to the forme before prescribed, to the intent that there may be nothing but it may discover, and defende on all sides, and that no hinderance may be given to the flankers and Cavaliers to shoote and behold each place.

This proportion shall be very little able to be battered, and least before the Angles of the Bulwarks, and the midst of y Curtines, by reason of their thicnesse: and if it should receiue any batterie, it should be onely but vpon the height and top of the same. And in the space betwixt the one wall and the other, certaine hearbes for the nourishment of Cattle may be sowne, amongst which, to ioyne the earth moze fast together, it is good to sowe a certaine hearbe, called Medica, for that it was brought from Medea, which doth bring forth a very long roote, specially when the ground hath bene plowed and laboured much before, which will procure it to be able to be defended, against the nature of the ayre, and of men, neyther needes it to be sowne but from ten yeeres to ten. Shæpe that feeds hereupon, become moze fatte, and moze sauerie then others, those that are nourished therewith, bring forth Lambes for the most part twice a yeere, as those of Brabant, Holland, and Lombardie haue tryed by experience, specially in France, where it is vulgarly called Sainctoin, and so it yeeldes two commodities, for the roote doth

to binde the earth, that it will not easily dismember by the blowes of the Cannon, and the hearbe is good for the Cattle enclosed in the Towne, during the siege.

The little space or Allie, which is at the foote of the Countergard, of 4. foote large shall serue, to the intent you may haue the meane to place therein diuers Souldiours, which may come and goe, as well before the Bulwarks, as before the Curtines. And the little wall which is before the same, shall not be vnprofitable, for first it will hide and serue for Parado to cover the Souldiours, which are behind it, that they cannot be endangered: but shal haue the meane and leysure, to be in such a readines, and apt order to offend the Enemy, during the siege, that no man shall be able to shew himselfe vpon the brinke of the ditch, but shall be in danger of his person. And secondly, if it should fall out, that the Enemy should assay, to breake downe and ruinate any part of the Countergard by the blowe of the Cannon, this little wall would serue, to stay that portion of earth, which might rowle & tumble downe beneath. It would likewise prohibite the beating waues of the water in the Ditch, from washing or wearing away the foote of this Masse of earth. The little ditch before the Countergard, in forme of thys letter V. will likewise carrie this good commoditie, that if the great ditch were drawne dry, this should alwaies remain full, and would stop the passage of those that would passe to endamage the little wall, which doth cloth and compasse the Countergard.

And if meanes were made to emptie all the water, the besieged might defend themselues with arteficiall fires, made for that effect: the which by reason of the forme of this little Ditch, made pointed at the bothome like a Romane V. will doe great execution. For the enemy entring into the same, and not finding any place where to make stay, but in the extremitie of the depth, not being able to proceede, as in an vniforme and flat bothom, shall be burnt, wounded, and murdered most cruelly.

The great ditch, within the which the small one is comprehended, shall containe the foresaid largenes, from the foote of the little wall, which doth sustaine the earth of the Countergarde, vnto the opposite foote of the Counterscarpe, at the which there shall be an Allie of 6. foote large, to receiue the Souldiours which shall passe the great Ditch, to mount vpon the Corridor of the Counterscarpe, the which Allie shal be nothing scene of the enemy in any siege, but

contrariwise, it shall be discovered and defended by the defences of the Fortresse, that it shall not be possible for the Enemy to possesse it any long time, although he had employed himselfe to gaine the same.

To say something touching the commodious largenes of the ditch, I iudge the meane to be obserued, which in respect of the other two extreames, of great and narrow, doth carrie these commodities, which in the other be hurtfull & contrary. First it hydes and couers the sight of the foote of the wall: the Counterscarpe therof, doth prohibite the flankes of Cannoniers, which defende the bothome of the ditch, that they cannot be battered. The sayde ditch is free and secreete, and doth greatly fauour the souldiours in a Fortresse, being enuironed with a Campe, for they may enter and issue, without receiuing any damage by the Enemy, during the siege. True it is that it may be the sooner sid by, but that imperfection may be succoured, neyther shal the same haue such force in the strait ditch, as in that which is so large and very broad, in the which the Souldiours being easily discovered, and not hauing any great libertie to make residence therein without danger, they must alwaies stand vpon the garde of theyr persons. The which will not fall out, if they be within a more strait ditch, exempt from all feare: for being couered by the bancks of the ditch, they onelie haue nothing to doe, but to apply themselues to make frustrate the Enemies attempts. The which kind of defence, is one of the best that can be inuented for the besieged, and most endamageable to the assaillants. For the enemy entering resolutely into the Ditch, and marching forward to assault, hee must haue regarde to three sides, the one, to the front, which is the body of the Fortresse, and the two other, to the souldiours which are within the ditch, and may offend the Enemy by the sides, and specially vpon the bank, if he presume to march farre forward, and to passe further on then the Counterscarpe.

Now to giue thys Ditch his competent largenes, to the intent it may accomplish these foresaid good qualities, it ought but to be 100. foote broad at the most, and in depth if it be plaine, but 18. or 20. foote, giuing to the wall of the Counterscarpe such a conuenient enclynning, (as for 5. or 6. foote 1. foote,) to the intent it may be strong, & repulse the matter wherwith the Counterscarpe is to be filled. And for the Counterscarpe is one of the most principal parts of

of the ditch. I will finally dilate somewhat therof, therby to make manifest the faults of Counterscarps now in vse. Untill thys present day, this part and member of the Fortresse hath bene made small account of, although it be one of the principal, and the which is as necessary to be valiantly defended, as any other part of the Fort, being the first which is assaulted, and possess'd by the Enemy. The negligence and sloth used herein, fall's out as I take it, eyther in respect of dispising the same, or through the couetousnesse of the owners, which eyther thinking the same not commodious for defence, or for feare of disbursing ouer much money in making it substantially, neglect the same. But before I passe any further, I think it necessary to set downe, which are the most defensible and principall parts of thys warlike Architecture.

The whole body of thys worke, is compounded of diuers members being vnited together, for the particuler service and defence one of another, euen as the members of a well proportioned man.

Those parts which by the Architectes are named principall, be first the Flancks, within the which are made certain Cannoniers, which doe view and beholde the circute round about the Fortresse.

Secondly the sholders which doe hide & cover the flanks, and defend them, from being ruinated and displanted by the Enemy.

Thirdly the Ditch which enuironeth all the Fortresse, bringing safety against suddaine Surprizes, Camisades, Escalades, &c.

The fourth and last is the Counterscarpe, which serues for a Bulwarke and bancke to cover the Ditch.

These things considered, the Enemy to expugne such a Fortresse, doth proceede by degrees, (not daring to bring theyr Souldiours to the butchery, by a desperate assault at y<sup>e</sup> first,) and therefore they seeke to inuade and occupie the Counterscarpe, whereupon the Enemy, not hauing made his approaches before hand, and entrenched vpon the same, can performe nothing to the purpose, for by lodging farre from the Ditch, they are not able to discover and endamage any of these foresaid defences, by reason of the impediment which the height of the Counterscarpe yeldes, the which before they are able to possess, being duly made, oftentimes whilst the approaches are in making, there doth ensue the death of manie valiant and worthy persons, the which are continually slayne by the succours which the other defences, that be in the body of the Fortresse doe giue vnto the Counterscarpe.

The

The manner which at this day is vsed of the Assaylants, when they possess the Counterscarpe, to make it serue their turne, is thus.

First they doe pearse and bzeake the Counterscarpe, euen vnto the bottom, and to the brincke of the water, to the intent that by this way, they may haue means to batter the Foote of the wal about the Fortresse, with certayne Peeces which are conueyed through the Trenches, vnto that place, the which shall not be able to suffer any damage by the defences of the Fortresse, in so much, as the sides of these opening, serue for sholders and couers to those within the Trench. This Trench doth likewise bring an other comoditie, which is, that the entrie into the Ditch thereby, shall be moze easie and lesse painefull for the souldiours, then from the height of the Counterscarpe. And although this pollicie doth not serue to any great purpose, by reason it is impossible in any small time, to make such way in y<sup>e</sup> Counterscarpe, that commodiously it may be capable therein to plant sufficient nūber of Peeces, to make a conuenient breach, therby in the end to giue assault: neuerthelesse, it is good to inuent some means to hinder and delay the enemy from lodging there, so speedily as they are accustomed.

To accomplish the which, it is not the way to make the Counterscarpe with the earth of the Ditch, mixing among the same one part of faggots, & an other of earth, and so from rancke to rancke to rangle it by, neither with logs of wood and great piles of Timber, these things being matter that in time corrupts, and wastes away, not being indurable: touching which point, I would wish the wise Ingeniour to consider, that the meane to ruinate the Bulwarke of a Fortresse, and to pearse a Counterscarpe, is not all one: for the one is cut down and mined by the many hundred hands & force of men, and the other ruinated by the blowes of the Cannon, earth being proper to resist the furie of Artillarie, where it is not able to ayde against the handie worke of man: as by experience is daylie prooued, that a man will make a greater hole and opening in any masse of earth, in two houres, then a Cannon in foure. The cause is, that a man by his industrie doth mine the earth, and doth displace the foundation therof, and so makes it to disseuer and dismember: but the blow of the Artillarie, doth but only pearse it, and makes a hole according to the bignes of the

A v.

Bullet

Bullet, learning the masse of the earth entyre and whole.

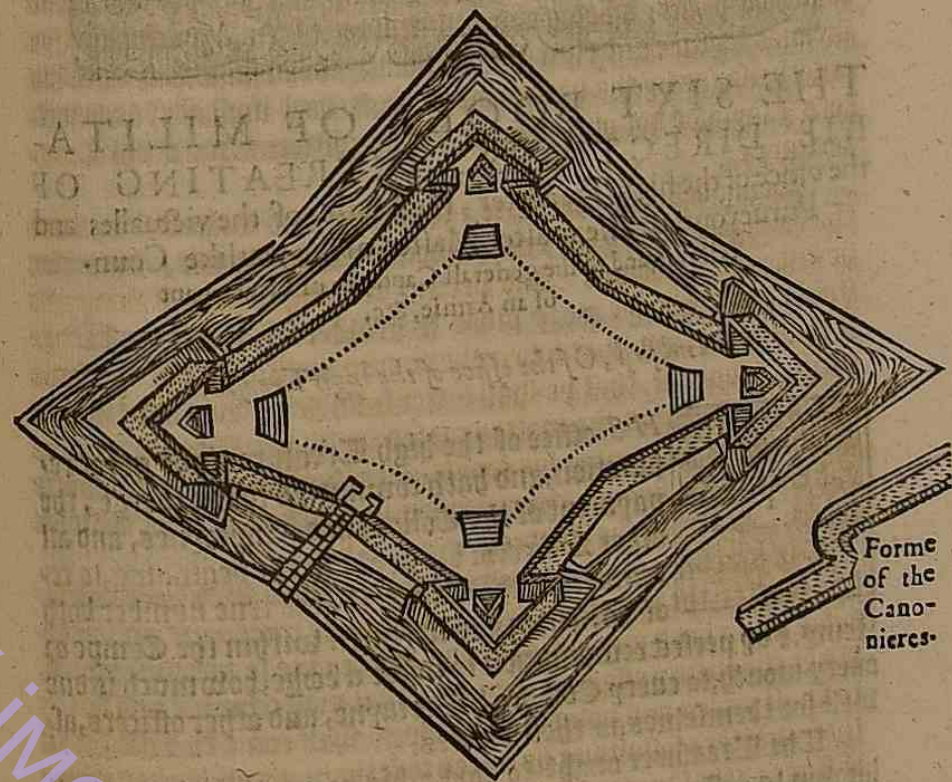
These reasons receiued, we may conlude, that all soft matter, which doth suffer it selfe easily to be managed by  $\varnothing$  Pyoners, and which doth carry a bodie able to sustaine it selfe, giuing by thys meanes leysure and time to the enemy, to bee able to execute his enterpryse, (as by the nature of the earth doth appeare) such matters I say, bee not able to serue for the conseruation of the Counterscarpe.

Being desirous therefore, to exempt and make it free, from the daungers which the enemy doth ordinarily vse, by reason he findes it comodious. And being willing to haue it firme and stable, and that the moze older it growes, the moze stronge it shall were, and that when the enemy woulde marle the same hauing wonne it, that he shall suffer infinite paynes and trauails to entrench. That the matter rayled by for his Vranche, in place of defending and sauing his Shouldours, shall become theyr burte and distruction, being battered and dispearsed with those bullets which come from the Fortresse.

It is necessary to compound and fill the same, with hard and solide matter, the which in tract of time, may incorpozat and be reduced into a hard and difficile body, scarce able to be dismembred. That the enemy assaying to bzeake it, it may crumble and fall in to small peeces and powder: the which shall come to passe, if all these matters following be mixed together: as all broken peeces of stones, that matter which is found in the ruine of the walles, all rubbish, sheards of pottes, Tiles, Brick battes, olde Porter, &c. and all the fragments of stones, as well harde as softe, and so accomodating and filling the voyde holes with Porter and other stuffe that is hard, as flint, Marble stones, Drosse of Smithes &c. ioining one within an other, by the choise and difference of the matter, and powdered with grauell, rubbish, dust, &c. and left to the iniurie of the watrie beauens a certayne time, the matter cannot continue so entyre, but that the worke being eaten into, by the falling showers of rayne, and dissolued with frost and heat will intermire and so incorpozate together, that it will be impossible to be seperated without great labour. By these obseruations and the direction of Geometricall proportions, this new kind of fortification may be brought to great perfection.

The

The proportion of the Fortresse, which may be deuided into 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10. or more Bulwarks at the Ingeniours discretion.



The Diametre of 5. Bulwarkes, is 360. fadome, of 6. 439. of 7. 518. of 8. 597. of 9. 676. of 10. 755. which being enuyzoned with three circles one within another, distant 36. fadome eache from other, and that of 5. Bulwarkes deuided into 10. equall partes, that of 6. into 12. 7. into 14. 8. into 16. 9. into 18. 10. into 20. the 1. 3. 5. 7. 9. &c. is the angle of the Bulwarke, the 2. 4. 6. 8. 10. the corner of the inward bending of the Curtine, the first circle allots out the Canoniers and poynts of the Shoulders, the 2. the angles of the Bulwarkes, the 3. the angles of poyntes of the Countergarde, and so proceeding Geometrically, bring the Bulwarkes, Shoulders, Curtines, dry ditch, Countergarde, wet Ditch, and Counterscarpe, in lyke forme to this foresayd Figure.

u. b. 2.

THE



THE SIXT BOOKE OF MILITARIE DIRECTIONS, INTREATING OF the office of the high Treasurer, the Master of the victualles and Purueyour, of the muster Master, of the warlike Countellours, and of the generall Captayne or Lieutenant of an Armie, &c.

*And first, Of the office of the high Treasurer.*



**T**HE office of the high Treasurer is of great reputation, and hath committed to his charge the payment of the Collonelles, Captaynes, and all other Officers. He ought in the beginning, to receiue from the Generall, the true number both of horsemen and footemen within the Campe or Army, & by perfect compunction to make a booke, how much is due every month, to every Collonell, Captayne, and other officers, as well for themselues as their bandes.

The Treasurer ought to make his propozition of paye well known to the General, wherby the General may accordingly make provision, that money be not wanting to pay the Souldiours. He ought in like sorte to make allowance (when neede shall be) to the Master of the Ordnance, for supplying his store of Munition as he shall see cause, by reason of consuming the old, or any important seruice to be done.

Hee must conferre with the muster Master, to see howe the bandes be furnished, what Souldiours be slayne, when and howe many, and how and when supplied: deliuering pay to every Collonell or Captayne accordingly, keeping theyr warrants or notes of their bandes for his discharge.

At the pay day he must conferre with the master of the Ordnance, to see whether he haue any bills from the Captaines or Collonels, for any powder or other Munition receiued, and to deduct so much in theyr wages.

Greatly

Greatly may this Officer be ayded by Arithmaticke, without the which it shall be an extream feyle, to make true compunctio of such varietie of payments, or befoze hande, to preconieure of all sortes of provision and Munition, what shall bee necessary: but by ayde of that art the most difficult doubts that can therein aryle, shall with facilitie be resolued and dispatched.

This Officer ought also to be a man of great wisdom, and well experienced in Militarie affayres: because he is used in Counsell, where he is to speake his opinion in all exploits of importance, although they concerne not directly his office.

*The office of the Master of the victualles and Purueyour.*

**T**HE master of the victuals, seemeth to be an Officer altogether dependant on the Treasurer, hauing nothing else to doe but to provide & take charge of the provision in the Campe, and as corne or other victualles shall growe scant, to make the Treasurer priuie, that order may bee taken for further supply, either by money or sending forth the forrage Master to take it by force. And against the pay day, he must bring in hys booke of accounts to the Treasurer, and there receiue allowance accordingly.

The Purueyour's oath is to be true and iust in his office, and not to be slacke any time, in procuring in his office, good, fitte, and wholesome victualles, as well for those Souldiours in extraordinary, as for those which are in ordinarie seruice prest. Not to wearie or drue away from the victualling of the Campe, any victualler, by giuing him a more or lesse sume then he is worthy, to procure as many to serue the Campe with good victualles as hee can: both in giuing them good & fayre language, as also now and then to giue them some peece of money, to encourage the sayd victuallers to take paynes with the like.

And that he shall with diligence faithfully shon all thinges, that shall any wayes bee vnprofitable vnto the Prince and his Souldiours. And to deuide as farre as his witte and iudgement wil serue him, to profite his Lord and Master, and his Souldiours, aswell for wholesome victualles, here & wine for their bodies, as for good sweet & wholesome meat for theyr horses, aswell for such as serue in the fielde, as such that traueil and worke in the waggon, Cart, or otherwise, which followe for the reliefe of the Campe:

W b. 3.

and

and that of all these doings, he keepe a true and perfect booke of accounts and reckonings for the Treasurer, when and as often as it shall please him to call for it, that the high Marshall, the rest of the Councell, and the Generall, may be privie to it, to make trye all of his dealings.

The office of the Muster Master.

The Muster master also may be accounted an Officer as it were dependant on the Treasurer, for that his duty is nothing else, but by often reuiewing of the bands, to see how every Captaines bande is furnished, noting the defaults from time to time, and the supplies: and therof to make a perfect booke, exhibiting the same at the paye day to the Treasurer, that allowance may be made to the Collonels and Captaines accordingly. When he first takes the viewe and Muster of any band, he must not only write down the name of the Souldiour and his weapon, but also of what Countrie he is, the townes name where hee was borne and by what Fathers name, and what yeeres hee is of: and finally, shall take speciall care to set downe, some speciall marke or cicatrice vpon his face, together with the colour of his haire and beard. To the intent, his Prince bee not charged with paying of dead payes, to such as be hyed but for that day, as many Captaines vse to fill theyr Purles with vnlawfull gaynes.

The office of the Master of the intelligences.

The Master of the intelligences, must receiue his office & oath secretly at the hands of the Generall and his Councell, so that his office be not knowne to any but to the Generall, and to those of the Councell. To the intent, he may haue accesse vnto them at all times, vnder the colour of some other office, therby to remaine vnto the common sorte, and to auoyde the discouerie and discyphering, of such as hunt and search after secrecies, and the rather, to the intent the enemy knowing the spyes, by reason of theyr recourse vnto him, doe not intercept them. It is requisite that hee both be a man, wise, secrete, of quicke and deepe insight, and well languaged, saythfull, and aduenturous. A cunning Cou-  
lourer of his Princes affayres of importance, & of a singular and  
good.

god inuention. That hee delight in receiuing secret occurrents from all places. That he diligently direct the priue Spyes of the Campe, not acquainting them together. That he haue a stipend for himselfe, and allowance to yeld reward to all sortes of Spyes That he bying them vpon vrgent occasion, to the presence of the Generall. That they generally receiue of him, a counter signe or watch-word, thereby to be knowne assured. That he dispearse abroad Spyes, aswell for his owne parte, both for the Campe and Garrisons, as for the enemies Countrie & Campe, both to know priue practises and foraine determinations. That he haue some secrete frendes, or stipendarie intelligences, in all Courtes, Countries, Citties, and places of the enemy and his Collegates, whether they be apparant or priuis fauourers: from whom hee may daylie receiue letters, Cyphers, or counter signes, and secrete aduertisements of all occurrents, out of the enemies bosome.

That he haue knowledge in all secret sort of wytyngs, specially in that part of Polographia which serues best for his turne, and if it be possible, in Steganographia, & that part thereof which is lawfull for a Christian to vse. Neither let him neglect the secrete sortes of wytyng by the ioyse of Lemmons, Drenges, Creame, dissolved Allome, &c. betwixt the lynes of a Letter of common occurrence, and such other receipts for wytyng, as be sette out in Naturalis Magia, Cardane Allexis, and others.

That he be cunning in sending secret aduertisements, where neede doth require, by some of these foresayd kind of Letters, enclosed in the scaberd of a sword, shoe-sole, fold of a gyrdle, or dogs collar, and so wyne, or wayting vpon him, passe with greater securitie. Some haue vsed to hide Letters in a loafe, being baken therein, and carried the same for victuals. Some haue enclosed the same in a compounde and arteficiall stone. Some in sweet bals. Some in the secret parts of their body, and such innumerable like deuises, which are to be chosen out according as they shall seeme convenient to the Intelligencers turne. That he know the arte how to talke a farre off with lights, twinklings of Patch for the night, and by smokes, fyre, flags, of blacke, white, red, &c. for the day: with perfect knowne counter signes, wherby they may know one anothers meaning. And when any is secretly to be sent into a besieged Cittie with directions, that he make prouision for the secret choyse and conueiance of such a one.

Finally,

Finally, that chiefly he be very expert, and ready in the arte of deciphering, that at all times, when any Letters be sent him by his Generall, he may decipher them, and satisfie his Superiour therein.

The Office of the warlike Counsellors.

There must twelue warlike Counsellors be appointed out by the Generall of the Armie, being chosen, honest, wise, and graue men, the which sayd 12. he shall all appoint to be his Judges, and together with the high Marshall, be partners in determining all Martiall discipline and correction. He may make his choise amongst Captaines, or otherwise at his pleasure, so that hee be of stayed iudgement and honest sobrietie. The which said Counsellors or Judges, being so elected and chosen, shall haue theyr waggess accordingly appointed them: who except in great extremitie shall be watch free.

These shall sweare and protest, solemnly vnto the said Generall, that they will serue theyr Prince by the Month, in that place which they are chosen & called to: that they will be trusty, faithfull, and obedient, and dutifull vnto the Generall, in all needfull and lawfull affayres, and at all times vprightly and indifferently to iudge all causes comming befoze them, and to be obedient to the commaundement of the Generall, standing with equitie and the Lawes of the field. That they will to theyr uttermost power endenour themselues, to gyue counsaile and aduise to the Generall, to the welfare and commoditie of the Prince & his subiects, and iustly to iudge the rich as well as the poore, not regarding frendshyp, kindred, or any other corrupting cause, which may leade affection to the hinderance of iustice: but to theyr knowledge to minister equitie according to the tenor of the Lawes, as they wyll that G D D helpe them, at the last and dreadfull day of iudgement.

Also that in mustering they doo diligently foresce to their uttermost power, that the Prince theyr Maister be not deceiued, in gyuing double pay to such as are not worthy: and that they shall also deliuer the names of the Souldiours vnto the Generall as they mustered them, wyth a note of theyr allowance and waggess vnder theyr hands and seales, saythfully without any deceit.

The

The Office of the Generall and Lieuetenant of the Armie.

That man which is careful to carry the name of wise and prudent, when he enters into the execution of any serious affaire, wyll not so wed himselfe to his owne will and fantasie, as that he wyll put assured confidence in his owne proper counsel, (which for the most part is fallible, by reason of the infectious humour of selfe willie passion, which oftentimes is cause of great errors, ruines, calamities, and confusions,) but rather will leane to the assured aduise of sound and mature counsell.

Therefore a worthy and excellent Captaine Generall, since the greatnesse of his valour dooth not make him capable of so important a charge, in respect that neither high titles, neither fauours of the Prince, can make a man wise that is not: it is very requisite, that he like a prudent person, make election of certaine Counsellors, of great vnderstanding, and long experience in the warres, to follow the Campe, and accompany his owne person, to whom it is needfull he propound matters of importance, and confer with them such accidents, as are with remedies to be prevented, or otherwise to be executed, and gathering and selecting the best position of many good parts, wyth his ripe and aduised iudgement, he must frame and forme, a sound and grounded resolution: with the which he must execute all hys enterpryses, expediently and courageously.

If there was neuer man of so great prudence, and of such singular experience, that hee was able to discide and decipher all things of himselfe: but it hath bene often scene, that by the help of others, many things haue bene performed, wherin of himselfe alone, he hath not had full experience. It is most necessary for him, to be able to determine and take resolution of any thing in himselfe, that therby he need not to hinder nor disturbe the execution of any enterpryse, neyther to make so many heads and commaunders in an Armie, which would growe to be manifest damage. Neyther can warres of importance without good counsell be perfectly gouerned: wherein the victorious Emperour Charles the sixth did prudently proceed in time of warre, specially in Germany, where ordinarily hee did serue his turne, wyth syre honorable and principall men of experience being Italiane, with syre of the

Fr.

Spanish

Spanish Nation in like sort, with fire of the Germanes, and fire of Flaunders and the Low Countries, by whose advise, and his owne sound resolution, there after ward ensued so notable and famous a victory.

He must take good order that the Ministers and Priestes of hys Armie doe apply theselues exemplarely to the service of God, not only at all times by the action of theyr Office, conformable to the vse of the sacred Catholicke Church, and to preach to the consolation of those that be in health, but also to communicate & giue good counsell to those that be sick, and bury those that be dead.

It seemes likewise very conuenient for the Generall, that as he is supream heade ouer the rest, that euen so accordingly he take care, that the souldiours honours and Military orders be not defrauded. He therfore must carefully take the custody of the Souldiours honour, praysing and rewarding by extraordinary means, those that be good, vertuous, full of valour, and valiant, and commend and depresse those that be vicious, wicked, and naughty persons, thereby to enflame every one to aspire to vertuous actions: since that the hope of recompence and reward, and the feare of reprehension and punishment, both drawes and driues those that be Souldiours, to worke wonderfull things.

To the intent the Military orders become not defrauded, let him shew himselfe curious and careful, to take resolute order, that the Treasurers and Pagadores Colatorally, and the Secretaries, publikely at the Bancke, make their pay iust and entirely, to the Officers and those that be of estimation: as to the Collonell, and the Cauallieres of hys Squadre, to y<sup>e</sup> Captaines & theyr Cauallieres, to the Licutenants, Alferes, Sergiants, and Corporalles of Squadres, &c. Fully so much as is concluded and capitulated to be conuenient, and thought requisite of the Common wealth, y<sup>e</sup> Prince, or other Potentate or Generall. The which capitulations, and conclusions, ought to be set downe in autentike writing and reall forme, to the intent they may be obserued, being thinges as necessary to be perfozmed as though they were sacred. Since that many times, through like wants and defects in the euill obseruing therof, many mighty Nations haue bene confounded, by loosing their souldiours of greatest valour, the most manifest and most mightiest occasion of the ruine of Armes. Considering that men are scarce able to growe perfect and practised within the compasse

of a whole age, or in that time gaine a perfect habite in the profession of Armes, which is a thing of most necessary & great importance, for the safe sustaining of our Christian Religion, against the Turkes tyranny, and barbarous Mores, which fro age to age, spring vp like the Hydraes against y<sup>e</sup> Militant Catholick Church.

But to come againe to our former speech, these payes ought not to be reckoned & placed amongst the aduantages, or Capitoli, and to giue them after wards priuately and in Groppo, into the hands of the Captaine, wherby doth oftentimes proceede inconuenience of great importance, which comes to passe by the couetousnes of some insatiable persons, where otherwise they ought to keepe the same carefully, and to disburst liberally: since he receiued it to keepe the same safely, and to distribute it discreetly, not as his owne, but as his Princes, not gyuen to hym, but to hys Souldiours. Duer whom, a Captaine ought to take no lesse care, then a father doth ouer his childzen, or a brother towards his brother: or to speake more properly, a faithfull companion towards hys friend, in respect that hee ought to terme those that be his followers, and are guided by him, hys companions in Armes.

It is good the Generall make election of a fat & frendly Country, which so nere as is possible is abundant in all things, large, commodious, and of sound and open ayre, for the respect of gathering together and making the Amasse of the people, and for y<sup>e</sup> conseruation of prouision for the Armie. In which place he must make stay, for the vnitng of victuall, Munition, and Artillary, which is before hand ordained and prouided, with all other preparations necessary and expedient for the warres.

Hauiing by his high Marshall, as well as is possible, deuided the Quarters and lodgings, he must attend to receiue with ioyful cheere the Bands and Companies, which shal arriue from day to day, as well Horsemen as Footmen. He must neuer permit the Captaines to depart from the place, where he made the Amasse and collection of the Companies, with their bands out of order or disseuered, although they should depart to some place nere adioyning, vnlesse he were forced by some occasion of great necessity and importance: but ought rather, hauiing placed the Ensignes together, to march in Squadrons, and in good order and in perfect forme, both for the respect of his reputation and their exercise, and the better to maintain the whole body of his Campe in assurance.



It is convenient for him to make election of an ingenious Maister of the Artillerie: of a Maister or Marshall of the Campe, of great experience: of a Sergeant Major generall, perfect & readie in that Office of great importance: of Colonels and other Captaines and Officers, of entire mindes, and as neere as is possible, such as be exercised in warlike affaires: to the intent they may be better able to execute the offices with the moze efficacie, such as can performe rather in action, then promise by words. And so consequently, that the election of other Officers and Souldiours, depending vpon their choise, be of good qualitie, as by all reason they ought to be, for we must perswade our selues, that that number is far lesse, which truely and exactly knowes, the importaunt and high secrets of the honourable arte of Armes, then those that are reputed meane and common. Therefore wise men affirme, that, that Prince, doth most worthily merite the rule of a Monarchie, that can make a good election of wise Counsellors and warlike Captaines.

After this, he must make choise of a sufficient Comessarie Generall, who chiefly may haue charge, to giue carefull order, that all the people and Souldiours may be conducted, to the mayne Masse and assembly, with speciall politike speede, to the ende they may iourney without working damage to the Countrey where they passe: and that the Souldiours do not fall to the spoile, through the ouer great pennury and want of necessary things.

Besides, this great Comessarie, obeyed by the particuler Purueyors, being of accoord with the Marshall of the Fielde: must vse his endeuour towards the prouision of ordinary victuals, that it may be well conducted, and better kept, sometimes if it be possible renuing the same, specially in a Countrey that is abundant, and distribute the old amongst the souldiours: but for al that, this must be done, when as it cannot otherwise be spent or kept good, that he may drawe the money disbursed at the Officers and Colonels hands. Amongst these sufficient store of victuals, prouided by this Comessarie and his followers, I haue seene it thought very necessary, to conduct with the Armie, flocks and droues of beastes, great and small, the which is of little hinderance or impediment, because they are not of burden, and so that by themselues they may be kept in good disposition: and the rather being ayded by the Princes strong arme of authoritie.

Thys

This Comessarie may vsually send out safe-guards or sealed Patents, that there may be respect had vnto Townes and other places, abundant in straw, Corne, Meale, Beere, Wine, Oyle, Cattle, Powder, Flesh, Salt, Wood, Fruite, and such other necessary things, specially where such places be taken and comen vpon at vnawares by the Armie.

These commodities and Munitions, he must cause to be kept with good order, to the intent they may the longer serue, and with one of the Generals Trumpets, which may accompany the said safe-guards or patents, or with some small Troupes of souldiours, and naye them vpon the gates of the Townes, Castles, or houses: these and the presence of the Trumpet, with a small garde of men of war, is of sufficient force to cause the said place to be respected so much as it ought or as is necessary: the which Office was very wel executed in the yeeres 1578. 1579. 1580. vnder Don Iohn and the Prince of Parma.

The Generall of the Armie, ought to examine often and verie narrowly the principall Officers, that good orders may alwaies with great diligence be executed, and continually with circumspect care, alwaies keepe open the vigilant eyes of the minde, and those of the body, warie and still waking, as well in aspecting occasion, as also in accepting and executing the, with rare prouidence and valour. It is very requisite, that he alwaies carrie with him a good and faithfull Guide, and to the intent he may not by craft or treachery be deceiued, such Guides ought alwaies to goe vnder a sure gard, giuen in charge and recommended to good Captaines, to good Officers and tryed Souldiours, and sometimes it shall bee good to carry them bound, and specially in a suspected Countrey, or that they be of a strange language and vnknowne to them. For sometimes, either of peruerse purpose, or fainting hart, in suddaine assaults which at vnawares arise by meanes of the Enemy, and by the suddaine noyse of Alarmes, they do flee away and saue themselues. Sometimes either through the commodious darkness of the night, or els through the knowledge of the Countrey, vnknowne to those they haue guided.

But to satisfie both Guides and Spyes, instruments so necessary and profitable to the honourable profession of Armes, a man must neuer appoint or limit any certaine bound to expences, but rather largely and liberally, pay and recompence them, without making

Fr. 3.

making any spare. For as it is a thing most manifest and cleere, that hauing such as be good and faithful, the victoꝝ remaines as it were certaine, so the contrary dooth easily succede, when his continuall and wakefull eye hath not respect to these substantiall aduertisements.

Neither can any Captaines execute or commaund with more assurance or better to the purpose, then those which are well conducted and led by Guides, and instructed so neere as is possible of all the Enemies determinations, and in what manner and soyme he will worke by the intelligences of his Espials. But hee must beware hee take carefull paynes to examine all things himselfe, without trusting to the indirect endeuoꝝ of any other person. And therfoꝝe it is a most necessary and excellent quality, to vnderstand and speake many languages, by imitating that most famous and victorious Emperour Charles the fift, since that hee himselfe dyd vnderstand the speech of euery Nation accustomed to practise with him, and to the most part of them sententiouly and pithilie coulde aunswer: by reason that not onely for thys respect the beneuolence of diuers Nations and particuler persons is gained, which is a thing that much impoꝝts, but also moꝝeouer deceite is auoꝝded, which through the defect and naturall vice of diuers malignant Interpreters might ensue: wherefoꝝe it is euer good to be doubtful.

Hee must of necessitie haue with him, such persons as be professed in Souldiours Architecture, for the most part properlie called by the name of Ingenioꝝs, who must haue knowledge to cause and cast out the propoꝝtion of Trenches, to make them of sufficient defence, and to frame massiue Bulwarks, large and reall Ditches, Cabions radled round about, to soyme great Parapets, and not onely to be good inuentoꝝs with iust propoꝝtions, but also moꝝe studious of the plots and soymes, and those things that be therunto coꝝrespondent, and how to accomodate himselfe to the reasonable situation which is to be foꝝtified: and y in effect they haue greater knowledge in warlike then in domesticall Architecture, of which I haue in a particuler discourse intreated in my fift Booke.

Likewise it is very good, he take delight chiefly in cases of suspect (although he haue lodged his Armie, in a place that is of a good & strong situation) to compasse the most weake places thereof, with  
Ditches

ditches & Trenches of good propoꝝtion, & reasonable wel flanked. That he take care to keepe & repayze those places that be strong by nature, with all dilligent and artefficiall meanes. For so much as from those places that appeare most assured, manie great ruines are receiued, either through the negligence of the wearied watch, or through the secret policie & the aspiring mindes of the enemy: neither ought he to emit or sit any toyle or trauell, for good Souldiours in vrgent necessities by examplare encouragement, doe moꝝe willingly and readily worke, then the Pyoners themselues, as was very well perfoꝝmed in enuironing the Campe, against the Lanzgraue, and the rest of the Lucheran sect, in that troublesome time of Charles the fift, Emperour, and as succeeded specially in Inglisstate, one of the francke townes, where vpon the suddaine was made a wonderfull worke of Trenches, of sufficient foꝝce to resist the incredible furie of the enemies mighty Armie, who had the aduantage both in horse-men, foot-men, & Artillarie, with the which thꝛee daies continually, they did batter, assault, and made wonderfull slaughter amongst the Emperiall Squadrons, placed with great disaduantage in a discouered and open ground, by reason of the low situation, determining to foꝝce the Emperiall Armie to dislodge: the better after, eyther to conquer, or diue them the Country. The which through this great worke of Trenches, and together with many Carres planted vpon the one side, and vpon the other the great Riuer Danubie, and in front with certaine Pondes and Ditches of water, and vpon the backe, the town of Inglisstate, it was altogether compased and enuironed of sufficient foꝝce. But touching these respects, loke in my fourth booke, where I haue particularly touched this matter.

Moreouer, it is necessary that the Captayne Generall, doe sometimes ryde by night about the Campe, and admonish the watch that they remaine ready and vigilant, since that in the eyes and eares of so fewe, the health & safegarde of all the Campe doth consist. As little as may be, he must suffer alarums to be giuen to his people, either by daye or by night, or at any tyme whatsoeuer: but if thereunto hee bee constrained, lette him make it secretly, and without striking on the Drums, or sounding Trompets, but rather vse Drum strikes and Surdines. Or otherwise in respect and place of those Instruments, which in such cases

cases are accustomed to be sounded. It is very conuenient he send some persons of authority, of purpose therunto appoynted, to passe round about and through the Campe, to aduertise & appoint speedily, such thinges as are to be performed, hauing before hand, had perfect discouerie of the enemy, and giuen resolute commission to make the alarum. Which quiet kinde of proceeding, shall afterwards cause lesse traueyle, and much more reputation to his people and to himselfe: and to his enemy great confusion and discouragement, perceiuing that by their pollicie and valiant proceeding, they do finally esteeme or feare them. Which at sundrie alarums in the Campe, surprizes of Townes, Camisadoes, &c. I haue in the low Countries, vnder Don Iohn, seene pollicikely put in practise.

Hee ought when any alarum shall chaunce to be giuen, to take order with the high Marshall, with as great diligence as he canne, to double the Corps de garde and watch: which ought before hande to be placed with great Iudgement, in places that be strong by nature, or otherwise fortified by arte. Besides, he must carry a speciall care, and vse a singular dilligence, not to give occasion of Mutinies, the which are accustomed for the most parte, to bring forth extreame ruine: chiefly when they bee of naughty nature, although the dignitie, authoritie, and power of the Captayne Generall bee very great, for there is almost neuer any remedy vsed agaynst such vprozes, without great losse of reputation and authoritie, so great is the terrible furie of this franticke encounter.

He neuer ought to suffer his Collonelles, neither his Captaines, to haue any dead payes, or supply their rowmes by others, that passe vnder their names in Muster: for in time of important neede, many times the Captayne Generall, shall finde his Forces very much weakened, contrarie to his expectation. A thing verie dangerous for the totall ruine of the whole Armie. Together with this aduertisement, hee ought to be alwayes courteous and liberall towards those that do follow him, to the intent his Chieftaine may courteously entertayne those that be good Souldiours. A thing woorthie to be noted.

He must search by all meanes possible, to keepe his Armie continually, couragious and wyth aspiring mindes, by artificiall functions, to the enemies confusion. Sometimes disappearing a

rumor,

rumor, that hee hath intercepted and taken, certayne aduertisements of importance. Sometimes to saigne, that he hath the commoditie to ayde himselfe, with the succours of many Princes and common Princes, although there be no such matter. To make ioyfull Triumphes and shewes with Artillarie, artificiall fyres and bondfyres, in the euening, and sometimes making shew that he hath a desire to assault and inuade the enemy by night, by Camisado, they beeing vnprouided: as did Charles the fifth against the Lantzgraue, vpon the arriuall of Counte de Bure with succours out of Flaunders: or as did Iulian Romero, vnder the Duke of Alua, when the Prince of Orange was repulsed from before Mountes in he naule.

Besides this, hee may vse like functions, artes, or Stratagemes, to aduance his warlike affayres: for, it is a vertue to vse deceit in Militarie actions, thereby to further the proceedings of iustice, against manifest enemies, when it is lawfull to assault, either with craft or force, either openly or covertly, for that which doth succede, whether it fall out by deceit or valour, is comendable in warlike actions. As did Don Iohn, in surprizing the Castell of Namures, a thing which fell out to be the safety of himselfe & the whole Countrey, and the cause whereby hee had meanes to reuenge himselfe of his enemies, at such times as we gaue the that famous ouerthrow, betwixt Namures and Gibloc.

Let the Generall haue great care to such chaunces and accidents, as haue need of present remedy, repaying them with care: full prouidence, by reason that the most occasions which fall out in wars, can suffer no delayes: for whilst some haue bene in consulting, and deferring the matter but a little moment of time, they haue at that instant received losse not able to be recovered, & therefore to proceede with a wise and speedie policie, is of infinite aduantage, yea and altogether necessary. He must alwayes haue in memoery, & not by reason he is Superiour, in number & multitude of souldiours, he may make assured account of victory: but rather through the good order he doth obserue, in disposing & framing a ready obedience, and the exercise of a true & approved practise in warlike actions, is the only meanes to performe the same, & doth cause the difference thowoly to be discerned, betwixt one Captaine Generall and an other. For the art of Militarie profession doth nourish in the breastes of men which follow this exercise, a valiant and aspiring mind to fight. Wherefore as from thence safety

pp.

and victorie both proceede: so contrariwise, by not possessing the same, losse and total ruine doth follow: Since that practise, doth make a man abound with exquisite qualities, whereby courage is kindled in our hearts: and contrariwise quenched in him that is a souce and fresh water souldier, in the exercise of these causes, which in every respect is grounded vpon long experience, conference and reading, and not by proud and presumptuous rashnes.

He must likewise remember, that many times in new begun wars, specially against straunge nations, a new forme of fight is requisite. The election of new armes is necessary, the varying of order, & the studie of a new art. Likewise it is good to Campe and dis campe oftent, when it may be done without manifest perill, and without suspicion or daunger of the enemy: for thereby the infection of the ayre is auoided, and souldiours kept exercised, who by lying still become slothfull and negligent. Moreover, the Marshal of the field hauing at every lodging, either planted or entrenched the Campe: it is most necessary for the Generall, being accompanied with some Cavalieres of his owne Courte and garde, hauing before hym his generall Trumpet, and his Guidon or Coznet displayde (without which hee ought neuer to goe abroade) to ride vp and downe to visite the quarters, places of armes, Munitions, and Trenches. And so the intent he may keepe the Souldiours in their Lodgings, and in their proper quarters, when it is expedient that they should not wander about the armie, for some good and speciall purpose. Let him cause some small stampe or countersigne to be giuen or disburled to his Captaynes, to the end, that they giuing them to the Officers or souldiours, they may accomplish all they necessary businesse, without being hindered or stayed of the prouost: who must carry a vigilant respect, touching this charg, so that those which haue not such countersignes or stamper, and bee founde south of their quarter, may be chastised without remission, according to the proclamation and bande, made to that effect.

When the Generall cannot in time, readily paye his Souldiours, as many times it falles out through want of money, or by reason of some other accident, it is needefull for him to make prouision, that the Countrey where he remaines may beare them: or els let him carrie them into a barraine place, small inhabited, so the intent, that not being able to liue but with great spare, through the want of many delicate thinges, they may bee more patient in attending theyr paye.

He must permit, that the baggage of all sort of people, the victuals, the Munitions, with the other impediments, and finally al the disarmed, may haue a seuerall Captaine, Chiefe, & Ensigne, every one apart, if their number will beare the same, for that they must march vnited together, and in order, as shal be most expedient and conuenient, to the intent they do not cause great disturbance and confusion, through their slow or ouer-hasty going, which is an ordinary thing amongst them, being unruly people.

Let the Generall, as before I saide, carry a speciall care to the choise of his principall Officers, and that in the election, he haue more respect to the valour & vertue of the person, then to any particular fauour, otherwise he may in time be brought to repent his choise, and hardly redresse his calamities. Therefore let him often and vnlooked for, resort vnto the Captaines & Collonels Tents, to see what towardly readines they are or may bee in of a suddaine, and that he cause the Captaines make often like resort vnto the souldiours and vnder Officers, to see if they be in the like orderlie readines for any suddaine seruice: and by degrees descending from one to another, to make speciall prouise of every mans sufficiencie, for the better performance wherof, he must receiue into his hands, the order of all Offices in writing, together with all the names of the souldiours in the Band wherby he may likewise see whether he haue his iust number. And consequently examine every Officer, whether they haue a sufficient propozition of Armour, weapon, shot, powder, artillary, fireworks, boates to make bridges to passe Rivers, shades, mattocks, and every other particularity, before the Armie march.

The Generall hauing receiued his whole Armie entirely, hee must assemble his Counsell, and to ordaine statuts and lawes for the gouernment of his souldiours, first communicating the same with his Collonels and Captaines, causing them also to impart them to their Bands, vsing every man frankly with due reuerence to speake, obiect, and by writing (if they list) to offer vnto the Counsell what they can against any of them, which obiects as considered, they shal resolue vpon such like Lawes & Penalties as I haue adioyned to the dutie of a Souldiour in my first Booke, beginning alwaies with Lawes for the feare of God, and the Christian faith, and so follow on for the Prince, Country, and Campe. And then cause every Collonel and Captaine to take his oath, and

they likewise cause euery souldiour at his Ensigne to take his oath, to obserue, and as much as in them shall lye, to cause to be obserued euery of those lawes and Edicts so agreed vpon.

He must not onely cause the foresaid lawes to be written or imprinted in seuerall Bookes, giuen to the Collonels, Captaines, or other Officers and Corporals, therby to instruct euery private souldiour perfectly in the, but also to provide, that the Prouost General doe prosecute y offenders & breakers of these Edicts, who with his followers must be specially respected, as before is set downe.

The General is by good, speciall and parti plots, Maps, & Models, to know the situation, nature, and property of the Country, and his parts where he is to passe with his Armie, whether it be plaine & champion, or woody & ful of waters, furnished with strong Townes, or no: and to proportion the Horsemen and Footmen of his Army accordingly. For if it be most part champion and full of forrage, it is meet to haue the more Horsemen: if it stand vpon Straits and fortified places, he is to haue the more Footmen.

Light Horsemen are in all places for discovery, fetching in of booties, & pursuing of victorie, very seruiceable, and not to be spared.

The General ought also to learne by good espial how his enemy is appointed: for against the French, who abound with shot, and haue few pikes, the Launce & Light-horsmans staffe of the Poeth is singuler good, especially in the plaine: but against the Switzers and Launce Knights, the Launce auaileth little, but y Argoletares and Pistoletares shall much more annoy them. It shall be likewise very comodious to haue some cariages allowed in pay, to attende on euery Band of footmen, as wel as on horsemen, who besides the carriage of necessaries for vse, may also in time of Skirmish, and other encounters, serue to carry hurt men out of the field. They be very good to empale the Armie, specially if the cartages & horses bee arteificially flanked and shadowed with boordes filled with quires of paper.

Whilst faire wether is, the General must acquaint his Souldiours to sleepe on bare ground, and though the Enemy be far absent, yet duly to maintaine their Scoutes to watch and ward, and performe all Military orders, as curiously as if the Enemy were present, so shall it not seeme greuous when necessity requires it.

If he haue many horse, he must see that the Marshall of the field plant his Campe, where good stoze of forrage is nere, other wise, in

in forraging farre off, he may greatly hazard his companies, if good Conuoyes be not sent with his Forragers, and their iourneys discretly directed. Good regard must also be had, that the Campe be not subiect to any hill, from whence the enemy may beate with great Artillery, nor so disioyned fro water, as the enemy may easily cut you from it, neither yet so low, as the Enemy cutting the banks of anie Riuer, may drowne the Campe. If there be no great Riuers, but onely small Fountaines or Wels to water your Armie, then must good watch be kept, that they be not by the enemy poysoned and infected.

The Generall should not so much seeke to place his Campe in seates strong by nature, as to fortify them by arte, as wel to keep his Souldiours from idleness, (the only ruine of Armies) as also that due order in Camps may be maintained: let him therfore imitate the auncient Romans, the very Masters of the arte of war, who neuer consented other then y plaine to campe vpon: entrenching theselues nightly in as strong & sure manner, as if the enemy had encamped by them, and that euen in places vtterly boide of all suspition, to make these military trauails familiar vnto them, and to auoide those idle, or rather dissolute effrenate pastimes, that our Christian Campes are bewitched withal, to the vtter ruine of all good Military discipline, and confusion of our Armies.

In a running Campe, the readiest fortification is, to impale it round with the cariages chayned together, the sides of the cariages and horses shaded with thin boordes, with certain quires of paper betwixt, cunningly compacted together, which being accommodated to make sides, bottoms, and doores to the Carts & cariages, will serue wonderfully to empale an Army, to make approaches, or to holde out Caluer & Basket shot. Then let them bend the Artillery that waie where most suspition is the enemy shall approach, and if time wil permit, to cast some Trench also without the cariages against Artillery. He must keepe his Souldiours in continuall military exercise: and by fained allarmes, to see in what readines his hands would be if necessitie required, to shew them all maner of waies how y enemy may attempt them, discovering also to the the remedy, and howe they are to aunswer to those attempts: for no man is borne a Souldiour, but by exercise and trayning it is attained, and by discontinuance againe it is lost, as all other Artes and Sciences be.

In setting of a Campe, beside the commodities of wood, water, and forrage, the Generall must also consider how his Souldiours may safely come vnto him, and to leaue no Castles at his back to annoy them, but that

he seeke to p[re]uent them ere he march fo[r]ward, fo[r] great is the anoy-  
ance that a litle ryle at the back of an Army may do, as wel against  
fo[r]ragers & straglers, as to cut off victuals from the Campe.

The Generall is also by good plots to consider, the situation of the  
Country, how both friend and enemy Townes lie from the Campe,  
the hils and ballies, waies, straits, passages, lakes, riuers & brydges,  
their number, quantity, distance, and euery particularity, which may  
be done by conference with his Discoverers, Guides, Espyals, & o-  
ther persons that know y<sup>e</sup> Country, concerning their assertions with  
his plots. And so to consider whether y<sup>e</sup> enemy may conueniently cut  
off his victuals, o[r] by Ambush anoy him in his march, and fo[r] p[re]uen-  
tion therof, to send abroad Light-horsmen & Hargabuzers to garde  
the passages towards the enemies Garisons. Before the Armie dis-  
campe, all passages and waies fo[r] the souldiours and Artillery, &c. to  
passe, should be discouered, and skilful men appointed to lead them.

He ought not to suffer any band to march scattered, but in battaile  
order, o[r] at least in straits & narrow passages inforce to d[is]turb them  
fo[r]th in Herles, and so soone as place serueth, to reduce them againe  
to the order of battaile: and this is to be v[er]sed in places of security, o[r]  
exercise, as in places of suspect fo[r] safetie. He ought to haue with him  
good Guides, that perfectly know all passages, hilles, ballies, &c. fo[r] of  
the Country in generallitie, the Generall himselfe ought perfectly to  
be informed by Plots & Models, wherby he shal the better conceiue  
any information that shal be brough[t] him by espiall. If the General  
haue sundry P[ar]tions vnder his government, it is not meete to gyue  
alwaies to any one P[ar]tion the vaward, considering the same, being  
in marching towards the enemy the place of greatest honour, the o-  
thers will much repine against it, and not without good cause. The  
order therfo[r]e in marching, should so be framed, that euery P[ar]tion  
haue his turne, without partial fauor to any one. And if the number  
be great of any one Mercenary P[ar]tion, it is not amisse to deuide the,  
both in marching & imbattelling, fo[r] sundry respects, which in this  
place I omit to show. If any strait be kept by the enemy, it is not  
meet first to charge them vpon the very front, but to send Light-hors-  
men & shot to skirmish with them on either flank, and then with  
Targets of p[ro]ofe to enter vpon them.

The Generall should before he bring his Souldiours to deale with  
the enemy, first in some champion place, cause them to be ranged in  
fo[r]me of battaile, making of his footmen sundry Battillions, & of these  
Battillions, sundry Fronts, to deuide his Horsmen also into sundry  
Troupes,

Troupes, placing the men at Armes, Demilances, Light-horsmen,  
and Argoleteares, euery Host in seueral Troupes by themselves, to  
cause the fo[r]lozue to issue out, and skirmish the before the Battillions,  
as if the enemy were indeed present, and vpon a signe giuen, suddain-  
ly to retire. The horsmen to charge and returne againe to their place,  
vpon their retire, to cause certain fleues of pykes and light Armed, to  
run out to their reskew, as though the enemy did pursue them. Then  
the Battillions of the first front to march fo[r]ward, & bend their pikes,  
and suddainly after the sound of the retrain, to retire themselves o[r]-  
derly, betw[een] the Battillions of the second front: then y<sup>e</sup> second front  
to march fo[r]ward, and bend their pikes, and y<sup>e</sup> other that first retired,  
to make head againe vpon the enemy. Last of all, the Light-horsmen  
and light Armed footmen againe to b[re]ake fo[r]th, as it were to doe exe-  
cution vpon the enemy fleeing, which fo[r]me of trayning, doth aun-  
swer Ma. Digs his p[ro]portion of imbattelling. These things, if in  
pastime the souldiours be able orderly to performe, there is good hope  
they wil honozably put it in execution vpon the enemy. Other wise,  
to bring them without trayning to deale with the enemy, is nothing  
els but to leade them to the butcherie.

As there is nothing moze perrillous in giuing of battaile, then to  
lay before y<sup>e</sup> souldiours eyes any place of refuge to flee vnto, but that  
the Generall should declare vnto them, that there is no hope to escape  
but only by victo[ry], and heerin to imitate Hanniball: so there is no-  
thing moze dangerous, then to giue y<sup>e</sup> enemy battaile in such a place,  
where in troth hee hath no refuge o[r] possibility to escape, fo[r] that ne-  
cessity maketh men desperate, it vniteth them together, & it hath often  
been seene, that very small copanies, by such like occasions, being re-  
duced to desperation, thereupon resolving to sell their liues deere-  
ly, haue contrary to all expectation attained victo[ry] vpon their enemies,  
in number farre greater.

The General must haue special care, that the souldiours haue not  
in their faces, the dust to blind them, the wind to disturbe them, o[r] the  
sun beames to anoy them, before they enter into any maine encoun-  
ter: the which impediments, not only altogether, but each one by him-  
selfe alone, doth bring great toile, trouble, and disadvantage. Ney-  
ther let him lead his souldiours to performe any enterpryse of impo[r]-  
tance, if before hand he haue not had great and manifest experience of  
them. Note that it is much better to ouercome the enemy, by wear-  
ing him with delaies, then by furious fight put himselfe to y<sup>e</sup> hazarde  
of doubtful fortune, which oftentimes hath in battaile greater p[ro]-  
fiance.

sance then valour or vertue it selfe, therefore alway procede in these vncertaine ends of Armes, rather assuredly then perrillously. The order which the enemies hold, ought first of all euer to be discovered.

The Generall being a man of iudgment, doth attend and take respect with prudence and with carefulnes, both to his affaires, and to the enemies, and doth that is good, or that which is pernicious in the one and in the other, and doth prevent his traps and deceits, neither suffers any thing negligently about himselfe, nor assured about them. In warres, for the most part, the victoꝝ comes by nothing els, but the euill counsell and base mind of his aduersary, therefore very hardly can he be overcome, that can measure and knowe, both bys owne, and his enemies forces and order.

When a Prince or his Generall, hath setted himselfe with Confederates, with good and experienced Captaines with valiant Souldiours, with Munition and weapons, with money and strong places: it followes that he endeouours himselfe to weaken the force, interrupt and breake in sunder the aduersaries determinations, the which thing may be perfoꝝmed speedily or late, according as occasions shall offer it selfe, which is the fountaine and originall of all gracious acts.

To conclude, the Generall, the high Officers of the Army, Colonels, Captaines, and Souldiours, must daily serue God, for Religion causeth good orders, good orders brings god fortune, good fortune makes god successe to arise in all enterprizes. The Armie wel paide, discipline must be vsed without respect of persons. Justice to doe euery man right, makes the Generall of great maiestie and reputation, beloued and feared, because hee doth and is able to aduance the vertuous, and correct the wicked. For money is the flesh & sinewes of the warres, and ordeined for the same. That warre is iust, which a Prince commaunds, for to recouer that is lost, or to defende injuries and wrongs offered to him by others.

FINIS.

FOR that there hath somewhat bene saide touching Townes of warre and fortifications, Souldiours of iudgement dooth know, that a place besieged by the power of a mighty Prince, cannot long endure, without there be within the same a sufficient number of men, Munition, & victuals: when any of these three things lacke, the enemy will soone haue the place besieged. Therefore the saide Captaine Hichcocke who hath bene the onely cause of printing this booke of warre, and hath beautified the same with many graces, doth thinke it good, to ioyne to the same worke, this short discourse, which declareth what proportion of victuals will serue one thousand Souldiours in a Garrison, where the victuals must be prouided by her Maiesties Victualer. As for example, wee will make our proportion for Barwicke, wherein I will shew, how the chiefe Victualer and petty Victualers gaynes and profits shall rise, that men may looke therein, whereby all doubts and questions that may growe for that seruice shall be auoyded, and the Garrison at all times well furnished with things necessary and needefull, for victualling of one thousand Souldiours and after that proportion, as the number shall fall out, more or lesse. Within this generall proportion hereafter, I do declare first for Bread and Beere, the Bakehouse and Brewhouse, the Grayners for store, the Windmilles, the horsemilles, with their implements: the Caske and other necessary things, the charges of men, horses, and carriages to the same belonging, with theyr wages and allowance for theyr trauaile and seruice. How this proportion is to be prouided, vsed, deliuered, & spent, in reading ouer this little worke following, you shall finde very short and plaine.

Robert Hichcock.

A generall proportion and order of prouision, for a yeere of three hundred, three score and fve daies, to victuall a Garrison of one thousand Souldiours.

The order for the Bakehouse.

The Souldiours hauing one pounce and a halfe of good wheate ten bzeade for one penny, or one pound and a halfe of good white bzeade for xv. ob. the Bakers to answer for euery quarter of wheate, beeing sweete, good, and merchantable, deliuered at Barwicke, xx s. clere of all charges and waste, which happeneth

A a.

neither after wards by keeping the Grayners or any other, except casualtie of the enemy after the deliuey thereof.

Necessaries and implements, wood, wages of Clarkes, Bakers, Millers, Carters, Labourers or any other, for the Bakehouses, Windmills, Grayners, or carriage of provision, and for horse and Carts for the same are to be found by this rate and size of bzeade, without any other allowance to be demanded, sauing for wast and charges of as much wheat, as the vse of baking shal be otherwise imploied, then to be deliuered in bzeade by the who were charged with the receite from the Shippes, and keeping the Grayners of the same.

The Bakehouses, Windmills, and Grayners, beeing furnished with implements and necessaries at the entrance into seruice, and in good order of repzacion, are so to be maintayned and kept, in and by all things, except casualty of the enemy. And are to be deliuered at the departure from seruice, in as good order and furniture of all thinges as they were first receined.

And considering the charge to maintaine the Bakehouse, with the appurtenances and allowance to the petty victualers of the Garrison, after xvi. lones of bzeade for yr. A quarter of good wheat will make in good bzeade, by order of this booke xv. s. so haue yee of euerie quarter for charges v. s. and after foure quarters y day, for the whole yere, iii. C. lxx. p. That is to say, for wood to bake a quarter of meale in loose bzeade, xvi. d. and after foure quarters the day, for a yere, sum lxxx. xvii. p. vii. s. viii. d. and for this repzacion of the Bakehouse and the appurtenances yereley: L p.

Wages and victuall of two Clarkes, two Millers, foure Bakers, and foure Labourers yereley, one hundred and fiftie pound.

Maintenance of horse for carriage in this charge yereley 62. p. 13. s. 4. d. All these allowances are found in the size of bzeade beside the bzeanne.

The whole Garrison beeing as befoze one thousande Souldiours, wil spend foure quarters of wheat a day, and for the whole yere fourteene hundred threescore and foure quarters. Although by order this number will serue, yet the provision to be at least in wheate for bzeade, 2000. quarters for the provision

I account good wheate may be bought with ready money by former bargaines for seauen yeres together, for 13 s. 4. d. the quarter, in Northpze, Nottinghamshire, and Lincolnshire. I account

account the charges of a quarter, from the place it was bought, to Barwicke at 3. s. 4. d. that is to say, where they sende it downe in Bales, to giue for keeling of a quarter 4. d. for freight of a quarter to Barwicke, 16. d. and for the Purueyors charges for mats or any other, of a quarter 20. d. And in other meete place wher the freight is greater, the other charges are the lesse, so as it may be done for the pzice.

I haue made no mention of wast, which is to be bozne by the ouer measure, beeing bought for ready money by former bargaines, except Shippwzacke and casualtie of the enemy. So I account wheate to be deliuered at Barwicke, cleere of all charges and freight, at sixteen shillings eight pence the quarter, one time with another, as befoze.

And where the Baker alloweth to deliuer in bzeade for euerie quarter of good Wheate, 20. s. cleere of all charges and wast after the deliuey thereof at Barwicke, by this order of provision, the freight, wast, and all other charges allowed, except casualtie of the enemy and Shippwzacke, there remaineth profit in euerie quarter 3. s. 4. d. Sum 243. p. 6. s. 8. d.

These may suffice for the order of the Bakehouse for the bzeade, and provision of cozne for the same: sauing there is to be considered, to haue in store at all times, in wood 200. loades euery three Monethes to be renewed: to euery Mill, a payze of spare stones, and tymer for repzacion. All implements and necessaries to be furnished for the sayde charge, and for the horse and carts of the same.

Certaine notes for wheate-meale and bzeade.

A bushell of good wheate meale, as it commeth from the myl, and weying 56 p. will make in household bzeade 72. p. so that it will take in liquor, beside that is dzyed in baking, being weyed within 24 houres after the baking, 16. p. that is, for 7. p. of meale, 9. p. of bzeade.

Take 7. p. of bran out of a bushell of good meale, weying 56 p. & the 49. p. remayning, will make in good wheaten bzeade 63. p. and that passe will make in ordinary bisset, beeing conuerted to that vse, 42. p. and taking three poundes and a halfe more of bran from the sayde meale, the foure five poundes and a halfe remayning, will make in white bzeade, foure two poundes, or white



white biskette twentie eight pounde.

A bushell of wheate weying but fifty two pound to the Mpyll, if you wil make it so all with good meale, take out of the same ten pound of bran, and the fortye two pound remaining, wil make in wheaten bread, fifty foure pound, or in ordinary bisket thirty six pounde: that is, of a quarter of such wheate, two hundred & two quarters, by l. taken out of the same for grinding, and it wyll make but two hundred one quarter ordinary biskette, except yee take out lesse bran, and make courser bread then the ordinary vse of the same. The lighter wheate, the courser, and moze bran, and there is woze wheate then is here mentioned. The heauier wheate, the finer meale, and lesse bran, and there is better also then is here declared.

Some wheate will wey moze then weight in a quarter foure teene pound, & some twenty eight pound. So of light wheate the Baker maketh course breade, and to small profit: and of good weyghty wheate, saye bread, to the Bakers honestly and profit.

Because diuersitie of measures should be auoided, there is considered for waste in prouision, the ouermeasure: and for waste in the Grayners, the Mpylles to be parcell of the Bakehouse, so that the Baker to answer that waste as before. Thus much is declared for wheate, and the Bakers in their charge.

*The order for the Brewhouse.*

**T**he Brewwer deliuering double beere at thirtie shillings the Tunne, the Souldiour to haue a wine quart for a halfe pennie, and deliuering strong beere at fortye eight shillings the tun, the Souldiour to haue a wine quart for ob. q. And the Brewwers to allowe Officers, for every quarter of Mault xij. s. iij. d. and for every quarter of wheate, xx. shillings, clere of all charges and waste in the garners, after the deliery of the same at Warwick, from aboord the Shypps there, except casualty of the enemy.

Necessaries and implements, wood & coale, wages of Clarke, Brewwers, Mpyllers, Copers, Carters, and Labourers for the Brewhouse, the apurtenances and carriage of prouision, with horse and cartes for the same, Hoppes, and Beercozne, Caske, and Hoppes, or any other necessaries, are to be found by this rate and price of Beere, without any other allowance: saving waste and charges of as much Maulte, wheate, Beercozne, or caske, as

as shal be otherwise employed then with beere, to bee deliuered by those which were charged with the receite and carriage from the Shypps, and keeping the garners of the same.

The Brewhouses, horse-myls, Garners, and store houses for this charge, being furnished with implements and necessaries, and in good order of reparation at the entrance into service, are so to be mainfayned and kept, in and by all thinges, except casualty of the enemy. And to be deliuered at the departure from service, in as good order and furniture of all thinges, as they were receiued, without any other allowance then for carriage of Beere to the petty Aduallers, as hath bene, and is at Warwick accustomed.

If there shoulde bee demaunded any great price for Maulte, then must the beere be smaller, and the water the Brewwers friende for gayne to maintaine this charge.

And for that I haue considered, the great charges of the apurtenances before declared, I haue rated both kindes of beere by the Tunne in prouision, and howe allowance is founde for the maintenaunce of the same.

*Double Beere in proportion by the Tunne.*

To every Tunne in Mault, r. Bushelles and a halfe allowance, for waste in the Garners, at xij. shillings iij. pence the quarter.	xviij. s. viij. d.
In Wheate one Bushell,	v. d.
In Dates halfe a Bushell,	xv. d.
In Hoppes vij. pound, at xx. s. for a hundred.	xx. s.
Wood and Coales, to every Tunne	xij. s. iij. d.
Reparation of the Houses, implements, necessaries, and waste of Caske,	xij. s. iij. d.
Maintenaunce of men for the sayd charge, allowed of every Tunne,	xij. s. iij. d.
Maintenaunce of horse to the Mpylles, and Cartes for carriage of prouision,	xij. s. iij. d.
So haue yee the Tunne of double Beere at xxx. s.	

*Strong Beere in proportion by the Tunne.*

To every Tunne in Mault, two quarters and thre peckes allowance for waste in the Garners	xxviij. s.
As a 3.	In

In wheate two bushelles, five shillings.  
 In Dates one bushell, ten pence.  
 In Hoppes eight pound and a halfe, eightene pence.  
 Wood and coale to every Tunne, two shillings six pence.  
 Reparation of the houses, implements, necessaries, and waste of Calke, three shillings four pence.  
 Mayntenance of men for the sayde charge, allowed of every Tunne, five shillings.  
 Mayntenance of Horse to the Mylles, and Cartes for carriage of prouision, one shilling ten pence.  
 So ye haue the tun of stronge beere as appeareth, at 48.<sup>s</sup>.  
 The prouision for 600. common souldiours a yeere in double beere after the order of this booke, 456. tun in Hogheads.  
 The prouision for foure hundred, greater allowance a yeere in stronge beere after the order of this booke, three hundred foure Tunne barrell. Sum 760. tunne in Hoghead barrell.  
 By these prouisions of beere, is considered for wood and coale, three score sixtene pound ten pence. Reparation of the appurtenances, and waste of the Calke, 100. l. 2. s. 4. d. ob.  
 For maintenaunce of 2. Clarkes, 4 Brewers, one Myller, 2 Copers, and foure Labourers, 150. l. 1. s. 8. d.  
 Mayntenance of Horse to the Mylles, and cartes for carriage of prouision: beside yeste and graynes, 54. l. 9. s. 7. d. ob.  
 So haue ye for maintenance of the sayde charge, three hundredth foure score two pound, foure and sixteene shillings, six pence, found in the rate and price of beere.  
 And more by the petty Victuallers, for carriage of beere at 16. d. the Tunne vsed of custome, 50. l. 13. s. 10. d.  
 Sum for mayntenance of the Brewhouses, and the appurtenances as appeareth, 433. l. 8. s. 4. d.  
 And there appeareth also by the sayde prouisions, Wheate, Stowe of Corne and Hoppes, will serue the same as followeth.  
 In Hauke for double beere, at ten bushels the Tunne, five hundred three score and ten quarters, two bushels and a halfe: allowance for waste, eightene quarters and a halfe. In Hauke for stronge beere at two quarters the Tunne, five hundred eight quarters three bushels  
 Sum in Hauke 1237. quarters and a halfe

In wheate to both prouisions as appeareth, 133 quarters and halfe a bushell. In Dates, 66 quarters and foure bushelles.  
 In Hops, five thousand foure hundred two quarters xi pounde; beside the weight of the Hop-sackes  
 And notwithstanding, this prouision of Hauke, Wheate, and Hoppes will serue the like Garrison: yet considering the place, the prouision to bee yeerely in Hauke, two thousand quarters.  
 In Wheate for beere, two hundred fiftie quarters. In Dates, one hundred and fiftie quarters. And in good Hops, eight thousand weight  
 In Coale as a continuall stowe, every three monethes to bee renewed two hundred Chadron  
 Spare Stones to the horse mylles, double furniture of necessaries for the Brewhouses, horse-myls, and Garners, Double furniture of necessaries for the horse and Cartes  
 To haue in stowe of good calke, seruiceable for beere, beside that is daylie occupied, one hundred Tunne  
 In good Clapworde, two great hundred  
 In Maincots, two hundred  
 In Spruce deales, two hundred  
 In seasoned Tunstauces, two hundred  
 In hoopes as a continuall stowe to be renewed, 30 or 40000.  
 In good yron, foure tunne  
 Although some of these are of small value, yet are they not to be spared, nor easily to be had in time of seruite, and therefore to be considered  
 All such prouision, with Brew-house, Bake-house, and Garners, I haue seene in the Pallace at Warwicke, the fift yeere of king Edward the first, I then hauing the charge of two hundred Wyoners, in the fortification there  
 For prouision.  
 I count good Hartle may be bought in Cambridgeshire, and such part of Dorsetshire where the Hauke is very good, and in Lincolnshire for seauen yeeres together, by former bargaines for ready money, at six shillings and eight pence the quarter  
 As for wheate for this charge, is to bee had in all places, and Dates also. Courte wheate will serue for beere, so that the best be reserved for bread. And wheate that hath taken beate, in the carriage, not being wette with salt water, will serue for this charge

charge to be occupied with other that is good.

I rate the charges of provision, freight, waste, and all other, except casualty of the enemy, at *iiij. s. iiij. d.* the quarter: as before in the charge of the Bakehouse, so that Haulte may be deliuered at Barwicke, cleere of all charges one time with an other, at ten Shillings the quarter.

There appeareth to be allowed by the Bzeuer for euery quarter of Hault, *xij. s. iiij. d.* and for euery quarter of Wheate *xx. s.* cleere of all charges and waste, after the deliuey therof from a boarde the Shypps at Barwicke, except casualty of the enemy, being employed for beere deliuered in seruice.

And by the order of provision, the freight, waste, and all other charges cleered, to be profit in euery quarter of Hault and wheat employed as before, except casualty of the enemy, *iiij. s. iiij. d.* Sum *ij. C. xxvij. l. viij. s. iiij. d.*

As I haue declared great difference in the goodnes of wheat, so is there in Hault much more: for the common Hault of Norfolk, is not to be compared to good Haulte, by foure quarters in euery *xx* quarters. And Hault that is full of weeuels, and wood dyed Hault, will make vnseruery drinke, to those that are used to drinke beere or ale made with straw dyed Hault, yet in time of great warres, both Norfolk Haulte and wood dyed Haulte will serue with other good Haulte, and make good drinke also to serue the time.

Thus for causes of seruice of Breade and Beere, I haue sufficiently proued in these fewe lines declared, and the charges of the same in all pointes considered: adding thereunto a provision for the rest of the victualling of such a Garrison.

#### Provision of Beefe by proportion.

That is to say, the whole Garrison by thys order, will spend in Beefe *xij. C.* weight a day, for *ij. C.* dayes, *iiij. C.* Dren, containing *iiii. C.* weight euery Dre. And for the sayd seruice there they may be bought in Northshyre, Darbshyre, Lankeshyre, the Bishoprick of Durham, and deliuered at Barwicke alyne, cleere of all charges, for thre pound euery Dre, those that are good, fat, and so large, that the carkas do wey euery quarter round, fifteen stone, at *viii. l.* the stone, the one with the other, wherof to be allowed for the hyde, offall and fallow *xx* Shillings, And so of all other

ther Dren after the rate the fourth part the same did cosse alyne, either of small or great, Having licence to transport the hides or ner sea, to be solde to most aduantage: and rating allowance for looking to the pastures, for killing, dressing, and cutting out of euery such Dre, *23. s.* and yet remaineth profit in the Dre by thys order, *6. Shillings 8 pence* the peece.

Sum for the whole proportion, *100. pound.*  
 Provision of Mutton by proportion.  
 Mutton also for fyfte dayes *1200.* weight a day, rating the carkas of a sheepe about *45.* pounde, the one with the other, that is, thirtie sheepe a day, in all *1500.* sheepe. Such sheepe being fat and good, are to be bought in Lincolnshyre, Northshyre, and Darbshyre, and deliuered at Barwicke alyne, for *6. Shillings 8 pence* a sheepe, cleere of all charges, wherof to be allowed *20. d.* for the skin, offall and fallow. Having licence to transport the fells to be sold as before to most aduantage: and rating allowance for looking to the pastures, killing and dressing of euery such sheepe, foure pence, and yet remaineth profit in euery of the like sheepe, *16 pence.*  
 Sum for the whole proportion, *100. l.*

Provision of Porke by proportion.  
 Porke also for thirtie dayes, *1500.* weight a day, the which I rate at *15.* Hoges, and in all, *484.* Hoges, wherof the weight of euery hogge to wey besides the offall, one hundred shire, and Northshyre, and deliuered at Barwicke alyne, being good cleane, and fatte, for *8. s. 4. d.* a hog, cleere of all charges, *60.* wherof to be allowed for the offall of euery such hogge, *2. d.* and rating allowance for looking to them, killing, scalding, and dressing of euery hog, *8 pence,* and yet remaineth profit in euery such hog, *2. s.*  
 Sum for the whole proportion, *48. l.*

Notwithstanding this provision, yet the store of Dren to be *400.* *2000.* sheepe, and *800.* hogs, wherof *300.* to be made Barcon as per cell of a good store. And alwayes to haue at Barwicke, *100.* Dren and *500.* sheepe, and the rest in good pasture within *30.* or *40.* myle, ready to serue at all times: and the hogs also in conuenient place for the same.

Provision of Fish by proportion.

In Stockfish for fiftie two Wednesdaies, two meales & halfe service, fifty two Fridaies, one meale and whole service, in C. Stockfishes a day, in all the whole, xxvj. laste vij C. after v score the hundred to euery last. The same are to be deliuered at Warwicke cleere of all charges, for vij s. viij d. the laste. And rating allowance for beating & keeping the stoze of euery laste, xxx. Shillings, and yet remaineth profite in euery last, by order of thys booke, as in a proportion for the xx part of the Garison hereafter following may appeare, v l. iij s. iij d.

Sum for the whole proportion, 133 l. 3 s. 4 d.

In Hotland l yng, euery l yng rated at two score fishes, for xxvj Saterdaies, thirteene daies in Lent, and one day in Rogation weeke, halfe service, fortie daies, one C. and fifty a day, which maketh after five score to the hundred, and 4 L ynges to the pay, 5000 L ynges, which are to be deliuered at Warwicke, cleere of all charges, for 50 s. the C. and rating allowance to the keepers of the stoze, of euery C. 3 Shillings 4 pence, and yet remaines profite of euery C. by order of this booke, as in the Souldiours proportion at large appeareth, sixteene Shillings eight pence.

Sum for the whole proportion, xlv l. iij s. 4 d.

In Hotland Cod, rated at a Stockfish and a halfe, for xxvj Saterdaies, twelue daies in Lent, and one day in Rogation weeke, halfe service, 39 daies, 125 fishes a day, which maketh after five score to the C. and foure pay fishes, 7315. Fishes: which are to be deliuered at Warwicke cleere of all charges for thirty Shillings the hundred. And rating allowance to the keepers of the stoze of euery hundred 2 s. And yet remaineth profite in euery hundred, by this order, eight Shillings.

Sum for the whole proportion, 39 l. 7 s. 1 d. ob.

And where these proportions of fish, by the order of this booke allowed to the Souldiours, will serue: yet the yeerely provision with the remaine, to be in Stockfish xl last, vij. s. v. C. L ynges, v. s. Codde.

Provision of Butter and Cheese.

In Butter, for fifty two Wednesdaies, halfe service, 300 l. a day, fiftie two Saterdaies, 25 daies in Lent, and two daies in Rogation weeke, quarter service, 79 daies, 150. pounde a day.

in all 27350. pound, which maketh in Barrels, after 52, pounde and a halfe to euery Firkin, 130, barrells. The same may be bought in Holdernes, in Poekeshire, & in Suffolke once a yeere, for xl s. the barrell: and rating the charges of provision & carriage to the water side at xx. d. the barrell, for freight to Warwicke, euery barrell xx. d. and rating allowance to the keepers of the stoze, of euery barrell xx pence, and yet remaineth profite of euery barrell, twentie five Shillings.

Sum for the whole proportion, 162 l. 16 s. 3 d.

In Cheese for fiftie two Saterdaies, twentie fyue daies in Lent, and two daies in Rogation weeke, quarter service, 300 l. a day, in all 23700 pounde, and maketh in weyes, considering the allowance of 16 l. to the petty victuallers for the Souldiours 98 wey and thre quarters: and rating allowance for waste, one wey in euery loade, that is for waste, 15 wey, and the odde quarter to goe in allowance of waste with the rest, which I am sure is sufficient: so that the provision to be by this order, 113 wey of Cheese with the waste.

The same may be bought in Suffolke once a yeere, for 20 s. the wey, and rating the provision and carriage to the water side of a wey, xx. d. for freight to Warwicke of a wey xx. d. and yet remaines profite after this order, of a wey, allowing other xx. d. to the keepers of the stoze, nine Shillings, seauen pence, farthing.

And in the whole, fiftie foure pound, fyue Shillings notwithstanding that the said proportion of Butter & Cheese will serue, according to the order of this booke: yet the yeerely provision to be with the remaine in Butter, two hundred Barrels, and in Cheese two hundred wey.

And to haue in stoze of bay salt vpon consideration of service, if it should so happen to occupie the same, one hundred wey.

By this general proportion of provision, appeareth to be maintained sufficient number of men, and also the repzacion of the houses, necessaries, and all other charges for the sayd service at Warwicke, without the Quenes highnesse charge. And also for the provision and charges of freig of and other before it come to Warwicke, and to stop the mouthes of those who delight to finde fault in that they vnderstand not. Here followeth how the allowance is found to maintaine the same.

That is to say, for repzacion of the Warehouses, 12e warehouses, 13 b b. 2.

Windmills, Horsemills, Garners, with the appurtenances, and waite of calke in the sayd charge by this propoztion, one hundred fytie pound, two shyllings, foure pence.

Wood and Coale to brye and bryewe the sayde propoztion, one hundred seauenty foure pound, seauen shyllings, sixe pence.

For horse and carts for the milles, & carrying of pzoouision with the allowance by the petty Victualers, for carrying of their beere, as is accustomed, one hundred seauenty two pounde, sixtene shyllings, nyne pence.

For mayntenance of twentie five men, for the Bakehouses, Brewhouses, Windmills, Horsemills, Garners, and carrying of pzoouision in the saide charge, thre hundred two pound, one shylling, eight pence.

For mayntenance of men in the charge of Wale, Gutton, and Worke, sixtie nine pound, sixtene shyllings.

In the charge of Stockfish, Lyng, and Cod, fytty foure pounde, twelue shyllings, and eleuen pence.

In charge of Butter and Cheese as appeareth, xx l. vs.

Sum ir. C. xliij. l. ix d.

All these are founde beside the pzoouision and freight, befoze it come to Warwick, as by the same may appeare.

And the better to maintaine y<sup>e</sup> cheefe Officer of trust, the charges befoze rehearsed, and other vnknowne charges, which happeneth oftentimes in seruice: as also, that all his sayde ministers and seruants, be not any of the number allowed for Souldiours, there is considered for profit in wheate for bzead, as in the charge of the Bakehouse appeareth, two hundred foztie thre pound, six shyllings, eyght pence.

In Pault and wheat of beere, as in the charge for the bzeuhouse appeareth, 228 l. 8 s. 4 d.

In Beefe, Gutton, and Worke, 248 l.

In Stockfish, Lyng, and Cod, 204 l. 4 s. 1 d.

In Butter and Cheese, 217 l. 1 s. 3 d.

Sum ir. C. lxxij. l. 4 d.

All these allowances are founde, beside mainteuanance of the petty Victualers, and theyr charge, as appeareth by propoztion hereafter following. And for the sum of 8342 l. 10 s. the Officers see: and the Souldiours scozes payde euery yeere, this seruice is to be done in euery point of the same.

The

The Garison being one thousand Souldiours as afforesaide, wherof account six hundred comon Souldiours, & foure hundred moze of greater pay, or such as make moze accout of themselves: and for that the Souldiours shall not be troubled with dressing of theyr victuals, neither the Captaine in deliuering the propoztion, appointed within the Towne of Garison: I doe appoynt twenty petty Victualers, and to euery petty Victualer, thirtie comon Souldiours, and twenty moze of bigger pay, whose propoztion of victualles for a yeere, shall hereafter appeare.

The comon Souldiour shall pay two shyllings eight pence by the waike, for his dyet, lodging, and washing: the Souldiour of bigger pay, at foure shyllings the waike, for his dyet, lodging, and washing, as hereafter followeth: wherein it doth also appeare, how the petty Victualers are considered for theyr charges and trauell in the same, for a yeere of 365 dayes.

The thirtie comon Souldiours, to haue euery man a day in wheaten bzeade, one pounde and a halfe, rated at a penny. And the twentie greater allowance in white bzeade, euery man a day one pounde and a halfe, rated at thre halfe pence. And in allowance to the petty Victualers, xxj. Loues for twentie. These L. Souldiours charge, sum 91 pound, 5 shyllings. The petty Victualers allowance found in the same in vantage bzead, sum foure pound, eleuen shyllings, thre pence.

The thirtie comon Souldiours, to euery man a wine pot, of double beere a day, rated at a penny, their propoztion for a yeere, xx Tun, ij Hogsheds, xv Gallons, deliuered the petty Victualers at xxx. s. the Tunne. The xx. greater allowance, euery man a wine pottle of stronge beere a day, rated at j. s. ob. Their propoztion for a yeere, xv Tunne, one barrell, r. gallons, deliuered the petty Victualers at xlviij. s. the Tunne. These L. Souldiours charge, sum lxxij. pounde 4 shyllings.

The petty Victualers charge, 20 l. 10 s. 1 d. ob.

The 30 comon Souldiours, in Wale euery man one pounde a day, rated at i. s. ob. For 100 dayes, 300 pounde, and the petty Victualers allowance of euery hundred, twelue pounde: so is the propoztion 3000 weight, at 1. s. 6. d. the hundred, in charge, summe 18 l. 15 s. The 20. greater allowance, euery man one pounde and a halfe a day, rated befoze, with like allowance to the petty Victualers, the propoztion is, 30 hundred weight,

13 l. 6 s.

weight,

weight, at 12. s. 6. d. the hundredth. Summa 18. l. 15. shillings.  
The petty Victuallers allowance in both, 4. l. 4. d.

The 30. common Souldiours, in Dutton, every man one pound a day, rated at two pence the pound: for 50. dayes 1500. weight, and the petty Victuallers allowance, of every hundred twelve pound. So is the proportion 15. hundred weight, at 16. s. 8. d. the hundred, in charge, Summa, 12. l. 10. s. The 20. greater allowance, every man one pound and a halfe a day, rated as befoze, with like allowance to the petty Victuallers: the proportion is 15. hundred weight, at 16. s. 8. d. the hundred, in charge, Sum 12. l. 10. s. The petty Victuallers allowance in both, 53. s. 8. d.

The 30. common Souldiours in Pozhe, every man one pound 1. quarter a day, rated at 1. d. ob. For 32. dayes 12 hundred, and the petty Victuallers of every hundred 12. pound. The proportion is 12. hundred weight, at 10. shillings the hundred. Summa 6. l. The 20. greater allowance, every man one pound 3 quarters and a halfe a day, rated as befoze after the rate, with like allowance to the petty Victuallers. The proportion is 12 hundred weight at 10. shillings the hundred in charge. Sum 6. pound. The petty Victuallers allowance, 25 shillings 9. pence.

The 30 common Souldiours in Stockfish, to euerie foure men one Stockfish a day, for 52. wednesdaies, two meales a day, half seruice, and the like allowance to every foure men one Stockfish for a meale, for 52. frydayes, whole seruice, in all 7. fishes and a halfe a day, one hundred and foure dayes, 780 fishes, rated at 4. pence the fish in charge. Sum 13. l. The 20 greater allowance, to haue for the like dayes, to every 4 men one Stockfish and a halfe a day, as well for the halfe as whole seruice, every day 7. fishes and a halfe, 780 fishes at 4 pence the fish in charge. Summa 13. pound

The 30 common Souldiours, to haue in Scotland Linges, for 26 saterdayes, 13. daies in Lent, and 1. day in Rogation weeke, in all 40 dayes: to every 2. men, one Ling a day, halfe seruice, rated at 7. d. the Ling. Sum. 150 And the allowance for pay fish, to the petty Victuallers, 5 Linges. Sum 4. l. 7. s. 6. d. The 20. greater allowance, for the lyke dayes, to every 8 men one Ling and a halfe, rated as befoze at 7. pence the Linge, 150, and to the petty Victualler, 5. Linges, 4. pound, 7. shillings 6 pence. The petty Victuallers allowance, five shillings ten pence.

The

The 30. common Souldiours to haue in Scotland Codde, for 26 Saterdayes, 12 dayes in Lent, & one day in Rogation weeke, to every 8. men one fish and a halfe a day, halfe seruice, at 4. d. the fish: and the petty Victuallers in allowance, as befoze in Lings. The proportion is 219. fishes, one quarter and a halfe. The petty Victuallers allowance, 7. fishes and a quarter, in charge for the same. Summa 3. pound, 13. shillings 3. halfe pence. The 20 greater allowance for the like dayes, to every 8. men 2. fishes one quarter a day, for halfe seruice, with lyke allowance to the petty Victuallers, as befoze at 4 pence the fish. The proportion is 219 fishes, one quarter and a halfe. The petty Victuallers allowance, 7 fishes one quarter, in charge for the same, Sum 3. pound, 13. shillings, 1. d. ob. The petty Victuallers allowance, 4. shillings, 10. pence.

The 30 common Souldiours, to haue in Butter to every foure men one pounce a day, halfe seruice, for 52 wednesdayes, two meales a day: and to every 8 men one pound a day, quarter seruice, for 52. Saterdaies, 25. dayes in Lent, and two daies in Rogation weeke, at 4. pence the pound, 686. pound and a quarter, and is in charge, Summa 11. pounce, 8. shillings, 9. pence. The 20. greater allowance, for the like of 52. wednesdayes, halfe seruice, to every foure men one pounce and a halfe a day: and to every eight men one pound and a halfe a day, for 52. Saterdaies, 25. dayes in Lent, and two dayes in Rogation weeke, quarter seruice, at foure pence the pound. Summa 686 pound, 1. quarter, and is in charge. Summa 11 pound, 8 shillings, 9 pence.

The 30 common Souldiours, in Cheese for 52 Saterdaies, 25 dayes in Lent, and two dayes in Rogation weeke, to every foure men one pound a day quarter seruice, and allowance to the petty Victuallers, 16. pound of a Whey, at two pence the pound. Sum. five hundred, foure score, twelve pound and a halfe. In charge, summa 4. pound, 13 shillings, 9 pence.

The petty Victuallers allowance, thirtie nine pound and a halfe.

The 20. greater allowance, for the lyke Saterdayes, the dayes in Lent and Rogation weeke, to every foure men, one pound and a halfe a day, quarter seruice.

Sum, 592 l. and a halfe, at 2 d. the pound.

In charge, summa 4 l. 18 s. 9 d.

The

The art of warre.

The petty Victualers allowance, 39. l. and a halfe. In money for both the parties, thirtene shillings two pence.

Sum 417. l. 2. s. 6. d.

Euery petty Victualers allowance, that men may be well ordered, summe 119. l. 10. s. 3. d.

The whole Garison at thirtie petty Victualers a yeere, in charge. 8342 l. 10. s.

The twentieth petty Victualers allowance, beside that in the generall propoztion found out of the same. Sum two thousand, three hundred, ninty one pound, six shillings, eight pence.

Some Souldiours there are married and keepe house, whose propoztion of victualles must be to them deliuered accordingly, with the like allowance as to the petty Victualer in euery thing.

Captaines and Gentlemen wyth theyr ordinarie seruants, keeping house of themselues, no propozcion deliuered, but with like allowance.

FINIS.



1948

41740

Handwritten watermark: ТАУКОР ДИПЛОМУ імені І. І. МЕЧНИКОВА

НАУКОВА БІБЛІОТЕКА ОНУ імені І. І. МЕЧНИКОВА



НАУКОВА БІБЛІОТЕКА ОНУ ІМЕНІ І. І. МЕЧНИКОВА

І  
Е

НАУКОВА БІБЛІОТЕКА ОНУ імені І. І. МЕЧНИКОВА